



GUIDE



تطبيق
المعاصر التفاعلي

English

By a group of supervisors

الصف الثالث الإعدادي الفصل الدراسي الثاني

المنهج
الجديد



3rd
PREP.
2026
SECOND TERM

English

By a group of supervisors



2026



AL TALABA BOOKSTORE

For printing, publication & distribution

El Faggala - Cairo - Egypt

Tel.: 02/ 259 340 12 - 259 377 91

www.gpseducation.com

15014



3rd PREP.
SECOND TERM

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

إِنَّ الَّذِينَ ءَامَنُوا وَعَمِلُوا الصَّالِحَاتِ إِنَّا لَا نُضِيعُ أَجْرَ مَنْ أَحْسَنَ عَمَلًا
صَدَقَ اللَّهُ الْعَظِيمُ

Egyptian National Library
Cataloging During publishing
Prepared by Technical Affairs Department

El-Moasser Guide based on English

English for Preparatory Schools

By a Group of Supervisors

Cairo : GPS For Printing, Publication & Distribution,

2025 - 2026

3 vols. ; 24 cm.

For 3rd prep. - Second Term

I.S.B.N : 978 - 977- 970 - 258 - 2

1. English language - study and teaching. (Elementary)

2. Education, Elementary

372.6521

رقم الإيداع : ٢٨٢٦٦ / ٢٠٢٥

تطبيق GPS التفاعلي

التطبيق التفاعلي من سلسلة كتب ...

الامتحان المعاصر



كيفية الاستخدام: ١. نزل التطبيق. ٢. أنشئ حسابك. ٣. أدخل الكود الموجود على ظهر الغلاف.



**استمتع
بجميع مزايا
التطبيق
لجميع المواد الدراسية**

تصنيف بلوم للمستويات المعرفية



ملاحظة: تم تصنيف الأسئلة بداخل كل تمرين طبقاً لمستويات هرم بلوم والإشارة لها كالتالي :

● تذكر ● فهم ● تطبيق ● حل مشكلات (تحليل أو تقويم أو ابتكار)

Specifications for Third Year Preparatory

English Examination 2025 - 2026

مواصفات امتحان اللغة الإنجليزية للصف الثالث الإعدادي للعام الدراسي ٢٠٢٥ / ٢٠٢٦

Marks : 30

2025 / 2026

Time : Two hours

A Reading (14 Marks)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : (2 Marks)

FOUR (4) multiple-choice questions related to vocabulary (synonyms, antonyms, suffix, prefix, definition, collocations guessing meaning from the context) are provided. Students are asked to choose the correct answer from the **FOUR (4)** options given. (Half a mark each)

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box : (2 Marks)

An unseen text from **SEVENTY (70)** to **EIGHTY (80)** words with **FOUR (4)** deletions is provided. **FIVE (5)** words related to vocabulary are also given in a box. Students are asked to complete each deletion in the text with **ONE** of the **FIVE (5)** words given in the box. The first sentence should be written in full. (Half a mark each)

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions : (6 Marks)

An unseen text of from **ONE HUNDRED and FORTY (140)** to **ONE HUNDRED and SIXTY (160)** words is provided. This can be a short story, a blog, an email or social medial posts ... etc. Most lexical items and all structures in the text should be related to what students have studied before. Students are asked to answer **THREE (3)** multiple-choice questions with **FOUR (4)** options each and **THREE (3)** open-ended questions. These questions should test the following reading comprehension skills :

- Giving the main idea (1 question)
- Extracting information (1 question)
- Understanding reference (1 question)
- Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context (1 question)
- Use context clues to understand vocabulary (1 question)
- Developing critical thinking skill (1 question)

(One mark each)

4 STORY (4 Marks)

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : (2 Marks)

FOUR (4) multiple-choice questions are provided. Students are asked to choose the correct answer from the **FOUR (4)** options given. (Half a mark each)

b. Answer the following questions : (2 Marks)

Students are asked to answer **TWO (2)** open-ended questions, one of which tests students' critical thinking skills. (One mark each)

B Writing (16 Marks)

5 Rewrite the following sentences :

(3 Marks)

THREE (3) structure sentences are provided. Students are asked to rewrite the sentences using the word(s) in brackets. The given word(s) in brackets should be related to what students have studied.

(One mark each)

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

(3 Marks)

THREE (3) structure sentences are provided. Students are asked to rewrite the sentences using the correct form of the word(s) in brackets. The given word(s) in brackets should be related to what students have studied.

(One mark each)

7 Complete the following dialogue :

(5 Marks)

A dialogue to **TEN (10)** exchanges with **FIVE (5)** deletions is provided (**2 stimuli & 3 responses**). The topic of the dialogue should be related to the students' everyday life, interests, hobbies, events and so on ... The situation in which the dialogue takes place is described briefly but clearly. Students are required to fill in the deletions with the appropriate language forms without providing them with any guidance. The first exchange should be in full.

(One mark each)

8 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on ... :

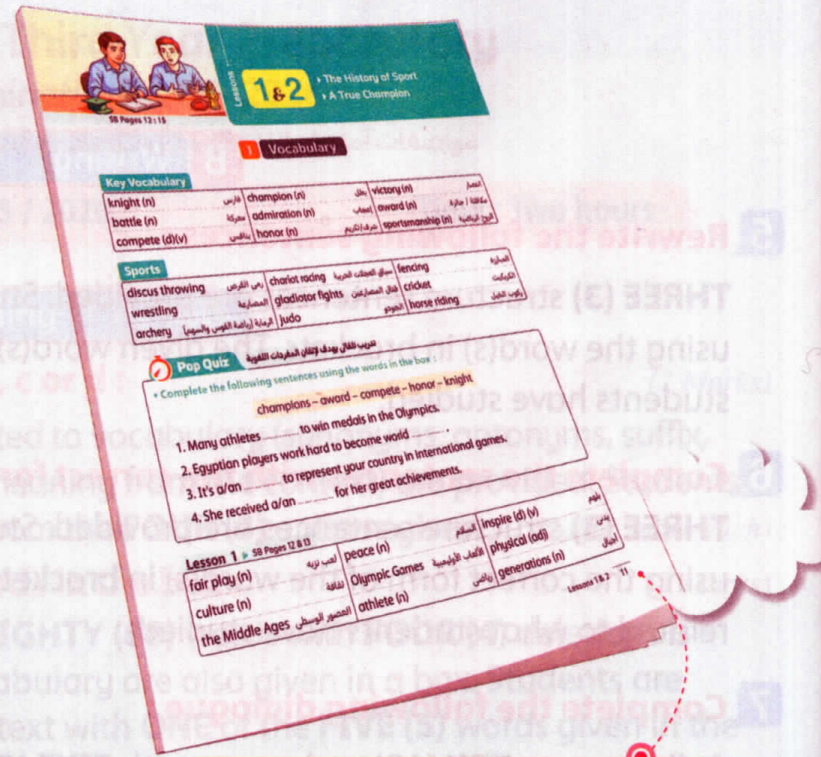
(5 Marks)

Students are asked to write a text of not less than **ONE HUNDRED** and **TEN (110)** words on a specific topic related to what students have studied. The text can be a paragraph / biography / social media post / blog post / review / story / an email / or short notes.

(One mark for relevance of ideas – One mark for vocabulary – One mark for grammar – One mark for spelling – One mark for punctuation)

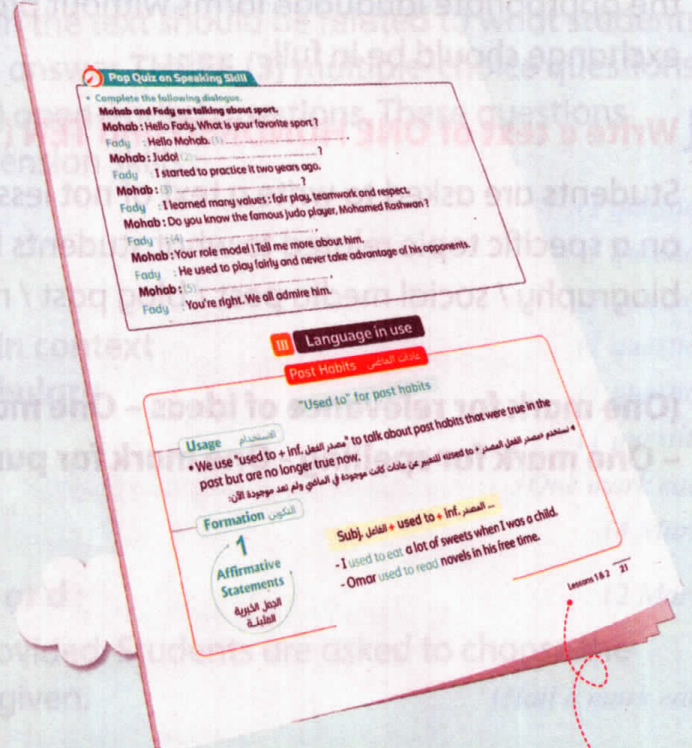
GUIDEBOOK

دليل الكتاب



1 Vocabulary

- عرض للمفردات اللغوية.
- عرض شامل لنصوص القراءة والاستماع.
- تدريبات متنوعة على المفردات اللغوية.



2 Language in use

- عرض شامل للقواعد اللغوية مع أمثلة متنوعة عليها تساعدك على دراسة القواعد اللغوية، مع تدريبات متنوعة على القواعد اللغوية.

General Exercises

On Lessons 1 & 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A is a soldier in the Middle Ages.
a. champion b. knight c. knight d. knight
2. In a match, the person you play against is called your .
a. neighbor b. coach c. opponent d. help
3. "An award" is close in meaning to the word .
a. victory b. prize c. price d. offer
4. We can form the noun from the verb "admire" by adding the suffix .
a. -ness b. -ship c. -ly d. -ation

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

strength - fresh - exercise - old - weakness
Sports are very important for all ages. Both the young and the can take part in games and activities. Regular helps the body stay strong and keeps the mind . Playing football, swimming, or even walking gives people to do their daily tasks. Many people also enjoy watching sport together as a social activity.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Mohammed Rashwan is a famous Egyptian Judo Champion known for his great sportsmanship. He was born in 1956 in Alexandria. He became world famous after the 1984 Olympic Games in Los Angeles, where he reached the final against a Japanese opponent who had an injured leg. Rashwan refused to compete with an injured leg. As he believed in fair play and respect, Rashwan chose to compete with honor and refused to take advantage of him. His behavior inspired people all over the world and showed the true spirit of sports. Even though he didn't win the gold medal, he won every one's respect. Today, Rashwan is remembered as a symbol of respect and good sportsmanship.

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Rashwan's sport was .
a. football b. boxing c. Judo d. swimming
2. The underlined pronoun "him" refers to .
a. Rashwan b. the final c. the people d. the opponent
3. The underlined word "known" is close in meaning to .
a. unknown b. selfish c. famous d. lazy

Lesson 1 & 2

2 Speaking

Teamwork and fair play

1. Work in groups of four. Discuss the following questions and give your answers. Write your answers in your notebook.
a. What are the most important values in sports?
b. How can we show respect to our opponents?
c. What are the benefits of teamwork?
d. How can we improve our teamwork?
e. What are the challenges of teamwork?
f. How can we overcome the challenges of teamwork?
g. What are the most important values in sports?
h. How can we show respect to our opponents?
i. What are the benefits of teamwork?
j. How can we improve our teamwork?
k. What are the challenges of teamwork?
l. How can we overcome the challenges of teamwork?

1 Reading Comprehension

Giving the main idea of the text

1. Read the following text. Give the main idea of the text.
Sports have always been part of people's lives. In ancient Greece, athletes competed in the Olympic Games. The Greeks believed that a strong body and a strong mind were necessary for a good life. They also believed that sports could help people to become better citizens. Today, sports are still an important part of our lives. They help us to stay healthy and happy. They also help us to learn about ourselves and the world around us.

3 General Exercises on Lessons

تدريبات على كل الدروس.

4 Skills

عرض شيق لمهارات القراءة والتحدث.

Test on unit 7

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A is a soldier in the Middle Ages.
a. gladiator b. champion c. knight d. competitor
2. The opposite of "dangerous" is .
a. difficult b. safe c. modern d. famous
3. We add the suffix to the word "friend" to form the noun.
a. -ly b. -ship c. -ness d. -ment
4. "Capture" means to or record.
a. take b. ignore c. lose d. target

The Answers:

1.
2.
3.
4.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

Many young people enjoy playing sports. because it is a fast and exciting sport. Schools often hold where teams try to win and show their skills. What makes the game special is not only winning, but also the of teamwork and cooperation. Many athletes say that their comes from watching professional players and learning from them.

The Answers:

1.
2.
3.
4.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Fair play is one of the most important values in sports. It is the idea that all competitors should be treated with respect and honesty, following the rules of the game. A true champion is not just someone who wins, but someone who wins with honor. In 1936, German athlete Luz Long gave advice to his American rival, Jesse Owens during the Olympic long jump competition. Owens was struggling, but with Long's advice, he went on to win the gold medal. Long won the silver medal and was the first to congratulate Owens. This act of sportsmanship is often remembered more than the final result itself. It showed the world that friendship and respect are more valuable than any medal. This spirit of fair play is what connects athletes and inspires new generations.

48 Understand Apply Create

The Story

Twenty Thousand Leagues Under the Sea

By : Jules Verne



5 Test on Unit

اختبار على الوحدة.

6 The Story

عرض شيق للقصة المقررة.

Now

El-Moasser Dictionary
enjoy learning English



يمكنك تعلم نطق الكلمات من
خلال قاموس المعاصر الناطق.

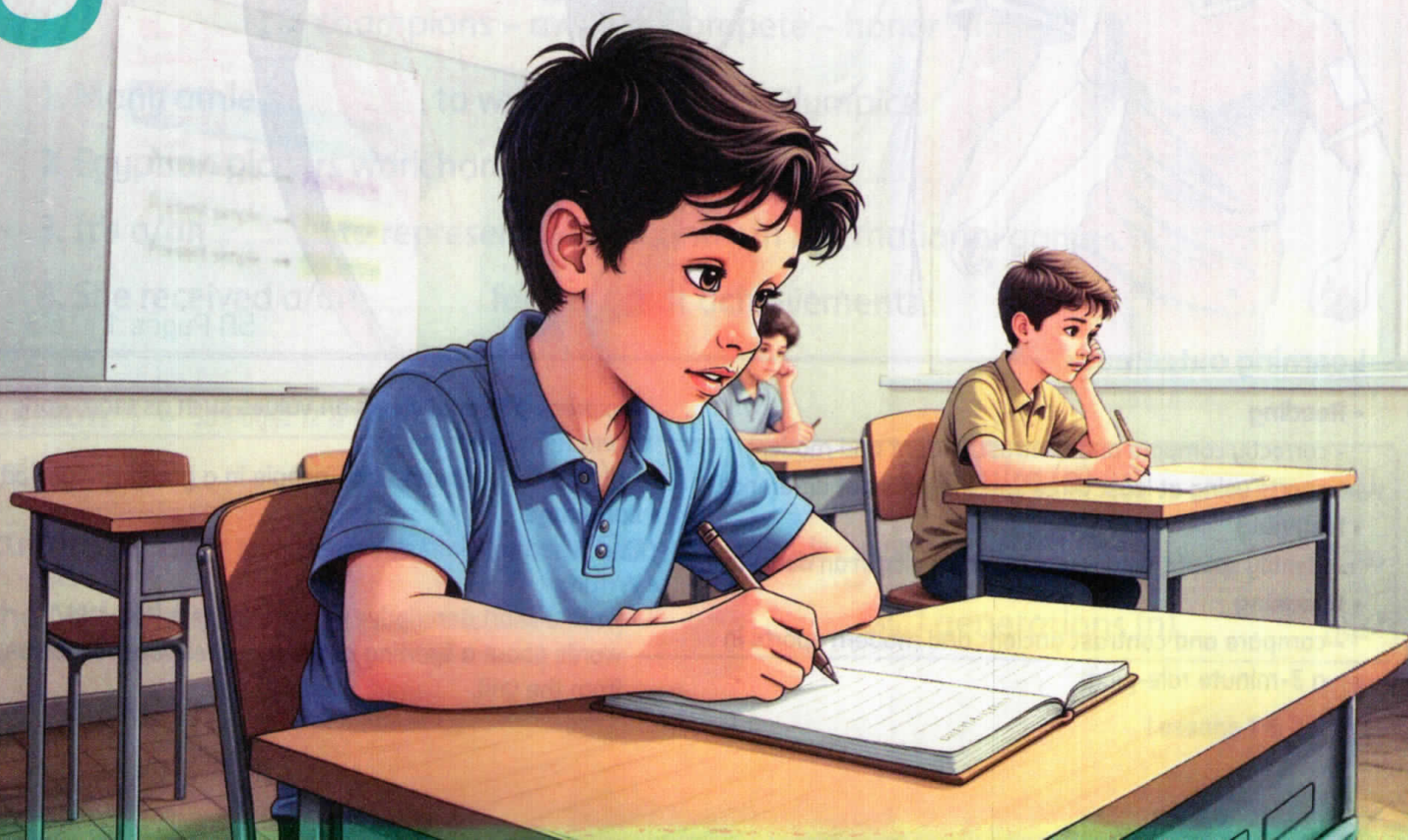
الآن

قاموس المعاصر الناطق
لو عايز تتعلم نطق
الكلمات صح.



CONTENTS

Unit	7	Sports	10
Unit	8	Cultures and Traditions	50
Unit	9	Courage and Survival	92
Review	3		130
Unit	10	Animal Adaptations	135
Unit	11	Stories on the Move	176
Unit	12	Leadership and Teamwork	219
Review	4		257
▶ The Story			262
▶ Answers of Topics			311

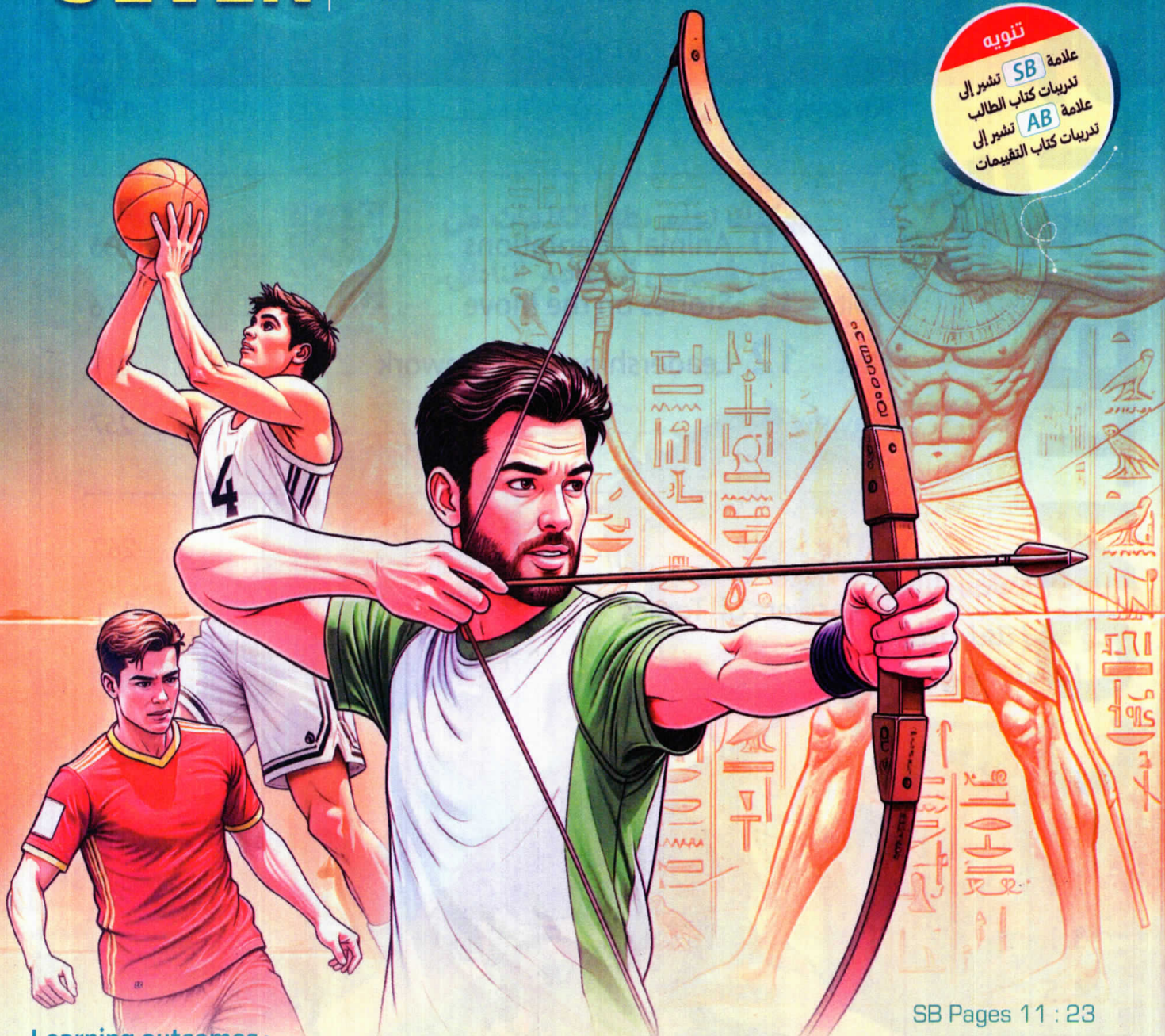


Unit SEVEN

Sports

تنويه

علامة SB تشير إلى
تدريبات كتاب الطالب
علامة AB تشير إلى
تدريبات كتاب التقييمات



SB Pages 11 : 23

Learning outcomes :

• Reading

- correctly compare and contrast ancient and modern sports using at least three specific points of difference.

• Listening

- identify specific details regarding fair play in an audio text.

• Speaking

- compare and contrast ancient and modern sports in a 3-minute role-play.

- express personal views on values such as teamwork and fair play.
- discuss how sports unite people in a group discussion.

• Language

Use "used to + inf." to express past habits.

• Writing

- write a short descriptive or narrative text (100-110) words about a sporting event, using relevant vocabulary from the unit.



SB Pages 12 : 15

Lessons

1 & 2

- The History of Sport
- A True Champion

I

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

knight (n)	فارس	champion (n)	بطل	victory (n)	انتصار
battle (n)	معركة	admiration (n)	إعجاب	award (n)	مكافأة / جائزة
compete (d)(v)	ينافس	honor (n)	شرف/تكريم	sportsmanship (n)	الروح الرياضية

Sports

discus throwing	رمى القرص	chariot racing	سباق العجلات الحربية	fencing	المبارزة
wrestling	المصارعة	gladiator fights	قتال المصارعين	cricket	الكريكت
archery	الرمية [رياضة القوس والسهم]	judo	الجودو	horse riding	ركوب الخيل



Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

champions – award – compete – honor – knight

1. Many athletes to win medals in the Olympics.
2. Egyptian players work hard to become world
3. It's a/an to represent your country in international games.
4. She received a/an for her great achievements.

Lesson 1 ► SB Pages 12 & 13

fair play (n)	لعب نزيه	peace (n)	السلام	inspire (d) (v)	يلهم
culture (n)	ثقافة	Olympic Games	الألعاب الأولمبية	physical (adj)	بدني
the Middle Ages	العصور الوسطى	athlete (n)	رياضي	generations (n)	أجيال

Lesson 2 ▶ SB Pages 14 & 15

value (d) (v), (n) يقيم / قيمة اخلاقية	weak point (n) نقطة ضعف	remind (ed) (v) يُذكر
opponent = rival (n) مُنافس	decision (n) قرار	prove (d) (v) يثبت / يبرهن
injured (adj) مصاب	focus (ed) (v) يركز	honesty (n) الأمانة
chance (n) فرصة	advantage (n) ميزة / أفضلية	injury (n) إصابة / جرح
attack (ed) (v) يهاجم	earn (ed) (v) يكسب [مال / قيمة]	

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

knight	soldier in the Middle Ages	فارس
chariot	cart pulled by horses	عربة حربية
fair play	treating others honestly in games	اللعب النظيف

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

show	strength يظهر القوة	stay	strong يظل قوياً
	respect يظهر الاحترام	do	daily tasks يقوم بالمهام اليومية
bring	communities together يوحد المجتمعات	win	a medal يفوز بميدالية
inspire	generations يلهم الأجيال	lose	a match يخسر مباراة
practice	a new sport يمارس رياضة جديدة	highlight	values يبرز القيم

Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

الكلمة Word	المرادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym / Opposite
ancient قديم	very old	modern حديث
strength قوة	power	weakness ضعف
fair نزيه / عادل	honest	dishonest غير صادق
respect احترام	honor	disrespect عدم احترام
admiration إعجاب / تقدير	appreciation / respect	disapproval عدم استحسان
champion بطل	winner / hero	loser خاسر
focus يركز	concentrate	distract يشتت
inspire يلهم	motivate / encourage	discourage يحبط

Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	أمثلة Examples
-tion	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	competition منافسة
-ly	تحول الصفة إلى ظرف	honestly بأمانة
re-	تعطي معنى مرة أخرى (again)	restart يعيد بداية
-ship	تكون الاسم	friendship صداقة sportsmanship الروح الرياضية
-ation	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	admiration إعجاب

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
spread ينتشر / ينشر	spread	spread
bring يحضر	brought	brought
begin يبدأ	began	begun

أحرص على اقتناء

كتاب EL-MOASSER

فى اللغة الإنجليزية

أمنح ثقتك لمن يستحق





Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

on Lesson 1 SB page 12

1. Sport has been part of human life for thousands of years.
2. In ancient times⁽¹⁾, people competed⁽²⁾ to show strength, speed, and skill.
3. Romans enjoyed sports too. They held gladiator⁽³⁾ fights and chariot⁽⁴⁾ races, showing the importance of sport in Roman culture.
4. In the Middle Ages, people practiced archery⁽⁵⁾, horse riding, and fencing.
5. These activities prepared knights⁽⁶⁾ for battles.
6. Modern sports such as football, tennis, and cricket became popular in England in the 19th century and then spread across the world.
7. Today, sports are not just for winning. They teach teamwork, fair play⁽⁷⁾, and health.
8. Sport helps to connect communities and inspire⁽⁸⁾ new generations.

(1) في العصور القديمة	(2) نافس	(3) مصارع في حلبه	(4) عربية حربية
(5) رياضة القوس والسهم	(6) فرسان	(7) اللعب النزيه	(8) يلهم

on Lesson 2 SB page 14

1. Mohamed Rashwan used to be one of Egypt's most admired sports champions⁽¹⁾.
2. In the 1984 Olympic Games in Los Angeles, he reached the judo final against⁽²⁾ a strong Japanese opponent⁽³⁾.
3. His rival⁽⁴⁾ was injured at that time.
4. He avoided⁽⁵⁾ attacking his rival's weak point to win the gold medal.
5. He chose to compete with honor⁽⁶⁾.
6. Although he lost the final, he gained respect and admiration⁽⁷⁾.
7. Later, the Japanese people gave him a special award for his great sportsmanship⁽⁸⁾.
8. Rashwan proved that honesty and respect can make someone a true champion.

(1) أبطال رياضيين	(2) ضد	(3) منافس	(4) خصم
(5) تجنب	(6) شرف	(7) إعجاب	(8) روح رياضية

تنويه : الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات إنشائية أخرى :

* Sports in ancient times

* Fair play in competitions

* A sports player you admire

1. Reading and Listening

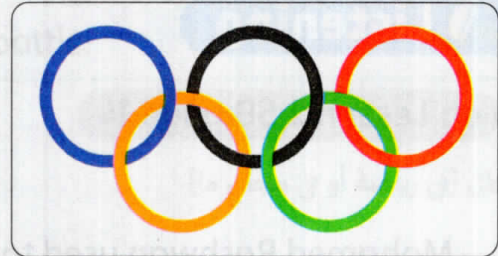


Reading

on Lesson 1 SB page 12

The History of Sport

Sport has been part of human life for thousands of years. In ancient times, people competed to show **strength**⁽¹⁾, speed, and skill. For example, the **Olympic Games**⁽²⁾ began in Greece more than 2,700 years ago. They included running, wrestling, and **discus throwing**⁽³⁾. These games were not only for fun, but also to bring communities together.



Later, the Romans enjoyed sports such as **gladiator**⁽⁴⁾ fights and **chariot**⁽⁵⁾ racing. Although some of these were dangerous, they showed how important sport was in Roman culture. In the Middle Ages, people in Europe practiced **archery**⁽⁶⁾, horse riding, and fencing. These activities prepared **knights**⁽⁷⁾ for **battles**⁽⁸⁾, and they also became forms of competition.

Modern sports started to grow in the 19th century. Football, tennis, and cricket became popular in England and soon spread across the world. The modern Olympic Games were **restarted**⁽⁹⁾ in 1896 in Athens, and today they are a **global event**⁽¹⁰⁾ where athletes from many countries compete in peace.

Sport is now practiced not only for winning, but also for teamwork, **fair play**⁽¹¹⁾, and health. It continues to connect people, create friendships, and inspire new **generations**⁽¹²⁾.

- Extracting information from the text.

استخراج المعلومات من النص

Answer
the following
questions.

Learn

1. Why did people compete in ancient times ?

- They competed to show strength, speed and skill.

Practice

2. What values do we practice sports for ?

(6) رياضة الرماية	(5) عربة حربية	(4) مصارع	(3) رمي القرص	(2) الألعاب الأولمبية	(1) قوة
(12) أجيال	(11) اللعب النزيه	(10) حدث عالمي	(9) يعيد البدء	(8) معارك	(7) مُرسان

on Lesson 1 SB page 13

Sports are very important for people of all ages. Both the young and the old can take part in games and activities that make life more active and fun. Regular exercise helps the body stay strong and keeps the mind fresh. Playing football, swimming, or even walking gives people more strength to do their daily tasks. Sport is not only good for physical health but also helps people meet friends and work as a team. Many people also enjoy watching sport together, which makes it a social activity.



Listening

on Lesson 2 SB page 14

Mohamed Rashwan

Mohamed Rashwan used to be one of Egypt's most admired sports **champions**⁽¹⁾. He became famous during the 1984 Olympic Games in Los Angeles, where he reached the judo **final**⁽²⁾ against a strong Japanese **opponent**⁽³⁾. His rival used to train hard, but he was **injured**⁽⁴⁾ at that time. Many people said Rashwan had the chance to attack his **rival's**⁽⁵⁾ **weak point**⁽⁶⁾ to win the gold medal.



Rashwan used to believe that fair play was more important than **victory**⁽⁷⁾. He chose to compete with **honor**⁽⁸⁾ and refused to **take advantage**⁽⁹⁾ of his rival's injury. Although he lost the final and won only the silver medal, he earned something far greater - respect and **admiration**⁽¹⁰⁾. Later, the Japanese people gave him a special **award**⁽¹¹⁾ for his great **sportsmanship**⁽¹²⁾.

Rashwan's story reminds us that sport isn't just about medals. Athletes often say, "We used to train harder," or "We should have focused more." Rashwan proved that honesty and respect can make someone a true champion - even without gold.

(1) أبطال	(2) النهائي	(3) خصم	(4) مصاب	(5) منافس	(6) نقطه ضعف
(7) انتصار	(8) شرف	(9) يستغل	(10) إعجاب	(11) جائزة	(12) الروح الرياضية



General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 gladiator - soldier - knight

* **gladiator (n)**

مصارع [في حلبة المصارعة في الحضارة الرومانية القديمة]

▶ The **gladiator** fought bravely in the Roman Arena (ساحة قتال).

* **soldier (n)**

جندى [في الجيش الرسمي للدولة]

▶ The **soldier** protects his country during wars.

* **knight (n)**

فارس [على حصان] [من العصور الوسطى]

▶ The **knight** wore armor and rode his horse into a battle.

2 champion - rival - opponent - enemy

* **champion (n)**

بطل [في رياضة أو في مجال ما]

▶ Salma is the swimming **champion** of our school.

* **rival (n) = opponent (n)**

منافس [قد يكون صديقًا أو زميلًا في منافسة، رياضية، علمية، ...]

▶ Ahmed is my biggest **rival** in the football team.

▶ Our **opponent** played very well in the final match.

* **enemy (n)**

عدو

▶ The soldiers fought bravely against their **enemies**.

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

Expressions التعابير

part of human life	جزء من حياة البشر	make life active and fun	يجعل الحياة نشيطة وممتعة
spread across the world	انتشر حول العالم	keep the mind fresh	يبقى العقل نشيطًا ومنتعشًا
create friendships	يكون / ينشئ صداقات	people of all ages	من جميع الأعمار

Prepositions حروف الجر

in the 19 th century	في القرن التاسع عشر	take part in	يشارك في
compete in	ينافس في	compete with honor	ينافس بشرف
important for	هام لـ	take advantage of	يستغل

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary

- We should people who have made our life better.
a. honor b. damage c. delete d. discourage
- Many young athletes train hard so they can in national sports events.
a. complete b. compete c. complain d. compare
- Our football team became the national after winning the final.
a. visitor b. artist c. champion d. interviewer
- The students looked at their teacher with great for his great leadership.
a. anger b. sadness c. fear d. admiration
- Good means playing fair and respecting others in competitions.
a. relationship b. friendship c. sportsmanship d. leadership

SB & AB Exercises

Definitions

- SB** A is a cart pulled by horses.
a. train b. plane c. chariot d. ship

Guessing the meaning

- SB** He competed with honor and refused to take advantage. The phrase "take advantage" here means
a. away from b. look for c. ask for d. benefit from
- SB** He had the chance to attack his rival's weak point. The phrase "weak point" is similar in meaning to
a. weakness b. task c. opportunity d. luck
- AB** Rashwan proved that honesty and respect can make someone a/an champion.
a. fake b. wrong c. real d. unreal

Collocations

- SB** Sport can communities together.
a. give b. make c. forget d. bring
- SB** Both the young and the old can part in games and activities.
a. make b. shake c. bake d. take

Synonyms, Antonyms, Prefixes & Suffixes

12. **SB** The word "ancient" has the same meaning as "very".
a. new b. modern c. old d. quick
13. **SB** The antonym of "strength" is ".....".
a. power b. energy c. weakness d. fitness
14. **SB** When we add the suffix "....." to "compete", it becomes a noun.
a. -ive b. -ly c. -tion d. -ness

► El-Moasser Exercises

Definitions

15. means treating others honestly in games.
a. Fair play b. Hatred c. Sleeping d. Cheating

Guessing the meaning

16. The player couldn't finish the game because he was
a. late b. strong c. injured d. rested
17. They were the of the race. They won the gold medals.
a. losers b. champions c. spectators d. fans
18. My father always inspires me to do better. This means that he me.
a. encourages b. discourages c. hits d. forgets
19. He was happy when he reached his goals. The word "reached" has the same meaning as
a. lost b. missed c. achieved d. blamed

Collocations

20. You should a new sport to stay fit.
a. practice b. see c. watch d. dream
21. They played the match well and a medal.
a. lost b. won c. flew d. sold

Synonyms, Antonyms, Prefixes & Suffixes

22. The word "respect" is closest in meaning to ".....".
a. fear b. honor c. laugh d. chance
23. The suffix "-ship" in "friendship" changes the word into a/an ".....".
a. verb b. noun c. adjective d. adverb
24. The words "admiration" and "appreciation" are
a. antonyms b. synonyms c. opposites d. adjectives
25. The prefix "re-" in "restart" means ".....".
a. again b. wrong c. never d. delay

2. Speaking Skill

السؤال والإجابة عن تاريخ الرياضات : **Asking and answering questions about the history of sport:**

Questions ?

1. Why do you think people have played sports since ancient ages ?

في اعتقادك لماذا كان يلعب الناس الرياضات منذ العصور القديمة ؟

2. How do sports bring communities together today?

كيف توحد الرياضات المجتمعات معًا في وقتنا هذا ؟

3. What values can we learn from sports?

ما القيم التي يمكن أن نتعلمها من الرياضة ؟

Answers ✓

- Because people wanted to show their strength, skill, and to have fun together.

لأن الناس أرادوا إظهار قوتهم ومهارتهم. والاستمتاع معًا.

- Sports bring communities together through competing, teamwork and friendship.

الرياضة تُوحد المجتمعات من خلال المنافسة، العمل الجماعي والصداقة.

- We can learn fair play, teamwork, and respecting others.

يمكن أن نتعلم اللعب النزيه والعمل الجماعي واحترام الآخرين.

السؤال والإجابة عن البطل الحقيقي : **Asking and answering questions about a true champion:**

Questions ?

1. What makes a sports champion truly great?

ما الذي يجعل البطل الرياضي عظيمًا حقًا؟

2. Is fair play important in competitions?

هل اللعب النزيه هام في المسابقات ؟

Answers ✓

- Showing respect and fair play make a champion truly great.

إظهار الاحترام واللعب النزيه هو ما يجعل البطل عظيمًا حقًا.

- Of course. For example. Mohamed Rashwan showed fair play in the Olympic Games.

بالطبع، على سبيل المثال، محمد رشوان أظهر اللعب النزيه في الألعاب الأولمبية.



Pop Quiz on Speaking Skill

- Complete the following dialogue.

Mohab and Fady are talking about sport.

Mohab : Hello Fady. What is your favorite sport ?

Fady : Hello Mohab. (1)

Mohab : Judo! (2) ?

Fady : I started to practice it two years ago.

Mohab : (3) ?

Fady : I learned many values : fair play, teamwork and respect.

Mohab : Do you know the famous judo player, Mohamed Rashwan ?

Fady : (4)

Mohab : Your role model ! Tell me more about him.

Fady : He used to play fairly and never take advantage of his opponents.

Mohab : (5)

Fady : You're right. We all admire him.

III

Language in use

Past Habits عادات الماضي

"Used to" for past habits

Usage الاستخدام

- We use "used to + inf. مصدر الفعل" to talk about past habits that were true in the past but are no longer true now.

◀ نستخدم «مصدر الفعل + used to» للتعبير عن عادات كانت موجودة في الماضي ولم تعد موجودة الآن:

Formation التكوين

1

Affirmative Statements

الجملة الخبرية
المثبتة

Subj. المص. + used to + inf. المصدر

- I **used to eat** a lot of sweets when I was a child.
- Omar **used to read** novels in his free time.

2

Negative Statements

الجملة الخبرية
المنفية

Subj. الفاعل + didn't + use to + inf.

ex. - My dad **didn't use to drive** across the desert when he was younger.- She **didn't use to** drink tea.

3

Interrogative.

صيغة
الاستفهام

A Yes/No question : السؤال ب «هل»

Did + subj. الفاعل + use to + inf.?

- Did you **use to swim** when you were a child?

- Yes, I did. - No, I didn't. - للإجابة المختصرة :

B Wh-question : السؤال ب «كلمة استفهام»

Q.W. الفاعل + use to + inf.? أداة استفهام

- What did you **use to play** when you were a child?

Note

لاحظ



لاحظ الصيغة التالية :

- There used to be

- كان من المعتاد أن يوجد

ex. : There used to be a cinema in our street. Now it is a big restaurant.

- There didn't use to be

- لم يكن من المعتاد أن يوجد

ex. : There didn't use to be an airport in Aswan in 1900.



Exercises

on Language in use

1. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

► SB & AB Exercises

1. SB I (use) to play in the park when I was a child.
2. SB My father didn't (used) to work in the bank.
3. SB We used to (going) to Alexandria every summer.

4. **SB** He (not/use) to drink tea.
5. **SB** My brother (use) to play football every weekend.
6. **SB** There (use/be) a park here, but now it's gone.
7. **SB** (Were) you use to visit ancient sites ?

► El-Moasser Exercises

8. Did the player (used) to win many competitions ?
9. He (doesn't) use to be rude.
10. The team (not/used) to train at noon. It was very hot at that time.
11. People used to (admired) Aya's honesty.
12. We didn't (used) to go out at night when we were children.
13. Basant used (train) hard when she was young.
14. I used to be lazy, but now I (don't).
15. He used to arrive early, now he (isn't).
16. Where (do) you use to live ?
17. She (uses) to cook delicious meals.
18. There used to (being) a library near my school.
19. When I was 10, I used (going) out on weekends.
20. How did you (used) to go to your school ?

2. Rewrite the following sentences :

► SB & AB Exercises

1. **SB** He used to ride his bike to school. (not)
2. **SB** She used to live in Luxor. (Where)
3. **SB** No, he didn't use to travel alone. (Did)
4. **SB** Rashwan trained hard when he was a player. (used)

► El-Moasser Exercises

5. She visited Luxor when she was young. (used)
6. He used to speak French well. (Did)
7. He was in the habit of helping people. (used to)
8. When he was young, he swam in the sea. (used)
9. Noha no longer travels abroad. (used to)
10. I played tennis when I was ten. (What)
11. It was my brother's habit to cycle to school. (used)
12. It was her habit to arrive late. (used)

Grammar in points

تدرب على القاعدة اللغوية في شكل نقاط طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية
(أهم الأفكار التي وردت في كتاب الطالب والتقييمات)

Used to for Past Habits

1. Rewrite Notes

Sentence	Answer	Explanation
1. SB I always played the guitar when I was thirteen. (used to)	I used to play the guitar when I was thirteen.	يتم حذف (always) ووضع صيغة (used to) الدالة على عادة في الماضي قبل الفعل (play) بعد حذف (ed).
2. AB He used to drive his car to work. (not)	He didn't use to drive his car to work.	يتم تحويل الجملة المثبتة باستخدام used to إلى صيغة النفي باستخدام: didn't use to + inf.
3. SB She used to live in Luxor. (Where)	Where did she use to live?	صيغة السؤال: Wh-word + did + subject + use to + inf. ?
4. SB No, he didn't use to travel alone. (Did)	Did he use to travel alone?	يتم تحويل الجملة المنفية إلى سؤال قصير بصيغة: Did + subject + use to + inf. ?
5. SB Nabil isn't using the mobile phone anymore. (used to)	Nabil used to use the mobile phone.	يستخدم used to للتعبير عن عادة في الماضي لم تعد تحدث الآن لوجود "isn't ... anymore".

2. Correction Notes

Sentence	Correction	Explanation
1. SB I (use) to play in the park when I was a child.	used	نستخدم (used to + inf.) للتعبير عن عادة أو حالة كانت تحدث في الماضي ولم تعد تحدث الآن.
2. SB (Do) you use to watch cartoons when you were young?	Did	في صياغة السؤال مع used to، نستخدم Did في البداية ونعيد used إلى المصدر use لأن Did تحمل الزمن الماضي.
3. SB He (not / used) to drink tea.	didn't use	في صياغة النفي مع used to، نستخدم didn't ثم الفعل use في المصدر.
4. AB My father didn't use to work in the bank when he (is) younger.	was	الجملة في الماضي لوجود "didn't use to"، لذا يجب أن يكون الفعل في الجملة التابعة لها في زمن الماضي وهو was.
5. AB Did Ali use to (being) encouraged by his family?	be	بعد use to في السؤال أو النفي، يأتي الفعل في المصدر.

General Exercises



On Lessons 1 & 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A is a soldier in the Middle Ages.
a. champion b. chariot c. knight d. firefighter
2. **AB** In a match, the person you play against is called your
a. neighbor b. coach c. opponent d. help
3. "An award" is close in meaning to the word ".....".
a. victory b. prize c. price d. offer
4. We can form the noun from the verb "admire" by adding the suffix ".....".
a. -ness b. -ship c. -ly d. -ation

2 **SB** Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

strength – fresh – exercise – old – weakness

Sports are very important for all ages. Both the young and the (1) can take part in games and activities. Regular (2) helps the body stay strong and keeps the mind (3) Playing football, swimming, or even walking gives people (4) to do their daily tasks. Many people also enjoy watching sport together as a social activity.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Mohammed Rashwan is a famous Egyptian Judo Champion known for his great sportsmanship. He was born in 1956 in Alexandria. He became world famous after the 1984 Olympic Games in Los Angeles, where he reached the final against a Japanese opponent who had an injured leg. Rashwan refused to attack the injured leg. As he believed in fair play and respect, Rashwan chose to compete with honor and refused to take advantage of him. His behavior inspired people all over the world and showed the true spirit of sports. Even though he didn't win the gold medal, he won every one's respect. Today, Raswan is remembered as a symbol of respect and good sportsmanship.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Rashwan's sport was
a. football b. boxing c. judo d. swimming
2. The underlined pronoun "him" refers to
a. Rashwan b. the final c. the people d. the opponent
3. The underlined word "known" is close in meaning to
a. unknown b. selfish c. famous d. lazy

b. Answer the following questions :

4. Give a suitable title for the passage.

5. How did Rashwan show a good sportsmanship?

6. What do you think the most important quality of a sportsman is?

4 Rewrite the following sentences:

1. Ahmed used to play tennis.

(not)

2. It was my grandfather's habit to read scientific books.

(used)

3. Omar was in the habit of playing tennis.

(used)

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Ayman (use) to play chess when he was young.

2. AB (Do) you use to travel alone ?

3. Marwa (not use) to drink coffee.

6 AB Complete the following dialogue :

Ahmed suggests going to the theatre. His brother Samir likes the idea.

Samir : How will we spend the weekend?

Ahmed: (1) ?

Samir : Ok, but (2)

Ahmed: I'll pay, don't worry.

Samir : But theatre tickets have become very expensive. (3) ?

Ahmed: I've got 40 pounds.

Samir : That's not enough. I think (4)

Ahmed: Father? I don't think he'll give me any.

Samir : No problem. Let it be later. We can go to the club then.

Ahmed: (5)

7 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on :

مجاوب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Your favorite sport"



SB Pages 16 & 17

Lesson

3

Sports Events

تنويه : الدرس الرابع القصة المقررة فى نهاية الكتاب

I

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

athletics (n)	ألعاب القوى	united (adj)	مُتحد
athletes (n)	رياضيون	excellence (n)	تفوق / مهارة عالية
nation (n)	دولة / أمة	represent (ed) (v)	يمثل
continents (n)	قارات [العالم]	gymnastics (n)	رياضة الجمباز
spirit (n)	الروح	weightlifting (n)	رياضة رفع الأثقال



Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

• Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

spirit – Gymnastics – continent – represents – mistake

1. Africa is a large that has many wonderful resources.
2. The of cooperation among the team helps the players with the cup.
3. is a sport that needs strength, balance and flexibility.
4. The flag the history and culture of the country.

Lesson 3 ► SB Pages 16 & 17

friendship (n)	صداقة	remind (ed) (v)	يُذكّر	sports event	حدث رياضي
ring (n)	حلقة / دائرة	celebrate (d) (v)	يحتفل	fan (n)	معجب / مشجع
values (n)	قيم	achievements (n)	إنجازات	expect (ed) (v)	يتوقع
international (adj)	دولي / عالمي	proudly (adv)	بفخر	host (ed) (v)	يستضيف

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

teach	values	يعلم القيم	celebrate	achievements	يحتفل بالإنجازات
join	the Olympics	ينضم إلى الأولمبياد	compete	fairly	يتنافس بإنصاف
respect	opponents	يحترم المنافسين			

Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym / Opposite المضاد
winning فوز	victory / success	losing / loss خسارة
famous مشهور	well-known	unknown غير معروف
united متحد	joined / connected	divided / separated مقسم / منفصل
peace سلام	harmony / calm	war / conflict حرب / صراع
friendship صداقة	companionship	enmity / disagreement عداوة / خلاف
remind يذكر	recall	forget / ignore ينسى / يتجاهل
ancient قديم	old / old - fashioned	modern / recent حديث
respect احترام	honor / regard	disrespect لا يحترم

Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
-ic	تكون الاسم من اسم الفاعل	athletic ألعاب القوى
-nce	تكون الاسم من الصفة	excellence تميز / تفوق
-ment	تكون الاسم من الفعل	achievement إنجاز
-ly	تكون الظرف من الصفة	fairly بإنصاف / بعدالة
-ed	تكون الصفة من الفعل	united متحد / موحد

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
teach يُعلم	taught	taught
come يأتي	came	come
hold يقيم	held	held

II

Skills

1. Reading and Listening



Reading

Pop Quiz

تدرب على ٩ من
قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع

on Lesson 3 SB page 16

The Olympic Games are the most famous sports event in the world. Today, they are held every four years in different countries.

Athletes⁽¹⁾ from more than 200 nations come together to **compete in**⁽²⁾ many sports such as football, swimming, athletics, and gymnastics. The **Olympic flag**⁽³⁾ with its five rings, represents the five **continents**⁽⁴⁾ **Africa**⁽⁵⁾, **Asia**⁽⁶⁾, **the Americas**⁽⁷⁾, **Europe**⁽⁸⁾, and **Australia**⁽⁹⁾ of the world **united**⁽¹⁰⁾ in friendship.



The Olympics are not only about winning medals. They also teach the **values**⁽¹¹⁾ of excellence, respect, and friendship. Athletes are expected to compete fairly, respect their opponents, and celebrate achievements together. Egypt has proudly joined the modern Olympics since 1912 and has won medals in weightlifting, wrestling, and judo.

The **Olympic spirit**⁽¹²⁾ reminds us that sport can bring people from different countries, cultures, and languages together in **peace**⁽¹³⁾.

- Make inferences.

عمل استنتاجات.

Learn

1. What do the five rings on the Olympic flag represent?

- Five continents.

Practice

2. If Egypt hosted the Olympics, what would you show the world about your country?

Answer
the following
questions.

(7) الأمريكتين	(6) قارة آسيا	(5) قارة أفريقيا	(4) قارات	(3) العلم الأولمبي	(2) ينافس في	(1) رياضيون
	(13) سلام	(12) الروح الأولمبية	(11) قيم	(10) متحد	(9) قارة استراليا	(8) قارة أوروبا



General Notes on Reading & Listening

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions التعبيرات			
united in friendship	متحدون بروح الصداقة	It makes me feel	يجعلني أشعر بـ ...
(be) held every four years	تقام كل أربع سنوات	come together	يتقابل ...
Prepositions حروف الجر			
in peace	في سلام	in my free time	في وقت فراغي
a big fan of	معجب بـ ... / مشجع لـ ...	on the Olympic Flag	على العلم الأولمبي

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

- Many from all over the world join the Olympic Games every four years.
a. scientists b. musicians c. athletes d. painters
- Egypt is a proud with a long history and rich culture.
a. city b. nation c. village d. continent
- AB My team showed and won the gold medal.
a. laziness b. sadness c. excellence d. poverty
- They were amazing when they showed their sporting to their opponents.
a. spirit b. hatred c. disrespect d. unfairness

SB & AB Exercises

Guessing the meaning

- SB The Olympic Games are the most sports event.
a. famous b. unknown c. injured d. funny
- SB The Olympic Games are every four years.
a. stopped b. held c. attacked d. walked
- SB More than 200 come together to compete.
a. nations b. cities c. rooms d. continents

8. **SB** The Olympics the values of excellence, respect and friendship.
a. teach b. lose c. miss d. stop

9. **SB** The five rings in the Olympic flag the five continents.
a. draw b. present c. post d. represent

Synonyms, Antonyms, Prefixes & Suffixes

10. **SB** The synonym of "famous" is ".....".
a. unknown b. well-known c. modern d. new

11. **SB** The words "peace" and "war" are
a. adjectives b. verbs c. synonyms d. antonyms

12. **SB** The antonym of the word "winning" is ".....".
a. victory b. success c. losing d. happiness

► El-Moasser Exercises

13. The two teams fairly and the best one won the medal.

a. fought b. competed c. killed d. hated

14. The Olympic spirit can people from different countries and cultures together.

a. bring b. keep away c. divide d. delete

Guessing the meaning

15. My friend got the gold medal. The word "got" here is similar in meaning to

a. lost b. bought c. missed d. won

16. They made a party when they got married. This means they their marriage.

a. hated b. damaged c. celebrated d. planted

17. Winning the first prize me feel happy.

a. made b. shocked c. did d. got

Synonyms, Antonyms, Prefixes & Suffixes

18. The suffix "-nce" turns the adjective "excellent" into a/an

a. adjective b. noun c. adverb d. verb

19. To form the adverb of the adjective "fair", we add the suffix ".....".

a. -al b. -tion c. -ly d. -ness

20. The antonym of the word "united" is ".....".

a. separated b. connected c. friendly d. joined

2. Speaking Skill

السؤال والإجابة عن الألعاب الأولمبية : Asking and answering questions about the Olympic Games:

Questions ?

1. Why do you think the Olympic Games are important for the world?
لماذا تعتقد أن الألعاب الأولمبية مهمة للعالم ؟
2. What values can students learn from international sports events?
ما القيم التي يمكن للطلاب تعلمها من الفعاليات الرياضية الدولية ؟
3. How can sports help people from different countries become friends?
كيف يمكن أن تساعد الرياضة الناس من دول مختلفة على أن يصبحوا أصدقاء ؟

Answers ✓

- Because they bring people from different countries together in peace.
لأنها تجمع الناس من مختلف الدول في سلام.
- They can learn teamwork, fair play, and respect.
يمكنهم تعلم العمل الجماعي واللعب النزيه والاحترام.
- Sports help people come together through competition and shared goals.
توحد الرياضة الناس من خلال المنافسة والأهداف المشتركة.



Pop Quiz on Speaking Skill

- Complete the following dialogue.

Aya and Manal are talking about the Olympic Games.

Aya : Do you think the Olympic Games are important ?

Manal : (1) They bring people together from different countries.

Aya : (2) ?

Manal : There are many values I admire ; friendship, excellence and respect.

Aya : (3) ?

Manal : Egypt can show proudly its history, culture and hospitality if it hosts the Olympic Games.

Aya : What values can students learn from international sports events ?

Manal : (4)

Aya : How often are the Olympic Games held ?

Manal : (5)

Aya : Four years ! That's amazing.

General Exercises



On Lesson 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. "Ancient" is the antonym of the word ".....".
a. famous b. old c. modern d. tidy
2. Egypt has proudly the modern Olympics since 1912.
a. connected b. joined c. separated d. united
3. To form the noun of the verb "achieve" we add the suffix ".....".
a. -ment b. -ness c. -tion d. -er
4. **AB** Olympic train for years to improve their skill and performance.
a. tourists b. teachers c. athletes d. writers

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

friendship – flag – continents – Athletes – values

The Olympic Games are the world's most famous sports event. The five Olympic rings represent the five (1) of the world, united in peace. (2) from over 200 nations come together to compete. The Olympics are not just about winning; they also teach important (3) like excellence, respect, and (4)

3 Rewrite the following sentences:

1. Ahmed used to play cards. (not)
.....
2. It was Marwa's habit to get up early. (used)
.....
3. No, he didn't use to travel by car. (Did)
.....

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. We didn't (used) to go out late.
2. There (use) to be a supermarket here.
3. **AB** My father (doesn't) use to like tea when he was young.

5 Complete the following dialogue :

Nadia and Sara are talking about the Olympic Games

Nadia : I'm a big fan of the Olympic Games.

Sara : Me too! (1) ?

Nadia : I really enjoy watching gymnastics. It requires so much skill.

Sara : (2) It needs a lot of practice, too.

Nadia : Why do you think the Olympics are so important?

Sara : (3)

Nadia : That's true. Friendship and respect are good values.

Sara : (4) ?

Nadia : Yes, I think Egypt can host the Olympic Games.

Sara : (5) !

6 AB Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on : **مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب**

“The role of sports in our life”

[illegible]



SB Pages 20 : 22

Lessons

5 & 6

► Let's Talk
► A Sports Report

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

team sport (n)	رياضة جماعية	individual sport (n)	رياضة فردية	fit (adj)	لائق بدنياً
refreshed (adj)	منتعش	focused (adj)	مركّز	inspiration (n)	إلهام / تحفيز
excitement (n)	حماس	tournament (n)	بطولة / دوري	championship (n)	بطولة
semi-final (n)	الدور النصف النهائي	benefit (ted) (v)	يستفيد	competition (n)	منافسة



Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

• Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

inspiration – focused – fit – benefits – puzzle

1. Omar goes to the gym every day to stay
2. Reem stayed during the exam and answered all the questions correctly.
3. Eating fruits your body.
4. Nature is a great source of for artists.

Lesson 5 ► SB Pages 20 & 21

active (adj)	نشيط	fitness (n)	لياقة بدنية	introduce (d) (v)	يقدم
relay race (n)	سباق التتابع	discipline (n)	انضباط / نظام	cheer (ed) (v)	يهلل - يهتف

Lesson 6 ► SB Page 22

encourage (d) (v)	يشجع	atmosphere (n)	جو / الأجواء	significance (n)	أهمية
national (adj)	قومي / محلي	accurate (adj)	دقيق / واضح	journalistic (adj)	صحفي

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

score	points	يسجل نقاط	have fun	يستمتع
	goals	يسدد أهداف	show respect	يبدى احترامه
stay	fit	يحافظ على لياقته	feel calm	يشعر بالهدوء
			feel focused	يشعر بالتركيز
try	a sport	يجرب رياضة	make friends	يكون صداقات

Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

الكلمة Word	المترادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym / Opposite
relaxing مريح	comfortable	stressful مجهد
active نشيط	lively / energetic	lazy / inactive غير نشيط
focused مركز	concentrated	distracted مشتت
cheer يهتف	support / encourage	discourage يثبط
fast سريع	quick	slow بطيء
discipline نظام / انضباط	order / regulation	chaos / disorder فوضى

Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	أمثلة Examples
-ing	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	relaxing استرخاء exciting ممتع / رائع
-ly	تكون الظرف	regularly بانتظام
-ness	تكون الاسم من الصفة	fitness لياقة
-ment	تكون الاسم من الفعل	excitement إثارة
-er	تكون الاسم من الفعل	winner فائز
-tion	تكون الاسم من الفعل	inspiration إلهام / تشجيع
-ful	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	wonderful رائع
-ed	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	focused مركز



Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

on Lesson 5 SB page 20

1. Salma and Mona are talking about sports.
2. Mona's favorite sport is basketball and she plays it after school with her friends.
3. Sometimes Mona and her friends **join**⁽¹⁾ small competitions.
4. Mona likes basketball because it is fast and **exciting**⁽²⁾ and it also helps her stay fit and active.
5. Mona and her friends work as a team and score **points**⁽³⁾.
6. Salma enjoys **swimming**⁽⁴⁾ and she thinks it's very relaxing.
7. Swimming makes Salma feel refreshed and **focused**⁽⁵⁾.
8. Salma usually goes to the sports club on weekends, meets new people and practices regularly.
9. Mona suggested **trying**⁽⁶⁾ each other's sport.
10. Salma suggested trying new sports, too.

(1) ينضم الى (2) ممتع (3) نقاط (4) السباحة (5) مركز (6) يجرب

on Lesson 6 SB page 22

1. Last week, the school team took part in the **National**⁽¹⁾ School Championship.
2. The **atmosphere**⁽²⁾ was full of excitement and energy.
3. Teams from many cities joined the **tournament**⁽³⁾ to show their best skills and spirit of **competition**⁽⁴⁾.
4. The coach encouraged every player to believe in themselves and play with teamwork and honesty.
5. Although the school team didn't win the **semi-final**⁽⁵⁾, the players showed great respect to the winners.
6. This event was a real **inspiration**⁽⁶⁾ for everyone.
7. This event taught them that sport is not only about **winning**⁽⁷⁾ medals, but also about friendship.

(1) قومي (2) الجو العام (3) بطولة (4) مسابقة (5) دور نصف نهائي (6) إلهام (7) الفوز

تنويه: الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات إنشائية أخرى:

* A sports report

* Your favorite sport

II

Skills

1. Reading and Listening

للمزيد من إتقان
المهارات اللغوية
كراسة المعاصر
للمهارات اللغوية

Reading

on Lesson 5 SB page 20

Salma : Hi Mona! What's your favorite sport?

Mona : My favorite sport is basketball. I play it with my friends after school, and sometimes we even join small competitions⁽¹⁾.

Salma : That sounds fun! Why do you like basketball so much?

Mona : Because it's fast and exciting, and it also helps me stay fit⁽²⁾ and active. I love the feeling when we work as a team and score points⁽³⁾. What about you?

Salma : I really enjoy swimming. For me, it's very relaxing, and I feel healthy⁽⁴⁾ and refreshed after I swim. It also makes me feel calm and focused⁽⁵⁾.

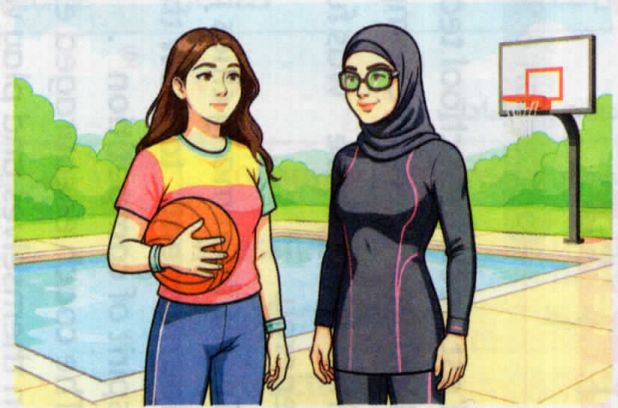
Mona : That's great! Swimming sounds like a wonderful way to stay strong⁽⁶⁾. Do you go to a club or a pool near your house?

Salma : Yes, I usually go to the sports club⁽⁷⁾ on weekends. It's also a good place to meet new people and practice regularly⁽⁸⁾.

Mona : Amazing! Maybe one day we can try each other's sport. You can join me for a basketball match, and I can try swimming with you.

Salma : That would be fun! Trying new sports is always a good idea⁽⁹⁾. We can both learn new skills⁽¹⁰⁾ and enjoy ourselves.

Mona : Exactly! Sports are not only for fitness but also for making friends and having fun⁽¹¹⁾.



(1) مسابقات	(2) لائق بدنياً	(3) نقاط	(4) صحي	(5) مركز	(6) قوى
(7) نادى رياضى	(8) بانتظام	(9) فكرة	(10) مهارات	(11) يستمتع	

The National School Championship⁽¹⁾

Last week, our school team **took part**⁽²⁾ in the National School Championship, and the atmosphere here was full of **excitement**⁽³⁾ and energy. Teams from many cities joined the tournament to show their best skills and spirit of competition.

Our coach **encouraged**⁽⁴⁾ every player to believe in themselves and play with teamwork and honesty. Although we didn't win in the **semi-final**⁽⁵⁾, the players showed great respect to the winners.

This event was a real **inspiration**⁽⁶⁾ for everyone. It taught us that sport is not only about winning medals, but also about friendship.

(1) بطولة (2) شارك في (3) إثارة (4) شجع (5) نصف النهائي (6) إلهام



General Notes on Reading & Listening

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

Expressions التعبيرات	
join small competitions ينضم لمسابقات صغيرة	take part in يشارك في
work as a team يعمل معًا كفريق	That sounds fun! هذا يبدو ممتعًا!
Prepositions حروف الجر	
on weekends في عطلات نهاية الأسبوع	believe in يؤمن بـ
cheer for يهتف لـ	refuse to يرفض أن



Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. Football and handball are sports.

a. individual b. pair c. double d. team

2. Playing sports helps you stay

a. short b. tall c. fit d. angry

3. The World Cup is the most famous football

a. championship b. match c. training d. club

4. You must stay during studying your lessons.

a. sleepy b. noisy c. focused d. greedy

5. Handball is not a/an sport, it is a team sport.
 a. individual b. team c. national d. international

► SB & AB Exercises

Guessing the meaning

6. **SB** new sports is always a good idea.
 a. Making b. Giving c. Trying d. Helping
7. **SB** Swimming sounds like a wonderful to stay strong.
 a. recipe b. line c. road d. way
8. **SB** Our team participated in the National School Championship. The word "participated" here means
 a. took part in b. lost hope c. missed time d. ate a meal
9. **SB** Our coach encouraged every player to believe in themselves. This means he them.
 a. left b. supported c. disliked d. hated

Collocations

10. **SB** Basketball helps me strong.
 a. stay b. dream c. shake d. speak
11. **SB** They worked as a team and many points.
 a. failed b. ate c. scored d. missed

Synonyms, Antonyms, Prefixes & Suffixes

12. **SB** The words "discipline" and "regulation" are
 a. verbs b. adverbs c. synonyms d. antonyms
13. **SB** "Encourage" is the antonym of "".
 a. inspired b. bored c. stressed d. discourage
14. **SB** To turn the verb "relax" into an adjective, we add the suffix "".
 a. -ing b. -ment c. -ness d. -able
15. **SB** The opposite of "active" is "".
 a. comfortable b. stressful c. inspired d. inactive

► El-Moasser Exercises

Guessing the meaning

16. They were the champions. They were the of the gold medal.
 a. winners b. sellers c. merchants d. sailors
17. Reading a book is really before sleeping.
 a. boring b. stressful c. relaxing d. tiring
18. You need to be very if you want to stay strong.
 a. late b. active c. lazy d. nervous

Collocations

19. I always play in a team and I a lot of friends.
 a. lose b. miss c. do d. make

Synonyms, Antonyms, Prefixes & Suffixes

20. The word "excite" can be a noun after adding the suffix ".....".
a. -ing b. -tion c. -ment d. -ness
21. To get the noun of the verb "win", we add the suffix ".....".
a. -al b. -er c. -or d. -ness
22. The word "cheer" has the same meaning as ".....".
a. discourage b. focus c. order d. support

2. Writing Skill

مهارة الكتابة

▶ Writing a sports report :

كتابة تقرير رياضي :

1 Learn

A sports report

- ▶ A sports report is a journalistic piece that covers sporting events and provides clear and accurate information.

◀ التقرير الرياضي هو عبارة عن مقال صحفي يغطي الأحداث الرياضية ويقدم معلومات واضحة ودقيقة.

How to organize the report كيفية تنظيم التقرير الرياضي

- ▶ It includes : ويشمل :

1. Headline :

عنوان رئيسي

- ▶ A title that reflects the event.

◀ عنوان يعكس الأحداث.

2. Introduction :

مقدمة

- ▶ A brief summary of the event, including teams, players and key details.

◀ ملخص صغير للحدث مشتملاً على الفرق واللاعبين والتفاصيل الهامة.

3. Main Events :

الأحداث الرئيسية

- ▶ Highlight key moments (goals, saves, etc...).

◀ تبرز اللحظات الهامة مثل الأهداف والإنقاذات وهكذا.

4. Conclusion :

الخاتمة

- ▶ Summarize the significance of future impact.

◀ لخص أهمية الأثر المستقبلي للحدث.

2 Practice

- ◉ Write a sports report of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on :
"A sports event you watched."

General Exercises



On Lessons 5 & 6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Everyone started to after the player scored the winning goal in the final match.
a. cheer b. read c. practice d. surprise
- A involves several team members running parts of a race.
a. marathon b. long jump c. relay race d. sprint
- AB** Debate means a/an or discussion.
a. argument b. game c. plan d. story
- To get the noun of the adjective "fit", we add the suffix " ".
a. -less b. -ness c. -ment d. -ship

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

encouraged – atmosphere – skills – cities – books

Last week, our school team took part in a competition. The (1) was full of excitement and energy. Teams from many different (2) joined the tournament. All teams showed their best (3) and spirit of competition. Our coach (4) every player and we played with teamwork and honesty. Although we didn't win the semi-final, the players showed great respect to the winners.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Faten and Sara are friends. They love sports. Faten loves basketball. She often plays it with her friends after school, and sometimes they take part in small competitions. She thinks it is fast, exciting, and helps her stay fit and active. She also likes working as a team and scoring points.

Sara enjoys swimming. It helps her relax and makes her feel healthy, calm, and focused. Sara usually goes to the sports club on weekends. There, she meets new people and practices regularly.

Faten thinks swimming is a wonderful way to stay strong. She suggests that one day they can try each other's sport. Sara agrees and says that trying new sports helps them learn new skills and enjoy themselves. Both girls believe that sports are great for fitness, friendship, and fun.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined word "exciting" is the opposite of
a. boring b. fun c. great d. nice
- Sara goes to the sports club
a. every morning b. on weekends
c. after school d. at night

3. Both girls think sports help people and have fun.
a. sleep more b. make friend c. eat less d. get tired

b. Answer the following questions:

4. What's the main idea of the text?

5. How does Sara feel after swimming?

6. In what ways can sports help people in their lives?

4 Rewrite the following sentences :

1. Yes, I used to live in Aswan. (Did)

2. I was in the habit of doing sports. (used)

3. There used to be a train station here. (not)

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. **AB** The knife (used to) cut meat.

2. He used to (was) fit.

3. What did Ghada (used) to play ?

6 Complete the following dialogue :

Ahmed and Karim are talking about the school sports day.

Ahmed : Hey Karim, did you attend the school sports day yesterday?

Karim : Yes! It was exciting. I really enjoyed the relay race.

Ahmed : (1)

Karim : Exactly! Everyone was shouting and cheering for their teams.

Ahmed : I think sports events are great. (2)

Karim : I think they also teach us discipline and teamwork.

Ahmed : (3)

Karim : Yes, I want to take part in the long jump.

Ahmed : That's a good idea ! (4)

Karim : You are right. Training hard is very important. I hope to win a medal.

Ahmed : (5)

7 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on :

مجاوب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"An important football match you watched"

Vocabulary	Language	Speaking
Lessons 1 & 2	"Used to" for past habits	1. The history of sport
fair play	اللعب النزيه	A: What sport shows a lot of skill?
champion	بطل	B: I think archery shows a lot of skill.
respect	احترام	A: Do you think sport connects
teamwork	العمل الجماعي	cultures as it did before ?
focus	تركيز / يركز	B: Yes, I think sport still connects
admiration	إعجاب	cultures because people from
athlete	رياضي	different countries meet, compete,
honesty	امانه	and share values.
strength	قوة	2. A true champion
speed	سرعة	A: What makes a sports champion
ancient	قديم	truly great ?
competition	مسابقة	B: Showing respect and fair play
compete	بتنافس	make a champion truly great.
honor	شرف	A: What did Rashwan do with his
Lesson 3		injured opponent ?
continent	قارة	B: He played fairly and never take
united	مُتحد	advantage of the injury.
excellence	تفوق	3. The Olympic Games
friendship	صداقة	A: Why do you think the Olympic
Lessons 5 & 6		Games are important for the
take part in	يشارك في	world ?
confidence	الثقة بالنفس	B: Because they bring people from
take advantage	يستفيد / يستغل	different countries together in
determination	إصرار/عزيمة	peace.
cheer	يهتف	
long jump	الوثب الطويل	
excitement	حماس	
encourage	بشجع	
inspiration	تحفيز/الهام	

Review



on unit 7

Giving the main idea of the text

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة [Giving the main idea] وهنا
نحتاج لتحديد الفكرة الرئيسية التي يدور حولها الموضوع.

اقرأ وقيم بالإجابة.

Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Sports have always been part of people's lives. In ancient Greece, athletes competed in the Olympic Games to show strength and bring communities together. Later, the Romans enjoyed chariot races and gladiator fights. Today, sports teach teamwork, fair play, and respect values that unite people all over the world.

The main idea of the passage is about ".....".

Or What is the main idea of the text?

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة في تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية بسبب وجود
عدة أفكار تم عرضها في الفقرة.

مفتاح الحل عند قراءة الفقرة تجد أن كل الأفكار تدور حول موضوع
واحد محدد هو [الفكرة الرئيسية] أو [العنوان المناسب] للفقرة.

Teamwork and fair play

تختبر سؤال المحادثة [dialogue] قدراتك للتعبير عن مواقف معينة.

اقرأ وقيم بالإجابة.

Complete the following dialogue :

Omar and Salma are talking about a sports event.

Omar : Hi Salma ! Did you enjoy the school sports day yesterday?

Salma : Yes, it was amazing ! I really liked the long jump.

Omar : (1)

Salma : I think Mariam jumped the farthest. She was great !

Omar : (2) I liked the relay race most.

Salma : Really ? I loved how everyone was cheering for their teams.

Omar : Yes ! The atmosphere was full of excitement.

Salma : Sports events are important. What do you think about that ?

Omar : True ! They also help us learn discipline and teamwork.

Salma : Next year, I'd like to take part in the relay race.

Omar : That's cool ! (3)

Salma : Thanks ! Maybe you can join me.

Omar : Sure ! (4)

التحدى تريد التحدث عن [العمل الجماعي واللعب العادل]
وتجد صعوبة في تكوين أسئلة والرد عليها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من الأسئلة والردود
التي قد تحدث بينك وبين زميلك.

Test on unit 7

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A is a soldier in the Middle Ages.
a. gladiator b. champion c. knight d. competitor
2. The opposite of "dangerous" is ".....".
a. difficult b. safe c. modern d. famous
3. We add the suffix "....." to the word "friend" to form the noun.
a. -ly b. -ship c. -ness d. -ment
4. **AB** "Capture" means to or record.
a. take b. ignore c. lose d. forget

The Answers :

1. 2. 3. 4.

2 **AB** Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

spirit – competitions – basketball – inspiration – compete

Many young people enjoy playing (1) because it is a fast and exciting sport. Schools often hold (2) where teams try to win and show their skills. What makes the game special is not only winning, but also the (3) of teamwork and cooperation. Many athletes say that their (4) comes from watching professional players and learning from them.

The Answers :

1. 2. 3. 4.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Fair play is one of the most important values in sports. It is the idea that all competitors should be treated with respect and honesty, following the rules of the game. A true champion is not just someone who wins, but someone who wins with honor. In 1936, German athlete Luz Long gave advice to his American rival Jesse Owens during the Olympic long jump competition. Owens was struggling, but with Long's advice, he went on to win the gold medal. Long won the silver medal and was the first to congratulate Owens. This act of sportsmanship is often remembered more than the final result itself. It showed the world that friendship and respect are more valuable than any medal. This spirit of fair play is what connects athletes and inspires new generations.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea of the text is "The importance of".
a. winning gold medals b. following rules
c. fair play and respect d. training hard
2. The underlined word "rival" has the same meaning as
a. coach b. opponent c. teammate d. friend
3. Luz Long showed sportsmanship by
a. winning the gold medal b. refusing to compete
c. ignoring his opponent d. helping Jesse Owens

b. Answer the following questions:

4. What does the underlined pronoun "It" refer to?
.....
5. When did the event between Luz Long and Jesse Owens happen?
.....
6. In your opinion, why is Luz Long's story still a symbol of fairness and honesty?
.....

The Answers :

- a. 1. 2. 3.
b. 4. 5. 6.

4 Story

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. In the mid-nineteenth century, sailors claimed to have seen a huge
a. whale b. sea monster c. shark d. giant squid
2. Professor Aronnax was invited to join the
a. party b. voyage c. army d. flight
3. The sea monster was described as having a body.
a. fish-like b. steel-like c. long, tentacled d. staff
4. Ned Land, a Canadian harpooner, became part of the
a. crew b. scientists c. expedition d. warship

b. Answer the following questions:

1. Why do you think the sailors were so fascinated with the idea of a sea monster?
.....
2. **AB** How was the monster moving?
.....

The Answers :

- a. 1. 2. 3. 4.
b. 1. 2.

5 Rewrite the following sentences:

1. Salma used to live in a small town. (not)
.....
2. They used to travel to Alexandria by train. (How)
.....
3. Yes, I used to play chess when I was young. (Did)
.....

The Answers :

1. 2. 3.

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. There (use) to be a cinema here, but it was knocked down.
2. **AB** They (use) to play the piano every day.
3. What (does) he use to do on holidays?

The Answers :

1. 2. 3.

7 Complete the following dialogue :

Adel and Bassem are talking about an important match.

Adel : Did you watch the football match last night?

Bassem : (1) My favorite team won.

Adel : (2)! I was cheering for them, too.

Bassem : The players showed great teamwork. They passed the ball very well.

Adel : That's true. (3) ?

Bassem : I think it was an amazing shot.

Adel : I agree. Sports events are great because (4)

Bassem : Definitely. (5) ?

Adel : The next match is on Friday.

The Answers :

1. 2. 3.
4. 5.

8 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A sports event you attended with your friends"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test on unit 7

for Al-Azhar students

اختبار لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1. Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Basant is reading an article about sports

Youssef: What are you doing, Basant?

Basant : (1)

Youssef : (2)

Basant : The article is about sports.

Youssef : Do you practice any sports?

Basant : (3)

Youssef: Swimming is amazing!

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. helps the players work together and win the match.

a. Teamwork b. Mistakes c. Problems d. Luck

2. A is a cart pulled by horses.

a. truck b. boat c. ship d. cart

3. There didn't to be a park here.

a. used b. use c. using d. uses

4. Where did he use ?

a. to stay b. stayed c. staying d. stays

3. Read and complete the text :

teamwork – physical – health – active - lazy

Sports are important for everyone. They help us stay (1) and healthy. When we play sports, we use our (2) strength to run, jump, and move. Sports also help our mental (3) because they make us happy and relaxed. Playing with friends builds (4) and makes our day better.

4. Rewrite the following sentences:

1. He used to ride a bike to school. (not)

2. Was Salma in the habit of swimming ? (Did)

3. Rahma used to get up late. (no longer)

4. He never played chess when he was young. (use)

5. Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Egypt is a great country in the north east of Africa. Cairo is the capital city. People of Egypt speak Arabic. There are many interesting places to visit in Egypt. The weather is fine in Egypt. Tourists visit Egypt to enjoy the beauty of nature. They can do many exciting things. They can enjoy beaches and delicious food. **They** can buy souvenirs and take photos of many historical places. They always say Egypt is a **safe** country. We love our country Egypt and we work **hard** to help it develop.

a. Answer the following questions:

1. What do tourists buy from Egypt?

2. What is the main idea of the passage?

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The underlined pronoun "**They**" refers to

a. Egyptians b. tourists
c. holidays d. beaches

4. Egypt is in the of Africa.

a. east b. west
c. south d. north east

6. Write a short paragraph of SIX (6) sentences on:

"Your favorite sport"

Unit EIGHT

Cultures and Traditions



SB Pages 24 : 37

Learning outcomes :

- **Reading**
 - identify the core values in short texts describing specific cultural practices.
- **Listening**
 - correctly identify three specific cultural details in a short interview about cultures and traditions.
- **Speaking**
 - compare and contrast traditions from two different countries.
- share personal experiences about a local or family tradition.
- **Language**
 - use the "defining relative clauses."
- **Writing**
 - write a short article expressing a personal opinion on the importance of traditions using at least two reasons to support their view.

I

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

traditions (n)	عادات	harmony (n)	توافق / تناغم	connected (adj)	مرتب / متصل
culture (n)	ثقافة	identity (n)	شخصية / هوية	celebrations (n)	احتفالات
reflect (ed) (v)	يعكس	the elderly	كبار السن	gather (ed) (v)	يجمع / يتجمع
ceremony (n)	مراسم / طقوس	wisdom (n)	حكمة	patience (n)	صبر



Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

identity - harmony - reflects - ceremony - patience

1. The clear lake the image of mountains like a mirror.
2. The school held a special to honor the top students.
3. Good teamwork creates among classmates.
4. Our clothes and language show our cultural

Lesson 1 ► SB Pages 25 : 27

celebrate (d) (v)	يحتفل	massive (adj)	ضخم / هائل	foreign (adj)	أجنبي
appear (ed)(v)	يظهر	snow sculptures	تماثيل من الجليد	Easter (n)	عيد القيامة
festivals (n)	مهرجانات / أعياد	creativity (n)	إبداع	weddings (n)	حفلات الزفاف
relatives (n)	أقارب	community spirit (n)	الروح المجتمعية	transformation (n)	تحول / تبدل
honor (n)	شرف / تكريم	alike (adj)	مشابه / على حد سواء	region (n)	منطقه / إقليم
greet (ed)(v)	يحيى	tourist (n)	سائح	gifts (n)	هدايا
perform(ed) (v)	يؤدي	gathering (n)	اجتماع / تجمع	feast (n)	وليمة / عيد
seasonal (adj)	موسمي			importance (n)	أهمية

Lesson 2 ▶ SB Pages 28 & 29

guest (n)	ضيف	consider (ed)(v)	يعتبر / يفكر	interview (n)	مقابلة رسمية
ignore (d) (v)	يتجاهل	source (n)	مصدر	talented (adj)	موهوب
preserve (d)	يحافظ / يحمي	record (ed)(v)	يسجل	cultural (adj)	ثقافي

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

culture	the way of life of a group of people	ثقافة
identity	who someone is	شخصية
harmony	peace or balance among people or things	توافق / تناغم
ceremony	special event like a wedding	مراسم / طقوس

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

feel	connected	يشعر بالترابط / الاندماج	show	creativity	يظهر الإبداع
tell	a story	يحكي قصة	exchange	gifts	يتبادل الهدايا
reflect	kindness	يعكس التعاطف	build	sculptures	يصنع تماثيل
	respect	يعكس الاحترام	bring	joy	يجلب الفرح

Synonyms and Antonyms

مرادفات ومتضادات

الكلمة Word	المترادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym / Opposite
connected	متصل / مرتبط	separated / disconnected غير متصل
common	شائع / معروف	unusual / special غير عادي - مميز
joy	سعادة / فرح	sadness حزن
harmony	توافق	disagreement / conflict عدم اتفاق - صراع
massive	ضخم	tiny / very small صغير الحجم
seasonal	موسمي	constant / continuous دائم / مستمر

Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	أمثلة Examples
-ful	تحويل الاسم إلى صفة	joyful مفرح
-ion	تكون الاسم من الفعل	celebration احتفال
-ed	تكون الصفة من الفعل	connected مرتبط / متصل
-dom	تكون الاسم من الصفة	wisdom حكمة
-al	تحويل الاسم إلى صفة	cultural ثقافي traditional تقليدي
-ce	تحويل الصفة إلى اسم	patience صبر importance أهمية
-ness	تحويل الصفة إلى اسم	kindness عطف
-ity	تحويل الصفة إلى اسم	creativity الإبداع
-ation	تكون الاسم من الفعل	transformation تحول

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

المضارع Present	الماضي Past	التصريف الثالث P.P.
tell يخبر	told	told
wear يرتدي	wore	worn
teach يدرس	taught	taught
build يبني	built	built

احرص على اقتناء

EL-MOASSER كتب

اللغة الإنجليزية

امنح ثقتك لمن يستحق





Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

on Lesson 1 SB page 25

Families and communities

1. Traditions are an important part of every **culture**⁽¹⁾.
2. Traditions help people feel **connected**⁽²⁾ to their families, **communities**⁽³⁾, and history.
3. Traditions appear in festivals, food, music, and **celebrations**⁽⁴⁾.
4. Each tradition tells a story about the values of a **society**⁽⁵⁾.
5. In Egypt, people wear new clothes and visit **relatives**⁽⁶⁾ during festivals.
6. Respect for the elderly is another important **value**⁽⁷⁾ in Egyptian culture.
7. In Japan, the tea **ceremony**⁽⁸⁾ reflects respect, patience, and harmony.
8. In the Sapporo Snow Festival, people gather to build massive ice and snow sculptures.
9. The snow celebration draws people and tourists alike and shows creativity, **community spirit**⁽⁹⁾ and the beauty of seasonal transformation.

(1) ثقافة	(2) مترابط	(3) مجتمعات	(4) احتفالات	(5) مجتمع
(6) أقارب	(7) قيمة	(8) مراسم	(9) روح مجتمعية	

on Lesson 2 SB page 28

A Cultural Interview

1. The **guest**⁽¹⁾ told the **interviewer**⁽²⁾ that in his town there is a festival which is celebrated every **spring**⁽³⁾.
2. People wear colorful clothes and play **traditional**⁽⁴⁾ music.
3. During the festival, families prepare **special**⁽⁵⁾ meals that are shared with neighbors.
4. Dancing and singing are also enjoyed, and everyone feels connected.
5. In the guest's culture, children are taught **customs**⁽⁶⁾ that show kindness and honor.
6. The guest thinks that culture interviews give us **real-life**⁽⁷⁾ stories.
7. Many interviews are **recorded**⁽⁸⁾ and then shared online, so traditions are preserved and passed to new generations.

(1) ضيف	(2) مُخَاوِر	(3) الربيع	(4) تقليدي
(5) خاص / مميز	(6) تقاليد	(7) حياة واقعية	(8) تُسجل

تنويه : الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات إنشائية أخرى :

* Traditions and cultures

* Festivals and ceremonies

Reading and Listening



Reading

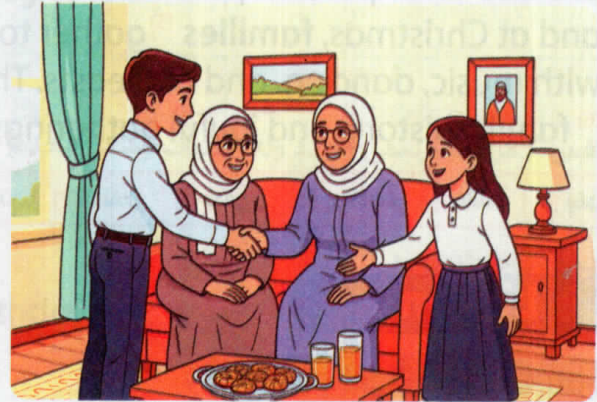
Pop Quiz

تدرب على ٩ من
قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع

on Lesson 1 SB page 25

Families and Communities

Traditions ⁽¹⁾ are an important part of every **culture** ⁽²⁾. They help people feel **connected to** ⁽³⁾ their families, communities, and history. Around the world, traditions appear in festivals, food, music, and **celebrations** ⁽⁴⁾. Each tradition tells a story about the values of a **society** ⁽⁵⁾.



For example, in Egypt, it is **common for** ⁽⁶⁾ people to wear new clothes and visit relatives during festivals. This tradition, which brings joy and excitement, shows the importance of family. Another important value in Egyptian culture is respect for **the elderly** ⁽⁷⁾. Younger people are taught to greet and care for older people, which reflects kindness and respect. In Japan, the tea **ceremony** ⁽⁸⁾, which is carefully performed step by step, reflects respect, **patience** ⁽⁹⁾ and **harmony** ⁽¹⁰⁾. Another famous tradition is the Sapporo snow festival in Japan, where people **gather** ⁽¹¹⁾ to build massive ice and snow **sculptures** ⁽¹²⁾ that light up the winter city. The celebration, which draws people and tourists alike, shows **creativity** ⁽¹³⁾, **community spirit** ⁽¹⁴⁾ and the beauty of seasonal **transformation** ⁽¹⁵⁾.

Although traditions are different, they often teach similar values such as respect, friendship, and sharing. Some customs are hundreds of years old, while others are modern but are quickly becoming part of cultural **identity** ⁽¹⁶⁾.

(8) احتفال	(7) كبار السن	(6) شائع بين	(5) المجتمع	(4) احتفالات	(3) مرتبط بـ	(2) ثقافة	(1) عادات
(16) هوية	(15) تحول / تبادل	(14) الروح المجتمعية	(13) الإبداع	(12) تماثيل	(11) يتجمع	(10) توافق / انسجام	(9) صبر



Reading

• on Lesson 1 SB page 27

Traditions in Italy

Italy is a country rich in traditions that bring families and **communities** ⁽¹⁾ together. One of the most famous traditions is the **celebration** ⁽²⁾ of food. Italians enjoy long family **gathering** ⁽³⁾, often starting with pasta and ending with coffee. Every region has its own special dishes, such as pizza in Naples and risotto in Milan. **Festivals** ⁽⁴⁾ are also an important part of Italian culture. At Easter, people share special cakes, and at Christmas, **families** ⁽⁵⁾ gather to exchange gifts. Weddings, too, are celebrated with music, dancing, and big feasts. These traditions show how much Italians **value** ⁽⁶⁾ family, history, and joyful gatherings.

(1) مجتمعات (2) احتفال (3) تجمع (4) احتفالات (5) عائلات (6) يقدر



Listening

• on Lesson 2 SB page 28

An interview between a presenter and a guest.

Presenter: Welcome to Culture Talk! Today we are learning about **traditions** ⁽¹⁾ and customs. Can you share an example from your country?

Guest: Of course. In my town, there is a **festival** ⁽²⁾ which is celebrated every spring. People wear **colorful** ⁽³⁾ clothes and play traditional music, which makes the streets full of life.

Presenter: That sounds exciting! What do people usually do during this festival?

Guest: Families prepare **special** ⁽⁴⁾ meals that are shared with neighbors. Dancing and singing are also enjoyed, and everyone feels connected.

Presenter: Wonderful. In Egypt, many people **respect** ⁽⁵⁾ the elderly, who are considered a source of wisdom. Is there a similar value in your culture?

Guest: Yes, respect for older people is very important. Children are taught customs that show kindness and honor.

Presenter: One last question-why are **cultural** ⁽⁶⁾ interviews important?

Guest: Because they give us real-life stories. Many interviews are recorded then shared online, so traditions are preserved and passed to new **generations** ⁽⁷⁾.

(1) تقاليد (2) احتفال (3) ملون (4) مميز (5) يحترم (6) ثقافي (7) أجيال



General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 customs - traditions - habits

* customs (n)

عادات اجتماعية [مرتبطة بسلوك الناس بصفة مستمرة]

- ▶ Egyptians have **customs** that are hundreds of years old.

* traditions (n)

تقاليد [انتقلت عبر الأجيال مرتبطة بالثقافة والهوية]

- ▶ Celebrating Ramadan is one of our important **traditions**.

* habits (n)

عادات [شخصية للفرد وليس المجتمع]

- ▶ I have a **habit** of waking up early every day.

2 ceremony - celebration - feast - festival

* ceremony (n)

طقس / مراسم [رسمي محدد وله خطوات وشكل محدد]

- ▶ The wedding **ceremony** started at 7 p.m.

* celebration (n)

احتفال [يحدث سعيد]

- ▶ We had a **celebration** for my brother's birthday.

* feast (n)

وليمة / احتفال بالطعام

- ▶ Egyptians celebrate Eid El-Fitr with a big **feast**.

* festival (n)

مهرجان أو عيد شعبي [يحدث كل سنة عادة]

- ▶ The Spring **festival** in China is famous.

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

Expressions التعابير

step by step	خطوة بخطوة	exchange gifts	يتبادل الهدايا
source of wisdom	مصدر الحكمة	light up the winter city	تضيء المدينة الشتوية
passed to new generations	انتقلت للأجيال الجديدة	draw people and tourists alike	يجذب الأشخاص والسائحين على حد سواء
real- life stories	قصص من الواقع		

Prepositions حروف الجر

connected to	مرتبط أو متصل بـ	rich in	غني بـ
common for	شائع بين	care for	يعتنى بـ



Exercise

on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary

- We must show respect and kindness to the in our community.
a. subjects b. lessons c. elderly d. reflection
- Her wedding was amazing. It was a nice party.
a. ceremony b. cinema c. rope d. menu
- The teacher told students that success needs hard work and
a. tradition b. festival c. ceremony d. patience
- If you have, you can make good decisions.
a. enemies b. agriculture c. wisdom d. illness

SB & AB Exercises

Definitions

- SB** means peace or balance among people or things.
a. Harmony b. Fight c. Argument d. Defeat

Guessing the meaning

- AB** Each tradition tells a story about the of a society.
a. way b. road c. space d. values
- SB** It is popular for people to wear new clothes during festivals. The word "popular" here means ".....".
a. common b. unknown c. strange d. silly
- SB** Traditions are and passed to new generations.
a. walks b. preserved c. threw d. painted

Collocations

- SB** Traditions help people connected.
a. fail b. fill c. fall d. feel
- SB** The Snow Festival shows and draws people and tourists alike.
a. sadness b. laziness c. anger d. creativity

Synonyms, Antonyms, Prefixes & Suffixes

- SB** The children shouted with joy when they saw the gifts. The antonym of "joy" is ".....".
a. sadness b. surprise c. pleasure d. happiness

12. **SB** To form the noun from the adjective "wise", we add the suffix ".....".
 a. -ion b. -dom c. -ship d. -al
13. **SB** "Patience" and "tolerance" are
 a. antonyms b. opposites c. synonyms d. adjective
14. **SB** The suffix "-ness" turns the word "kind" into a/an
 a. adverb b. verb c. noun d. adjective

► El-Moasser Exercises

Definitions

15. The way of life of a group of people means ".....".
 a. agriculture b. tourism c. culture d. stadium
16. means what someone is.
 a. Hobby b. Sport c. Marriage d. Identity

Guessing the meaning

17. During festivals, we meet people of our family. This means we meet our
 a. relatives b. enemies c. rivals d. opponents
18. We our guests warmly.
 a. chopped b. paid c. shouted d. greeted
19. My brother is at drawing. He draws a lot of nice paintings.
 a. talented b. weak c. funny d. angry
20. Families always gifts with each other at festivals.
 a. steal b. stay c. exchange d. charge

Collocations

21. My grandpa used to us funny stories.
 a. keep b. tell c. see d. draw
22. Your culture and traditions your kindness.
 a. reflect b. ask c. repeat d. draw

Synonyms, Antonyms, Prefixes & Suffixes

23. The word "connected" is the opposite of ".....".
 a. popular b. common c. separated d. joined
24. To get the adjective of the word "culture", we add the suffix ".....".
 a. -ness b. -er c. -al d. -y
25. The word "massive" has the same meaning as ".....".
 a. tiny b. enormous c. small d. weak

2. Speaking Skill

مهارة التحدث

► Traditions and Cultures :

العادات والثقافات :

Questions ?

1. What traditions does your family celebrate?

ما التقاليد التي تحتفل بها عائلتك؟

2. How do traditions make people feel connected to their culture?

كيف تجعل التقاليد الأشخاص يشعرون بالارتباط بثقافتهم؟

3. Why is it important to exchange cultures?

لماذا من المهم تبادل الثقافات ؟

Answers ✓

- We celebrate Ramadan and Eid El-Fitr together every year.

نحتفل بشهر رمضان وعيد الفطر معا كل عام.

- They help them remember their history and enjoy time with family.

تساعدهم على تذكر تاريخهم والاستمتاع بوقتهم مع العائلة.

- Because they teach us values like respect for the elderly and kindness.

لأنها تُعلّمنا قيما مثل الاحترام لكبار السن واللطف.

► Festivals and respect for the Elderly :

الأعياد واحترام كبار السن :

Questions ?

1. What is your favorite festival in Egypt? Why?

ما هو احتفالك المفضل في مصر؟ ولماذا؟

2. How do festivals bring people together?

كيف تجمع المهرجانات بين الناس؟

3. Which tradition from another country do you find interesting?

أي تقليد من دولة أخرى تراه مثيرا للاهتمام؟

Answers ✓

- I like Eid El-Fitr because we visit relatives and share happiness.

أحب عيد الفطر لأننا نزار الأقارب ونشارك السعادة.

- People meet, celebrate, and share traditions with others.

يلتقى الناس ويحتفلون ويتشاركون التقاليد مع الآخرين.

- The Japanese tea ceremony because it shows respect and harmony.

حفل الشاي الياباني لأنه يُظهر الاحترام والانسجام.



Pop Quiz on Speaking Skill

- Complete the following dialogue.

Ramy and Seif are talking about traditions.

Ramy : Hi Seif. Do you think it's important to exchange cultures and traditions?

Seif : (1)

Ramy : (2) ?

Seif : Traditions help us feel connected through cooperation, and having fun with family.

Ramy : (3) ?

Seif : Different cultures teach us values like respect for the elderly and kindness.

Ramy : How do people show respect for the elderly?

Seif : (4)

Ramy : You're right, it's important to greet and help them.

Seif : How do festivals bring people together?

Ramy : (5)

Seif : Me, too. I meet my relatives and have nice meals together at festivals.

III

Language in use

Relative Clauses

عبارات الوصل

- We use relative clauses to give more information about nouns : people, places, things, and animals.

◀ نستخدم جمل الوصل لتقديم معلومات أكثر عن الأسماء: أشخاص، أماكن، أشياء، حيوانات.

Relative Pronouns

ضمائر الوصل

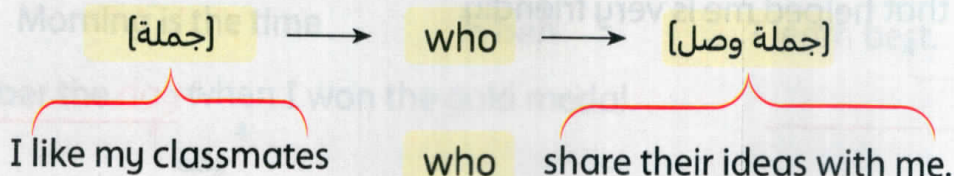
"who" We use **"who"** to talk about people.

- نستخدم **"who"** بمعنى [الذي / التي] للإشارة إلى الأشخاص [العاقل] :

ex. I like my classmates. They share their ideas with me.



people



لاحظ حذف الضمير **(They)** من الجملة الثانية عند الربط بـ **[who]**:

ex. The man **who** is wearing a hat is my uncle.



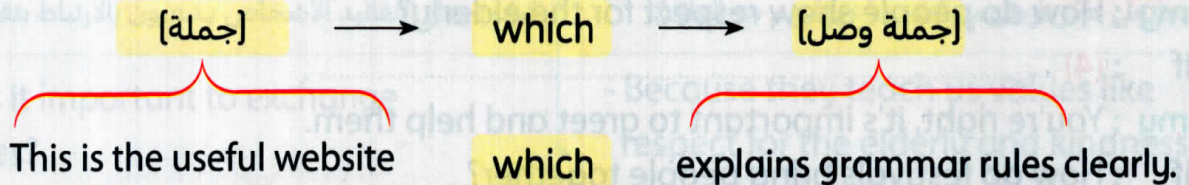
"which" We use **"which"** to talk about things / animals.

- نستخدم **"which"** بمعنى **(الذي / التي)** للإشارة إلى الأشياء / الحيوانات **(غير العاقل)**:



ex. This is a useful website. It explains grammar rules clearly.

things /
animals



لاحظ حذف الضمير **(It)** عند الربط بـ **[which]**.

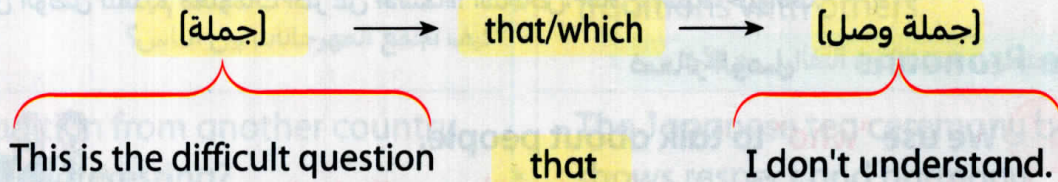
ex. This is the festival **which** is celebrated every year.



"that" → We use **"that"** to talk about both people and things. (It is less formal).

نستخدم **"that"** بمعنى **(الذي/التي)** للتحدث عن كلاً من الأشخاص والأشياء وتعتبر **"that"** أقل شيوعاً من **"which"** , **"who"** لغة **(غير رسمية)**.

ex. This is the difficult question. I don't understand it.



لاحظ حذف الضمير **(it)** عند الربط بـ **[that]**:

ex. The boy **that** helped me is very friendly.



"whose" → We use **"whose"** to show possession.

نستخدم **"whose"** للإشارة إلى الملكية.

ex. Omar is my friend. **His** book was lost.

[جملة]

whose

[جملة وصل]

Omar is my friend

whose

book was lost.

لاحظ حذف **"His"** والربط بضمير الوصل **"whose"** ليبدل على الملكية.

ex. This is the boy **whose** book is lost.

الملكية

"where" We use **"where"** to talk about places.

- نستخدم **"where"** بمعنى [حيث] للإشارة إلى الأماكن :

ex. This is a big shop. I buy sweets there.



[جملة]

where

[جملة وصل]

This is the big shop

where

I buy sweets.

لاحظ حذف **(there)** عند الربط بـ **(where)** :

ex. This is the **classroom** **where** we study science.

مكان

"when" → We use **"when"** to talk about time.

ex. I learn best in the morning time.

نستخدم **"when"** بمعنى [عندما] للإشارة إلى الوقت :

[جملة]

when

[جملة وصل]

Morning is the time

when

I learn best.

ex. I remember the **day** **when** I won the gold medal.

وقت



Exercises on Language in use

1. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

► SB & AB Exercises

1. **SB** The book (who) I borrowed is very interesting.
2. **SB** The man (which) spoke to us is my teacher.
3. **SB** The city (where) we visited last summer is very old.
4. **SB** 2006 was the year (where) my brother was born.
5. **SB** That's the time (who) we met our teacher for the first time.
6. **SB** I know the city (who) has a famous museum.
7. **SB** She is the teacher (where) teaches English.
8. **SB** The festival (when) is held every spring is very colorful.

► El-Moasser Exercises

9. I watched a documentary (where) explains the history of Egypt.
10. I'll never forget the day (who) my father bought me a new bike.
11. That's the shop (whose) I bought my new phone.
12. The car (when) I bought last year is very fast.
13. He is the man (which) won the gold medal.
14. The scientist (whose) discovered the medicine was honored.
15. Amira is the girl (who) ticket was lost at the museum.

2. Rewrite the following sentences:

► SB & AB Exercises

1. **SB** A festival is a special event. People celebrate it every year. (that)
.....
2. **SB** The teacher explained the tradition. Students asked about it. (which)
.....
3. **SB** I met a journalist. He writes articles about the environment. (who)
.....
4. **SB** This is the boy. His book is lost. (whose)
.....

► El-Moasser Exercises

5. I visited the museum. It was built by the ancient Egyptians. (which)

6. This is the park. We play football there every Friday. (where)

7. The laptop is expensive. I bought it yesterday. (that)

8. I'll never forget the day. I met my best friend on that day. (when)

9. The boy is very polite. His father is a doctor. (whose)

10. The city is very old. My grandparents were born there. (where)

11. The man helped me. He works in this hospital. (who)

12. This is the story. It teaches children about honesty. (that)

13. Summer is the season. We travel to the beach then. (when)

14. Basant is a clever girl. Her father is a teacher. (whose)

احرص على اقتناء

EL-MOASSER كتيبي

اللغة الإنجليزية

امح ثققت لمن يستحق



Grammar in points

Relative Clauses

تدرب على القاعدة اللغوية في شكل نقاط طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية
(أهم الأفكار التي وردت في كتاب الطالب والتقييمات)

1. Rewrite Notes

Sentence	Answer	Explanation
1. AB The patient bought the medicine. The doctor gave it to him. (which)	The patient bought the medicine which the doctor gave to him.	تحل which محل الكلمة المكررة [it] في الجملة الثانية، وتأتي بعدها مباشرة.
2. SB This is the guest. We interviewed him on TV. (who)	This is the guest who we interviewed on TV.	يستخدم who لربط جملتين عن العاقل [The guest] ويحل محل المفعول به [him] في الجملة الثانية.
3. SB This is the boy. His book is lost. (whose)	This is the boy whose book is lost.	نستخدم whose للتعبير عن الملكية. يربط بين اسم عاقل [the boy] والشئ الذي يملكه [His book]، ويحل محل ضمير الملكية [His].
4. SB I love summer. We go to the sea in summer. (when)	I love summer when we go to the sea.	نستخدم when للإشارة إلى الوقت [summer]. يحل محل حرف الجر والزمن المكرر [in summer] في الجملة الثانية.
5. SB This is the shop. I buy sweets there. (Where)	This is the shop where I buy sweets.	يستخدم where للإشارة إلى المكان [The shop]. تحل محل ظرف المكان [there] في الجملة الثانية.

2. Correction Notes

Sentence	Correction	Explanation
1. AB I met Ameer (who) father is an engineer.	whose	يستخدم ضمير الوصل whose للدلالة على الملكية الكلمة التي تلي الفراغ هي اسم (father). يخص الشخص المُشار إليه. (Ameer)
2. AB Ramy bought a mobile (whose) was expensive.	which	يستخدم ضمير الوصل (which) للإشارة إلى شئ غير عاقل (mobile) في الجملة الوصفية.
3. AB Mansoura is the place (when) I was born.	where	يستخدم ضمير الوصل where للإشارة إلى المكان (Mansoura). الذي حدث فيه الفعل.
4. AB This is the hotel (when) we stay.	where	يستخدم ضمير الوصل where للإشارة إلى مكان (hotel).
5. AB "Tom, (where) grew up in London, has lived in Egypt for 5 years."	who	يستخدم ضمير الوصل who للإشارة إلى شخص عاقل (Tom)

General Exercises



On Lessons 1 & 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A is a special event like a wedding or a festival.
a. culture b. ceremony c. harmony d. community
2. "Massive" and "....." are antonyms.
a. tiny b. huge c. joined d. popular
3. We add the suffix "....." to the word "joy" to get the adjective.
a. -er b. -al c. -ful d. -ness
4. **AB** People should live together in
a. danger b. noise c. harmony d. fear

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

harmony - ceremony - elderly - sculptures - connected

Traditions are an important part of every culture . They help people feel
(1) to their history, community, and give them a sense of respect. In Japan,
the tea (2) is performed carefully to reflect respect, patience and (3)
In the Sapporo Snow Festival, people gather to build massive ice and snow
(4) Although traditions are different, they often teach similar values such
as respect, friendship, and sharing.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Italy is a country rich in traditions that bring families and communities together. One of the most famous traditions is the celebration of food. Italians enjoy long family gathering, often starting with pasta and ending with coffee. Every region has its own **special** dishes, such as pizza in Naples and risotto in Milan. Festivals are also an important part of Italian culture. At Easter, people share cakes, and at Christmas, families gather to exchange gifts. Weddings, too are celebrated with music, dancing, and big feasts. These traditions show how much Italians value family, history, and joyful gatherings.

Grammar in points

Exercises

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Italians enjoy long family
a. separating b. gathering c. leaving d. traveling
2. The underlined word "special" is the opposite of " " .
a. usual b. unusual c. unique d. uncommon
3. Italians value family and
a. festivals b. history c. traveling d. drawing

b. Answer the following questions.

4. What's the main idea of the text?

.....

5. How do Italians celebrate of food?

.....

6. Do you think sharing traditions is important? Why?

.....

4 Rewrite the following sentences:

1. This man is my uncle. He is wearing glasses. (who)

.....

2. This is the month. We celebrate Sham El-Nessim in it. (when)

.....

3. This is the mall. I buy clothes from it. (where)

.....

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. This is the boy (which) helped me yesterday.

2. This is the hospital (who) my father works.

3. Winter is the season (where) we go to Luxor.

6 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN(110) words on:

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Your favorite festival"

.....

.....

.....

.....



SB Pages 30 & 31

Lesson

3

► Shared Values

⚠ تنويه : الدرس الرابع القصة المقررة فى نهاية الكتاب

I

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

customs (n)	عادات مجتمعية	alive (adj)	على قيد الحياة	purpose (n)	غرض / سبب
hospitality (n)	كرم الضيافة	long-standing (adj)	طويل الأمد	generations (n)	أجيال
graves (n)	مقابر	generosity (n)	كرم / سخاء	grand (adj)	كبير / عظيم
memory (n)	ذاكرة / ذكرى	honor (ed) (v)	يُكرَّم	lunar (adj)	قمرى / خاص بالقمر



Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

• Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

memory - hospitality - grand - purpose - long-standing

1. The of the charity is to help the poor.
2. We should build friendship that depends on respect and cooperation.
3. Visitors enjoyed the of the people who welcomed them kindly.
4. The king lived in a palace with beautiful decorations.

Lesson 3 ► SB Pages 30 & 31

envelope (n)	ظرف	belong (ed)	يخص / ينتمى إلى	polite (adj)	مؤدب / مهذب
decorate (d) (v)	يزين	tomb (n)	مقبرة	the dead (n)	الموتى
warmly (adv)	بلطف / بود	luck (n)	حظ	welcome(d) (v)	يرحب

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

play	a role	يلعب دورًا	reflect	generosity	يعكس الكرم
offer	tea / coffee	يقدم الشاي أو القهوة	decorate	graves	يزين القبور

Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومضادات

الكلمة Word	المترادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym / Opposite
hospitality حسن الضيافة	kindness / generosity / friendliness	unfriendliness / rudeness عدم الود / سوء التصرف
honor شرف / تكريم	respect / recognition	disrespect / dishonor عدم احترام
generation جيل	age group / era	ancestors الأسلاف / الأجيال السابقة
long-standing طويل الأمد	long-lasting	short-lived / temporary قصير الأمد / مؤقت
alive على قيد الحياة	living	dead / lifeless ميت / بلا حياة
important هام	essential / valuable	unimportant غير هام / تافه

Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	أمثلة Examples
-ion	يحول الفعل إلى اسم	generation جيل
-ity	يحول الصفة إلى اسم	generosity الكرم
-ness	يحول الصفة إلى اسم	happiness سعادة
-ly	يحول الصفة إلى ظرف	warmly بود / بلطف

أحرص على اقتناء



كتاب EL-MOASSER

في اللغة الإنجليزية

امنح ثقتك لمن يستحق

Reading and Listening



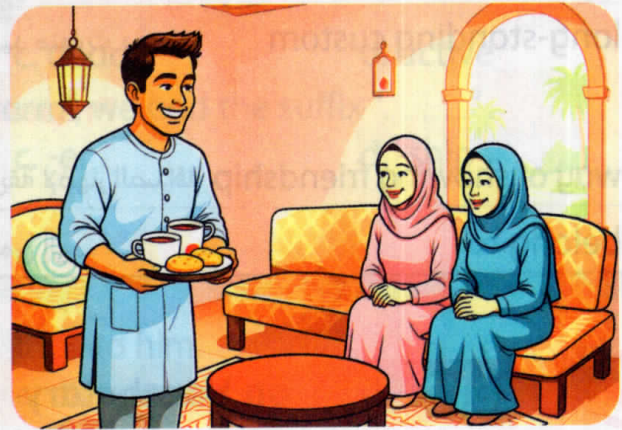
Reading

on Lesson 3 SB page 30

Customs ⁽¹⁾ are everyday practices that show the culture of a community. They are not always big festivals, but they play an important role in people's lives. Around the world, customs may look different, but they often share the same purpose: to bring people together.

In Mexico, people celebrate the Day of the Dead by decorating graves with flowers and candles. Families believe this custom **honors** ⁽²⁾ their loved ones and keeps their memory alive. In China, the Lunar New Year is a time when families clean their houses, wear new clothes, and give red envelopes with money to children. This custom shows hope for luck and happiness. In Egypt, **hospitality** ⁽³⁾ is a long-standing custom that reflects generosity and respect. Guests are welcomed warmly, and a lot of food is often prepared. **Offering** ⁽⁴⁾ tea, coffee, or traditional dishes is not just polite—it is a way of showing friendship and care.

These customs may belong to different cultures, but they all remind us of shared values: love, respect, and community. Customs, whether simple or grand, keep traditions alive and connect **generations** ⁽⁵⁾.



Pop Quiz

تدرب على ٩ من
قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع

- Extracting information.

استخراج المعلومات.

Answer
the following
questions.

Learn

1. What customs do families in Mexico usually follow during the Day of the Dead?

- They celebrate the Day of the Dead by decorating graves with flowers and candles.

Practice

2. What customs do families in Egypt usually follow with guests?



General Notes on Reading & Listening

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

Expressions التعبيرات			
look different	يبدو مختلفًا	whether simple or grand	سواء كان بسيطًا أو عظيمًا
The Lunar New Year	السنة القمرية الجديدة	welcome warmly	يرحب بشدة
keep their memory alive	يحافظ على ذكراهم	connect generations	يربط الأجيال
long-standing custom	تقليد متوارث		
Prepositions حروف الجر			
way of showing friendship	طريقة لإظهار الصداقة	remind of	يذكر شخص بشيء
belong to	ينتمي إلى ...	in daily life	في الحياة اليومية



Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

- They showed when they gave food and drink to the strangers.
a. greed b. sadness c. generosity d. anger
- When people die, we bury them in
a. caves b. graves c. mountains d. hills
- The company has the hardworking and talented workers.
a. honored b. avoided c. neglected d. ignored

SB & AB Exercises

Guessing the meaning

- SB** Customs are everyday practices. The word "everyday" can be replaced with
a. daily b. monthly c. yearly d. annually
- SB** In Mexico, people celebrate the Day of the Dead by decorating graves with flowers. This means they decorate their
a. clubs b. schools c. cinemas d. tombs
- SB** is a long-standing custom. The Egyptians are very famous for it.
a. Annoyance b. Singing c. Sadness d. Hospitality

Collocations

7. **SB** Festivals and customs people together.
a. bring b. ask c. leave d. separate
8. **SB** Customs an important role in people's lives.
a. stop b. play c. write d. feel

Synonyms, Antonyms, Prefixes & Suffixes

9. **SB** To form the noun from the verb "generate", we add the suffix ".....".
a. -tion b. -al c. -ness d. -ly
10. **SB** The word "....." is the opposite of "alive".
a. living b. lively c. dead d. active
11. **SB** To get the adverb from the adjective "warm", we add the suffix ".....".
a. -ness b. -ly c. -er d. -ship

► El-Moasser Exercises

Guessing the meaning

12. This is Hatem's car. This means that the car to him.
a. belongs b. rings c. disappears d. loses
13. Customs can be simple or
a. small b. slow c. tiny d. grand
14. Values are passed from one to another.
a. energy b. generation c. purpose d. way
15. His made everyone respect him; he always helped others.
a. generosity b. anger c. laziness d. indifference

Collocations

16. Egyptians' hospitality generosity.
a. reflects b. destroys c. draws d. deals
17. Customs families' memory alive.
a. play b. do c. keep d. turn

Synonyms, Antonyms, Prefixes & Suffixes

18. The antonym of "honor" is ".....".
a. glory b. disrespect c. award d. pride
19. The word "hospitality" and "kindness" are
a. synonyms b. adjectives c. opposites d. antonyms
20. Education is a long-standing process. "long-standing" is the antonym of
a. temporary b. permanent c. long-lasting d. friendly

General Exercises



On Lesson 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The Egyptians are famous for their hospitality. The word "hospitality" is similar in meaning to
a. community b. welcome c. generosity d. honor
- To form the noun from the adjective "happy", we add the suffix " " .
a. -al b. -or c. -ness d. -ment
- "Honor" and "respect" are
a. antonyms b. synonyms c. opposites d. adverbs
- A is all the people of a similar age group in a society.
a. community b. generation c. custom d. hospitality

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

envelopes - happiness - customs - purpose - reflects

Customs are everyday practices that play an important role in people's lives. They may look different, but they often share the same (1) : to bring people together. In China, during the Lunar New Year, families clean their houses and give red (2) with money to children. This custom shows hope for luck and (3) In Egypt, hospitality is a custom that (4) generosity and respect.

3 Rewrite the following sentences:

- Hospitality is a custom. It reflects generosity. (which)
.....
- My grandmother is a kind person. She tells us traditional stories. (who)
.....
- A community is a nice place. People live and work together there. (where)
.....

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. **AB** I met Ameer (who) father is an engineer.
2. I know the city (who) my father grew up.
3. This is the time (where) we celebrate with our family.

5 AB Complete the following dialogue :

Ahmed suggests visiting his uncle's farm and Emad agrees.

Ahmed : Hi, Emad. Where are you going to spend your weekend ?

Emad : Hi, Ahmed. Really, I have no idea.

Ahmed : (1)

Emad : Sorry, I don't want to go to the beach. What about the theatre ?

Ahmed : (2)

Emad : Then where shall we go ?

Ahmed : What do you think of visiting my uncle's farm ?

Emad : (3) ?

Ahmed : It's not far from Cairo. So, it will take us an hour to reach it.

Emad : OK! But what does your uncle grow and keep there ?

Ahmed : (4)

Emad : (5) ?

Ahmed : We will go by car.

Emad : I'm sure it will be a fantastic visit.

6 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN(110) words on:

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A custom in your family"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



SB Pages 34 : 36

Lessons

5 & 6

► Let's Talk
► A Short Article

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

cultural expert (n)	خبير ثقافي	sense of identity (n)	الشعور بالهوية	importance (n)	أهمية
belonging (n)	الانتماء	carnival (n)	مهرجان	shape (d)(v)	يُشكّل
unity (n)	الوحدة / التماسك	strengthen (ed)(v)	يقوّي		



Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

• Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

carnival – belonging – expert – strengthen – weaken

1. A cultural studies people's traditions and customs in different countries.
2. The school festival helped students feel a strong to their community.
3. People wore colorful clothes and danced during the
4. Working in a team can friendship and cooperation among students.

Lesson 5 ► SB Pages 34 & 35

Malaysia (n)	دولة ماليزيا	fast-changing	سريع التغير	Eid (n)	عيد
develop (ed) (v)	يتطور - ينمو	explanation (n)	تفسير / شرح	exist (ed) (v)	يوجد / يتواجد

Lesson 6 ► SB Page 36

across time	على مر العصور	introduce (d)	يقدم - يعرض	family ties (n)	روابط أسرية
fill (ed) (v)	يملأ	spread (v)	ينشر	participants (n)	مشاركين

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

create	a sense	يخلق شعور بـ	spread	joy	ينشر البهجة
	memories	يصنع ذكريات	keep	alive	يحافظ على بقاءه حيًا
teach	values	يُعَلِّم القيم	strengthen	ties	يقوّي الروابط

Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

الكلمة Word	المترادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym / Opposite
expert / محترف	specialist / professional	beginner / amateur / مبتدئ / هاو
belonging / الانتماء	connection / attachment	isolation / separation / عزلة / انفصال
gather / يجمع / يجتمع	collect / bring together	separate / divide / ينفصل / يقسم
special / خاص / مميز	unique / unusual	ordinary / common / عادي / شائع
delicious / لذيذ	tasty / yummy	tasteless / awful / بلا طعم / سيئ
strengthen / يقوى / يدعم	support / improve	weaken / reduce / يضعف / يقلل
fast-changing / سريع التغير	dynamic / unstable	constant / slow-changing / ثابت / بطيء التغير

Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	أمثلة Examples
-ing	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	belonging / الانتماء
-ation	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	explanation / تفسير
-ion	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	decoration / تزيين
-al	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	cultural / ثقافي

أحرص على اقتناء

كتاب EL-MOASSER

في اللغة الإنجليزية

امنح ثقتك لمن يستحق



Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

on Lesson 5 SB page 34

Culture around us

1. Traditions are important because they connect people to their history and values.
2. Traditions give people a sense of identity and **belonging**⁽¹⁾.
3. In England, "afternoon tea" shows **hospitality**⁽²⁾ and friendship.
4. In Saudi Arabia, Eid is a special time that reflects family **unity**⁽³⁾ and generosity.
5. In Malaysia, "Hari Raya Aidilfitri" (the end of Ramadan) shows respect, harmony, and the importance of community.
6. Some traditions are very old, and others are modern and still developing.
7. Traditions help people stay connected in today's **fast-changing world**⁽⁴⁾.
8. Traditions affect our lives and show how important cultural values are.

(1) الإهتمام (2) كرم الضيافة (3) اتحاد (4) عالم سريع التغير

on Lesson 6 SB page 36

The importance of traditions

1. Traditions connect families and communities and keep history alive.
2. In Egypt, Ramadan gatherings **strengthen**⁽¹⁾ family **ties**⁽²⁾ and teach hospitality.
3. In India, Diwali spreads **joy**⁽³⁾ and **hope**⁽⁴⁾ everywhere.
4. In Brazil, the Carnival brings music, colorful clothes, and happiness.
5. Traditions teach values like respect, friendship, and sharing.
6. They create happy memories passed from one generation to another.
7. Old and new traditions are part of **cultural identity**⁽⁵⁾.
8. Traditions help people stay connected across time.

(1) يقوى (2) روابط (3) فرح (4) أمل (5) الهوية الثقافية

تنويه: الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات إنشائية أخرى:

* The role of traditions and sense of identity

* Traditions in different countries

II Skills

! Reading and Listening



Reading

للمزيد من إتقان
المهارات اللغوية
كراسة المعاصر
للمهارات اللغوية

• on Lesson 5 SB page 34

Presenter: Good evening, and welcome to "Culture Around Us!" Tonight, we're talking about traditions and customs. With me is Dr. Salma, a cultural **expert**⁽¹⁾. Dr. Salma, could you tell us why traditions are so important?

Dr. Salma: Thank you. Traditions are important because they connect people to their history and **values**⁽²⁾. They create a sense of identity and belonging.

Presenter: Interesting! Can you give us an example from England?

Dr. Salma: Of course. In England, one tradition is the "afternoon tea". Families and friends **gather**⁽³⁾ to drink tea and eat small cakes or sandwiches. It shows the values of **hospitality**⁽⁴⁾ and friendship.

Presenter: That sounds lovely. What about customs in Saudi Arabia?

Dr. Salma: In Saudi Arabia, Eid is a very special time. Families visit **relatives**⁽⁵⁾, wear new clothes, and share delicious meals. This reflects the values of family unity, and generosity.

Presenter: Beautiful. And what about Malaysia?

Dr. Salma: In Malaysia, during "Hari Raya Aidilfitri" (the end of Ramadan), people **decorate**⁽⁶⁾ their homes, visit neighbors, and prepare traditional foods. It shows respect, harmony, and the importance of community.

Presenter: So, would you say traditions are only about the past?

Dr. Salma: Not at all! Some traditions are hundreds of years old, but others are modern and still **developing**⁽⁷⁾. The important thing is that they help people stay connected in today's **fast-changing**⁽⁸⁾ world.

Presenter: Thank you, Dr. Salma. That was a wonderful explanation of how traditions and customs **shape**⁽⁹⁾ our lives.

استخراج المعلومات.

Answer
the following
questions.

- Extracting information.

Learn

1. What is a very special time in Saudi Arabia?
- Eid is a very special time in Saudi Arabia.

Practice

2. Why are traditions important?

(1) خير (2) قيم (3) يجمع (4) كرم الضيافة (5) أقارب (6) يزير (7) يتطور (8) سريع التغير (9) يشكل

• on Lesson 5 SB page 35

Lina : Mariam, have you ever watched the spring festival in Thailand on TV?

Mariam : Yes, last year. The streets were full of **decorations** ⁽¹⁾ and music.

Lina : What did people do during the festival?

Mariam : People wore colorful clothes and carried flowers.

Lina : That's **wonderful** ⁽²⁾! I think traditions like this are important because they bring people together and show their **culture** ⁽³⁾.

Mariam : Right. They also bring happiness to children and **tourists** ⁽⁴⁾.

Lina : Would you like to visit Thailand one day?

Mariam : Yes, I would love to go there one day.

Lina : That's great. I hope you can visit it soon.

(1) زينه (2) رائع (3) ثقافة (4) سائحين

• on Lesson 6 SB page 36

The importance of Traditions

Traditions, which connect families and **communities** ⁽¹⁾, bring people together and keep history alive. In Egypt, families gather in Ramadan to share meals, which strengthens family ties and teaches hospitality. In India, people **celebrate** ⁽²⁾ Diwali, the Festival of Lights, which spreads joy and hope everywhere. In Brazil, the Carnival, which is full of music and colorful clothes, fills the streets with **happiness** ⁽³⁾.

Although traditions are different, they teach values like respect, friendship, and sharing. They also create happy **memories** ⁽⁴⁾ that are passed from one generation to another. Old or new, traditions are part of cultural identity, which helps people stay connected across time.

(1) مجتمعات (2) يحتفل (3) السعادة (4) ذكريات



General Notes on Reading & Listening

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

Expressions التعبيرات			
Not at all!	إطلاقاً / أبداً	(be) passed from one generation to another	تنقل من جيل لآخر
shape our lives	يشكل حياتنا		
family unity	وحدة الأسرة	That sounds lovely!	يبدو هذا رائعاً!
Prepositions حروف الجر			
What about ...?	ماذا عن / ما رأيك ...؟	during Hari Raya Aidilfitri	أثناء نهاية أيام رمضان (في ماليزيا)

Exercise on Vocabulary

○ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

► Key vocabulary

1. Sports can bring to many people from different countries.
a. sadness b. anger c. separation d. unity
2. My father is a cultural who knows about culture and customs around the world.
a. export b. import c. expert d. experiment
3. All Egyptians have a of belonging to Egypt.
a. sight b. size c. sense d. stop

► SB & AB Exercises

4. **SB** Traditions and customs can our lives.
a. shade b. shop c. plant d. shape

Guessing the meaning

5. **SB** Families in Ramadan to share meals.
a. fight b. forget c. gather d. leave
6. **AB** Traditions help people stay connected in today's fast-changing world. The adjective "fast-changing" means that the world isn't
a. fixed b. moving c. transforming d. turning

Collocations

7. **SB** Customs and traditions family ties.
a. strengthen b. harm c. destroy d. weaken
8. **SB** During carnivals, people delicious meals.
a. chop b. divide c. separate d. share

Synonyms, Antonyms, Prefixes & Suffixes

9. **SB** The word "expert" is a synonym of ".....".
a. beginner b. amateur c. specialist d. child
10. **SB** To form the adjective from the noun "culture", we add the suffix ".....".
a. -or b. -ly c. -al d. -ness
11. **SB** The word "belonging" means a feeling of ".....".
a. isolation b. connection c. anger d. boredom
12. **SB** The opposite of "gather" is ".....".
a. collect b. meet c. return d. separate

► **El-Moasser Exercises****Guessing the meaning**

13. There is harmony among the family members. This means they are in relations.
 a. bad b. harsh c. terrible d. good
14. He a wonderful explanation of the importance of traditions.
 a. talk b. spoke c. gave d. brought

Collocations

15. Sharing traditions and festivals a sense of belonging.
 a. throws b. creates c. speaks d. wears

Synonyms, Antonyms, Prefixes & Suffixes

16. The suffix "....." turns the verb "explain" into a noun.
 a. -ion b. -ment c. -ation d. -or
17. The antonym of "delicious" is ".....".
 a. yummy b. tasty c. awful d. sweet
18. "Fast-changing" is closest in meaning to
 a. slow b. stable c. dynamic d. normal
19. The opposite of "strengthen" is ".....".
 a. support b. weaken c. improve d. build
20. The suffix "-ing" turns the verb "belong" into a/an
 a. adverb b. adjective c. verb d. noun

2. Writing Skill

مهارة الكتابة

► **Writing a short article :**

كتابة مقال قصير :

A short article is a piece of writing that gives information or ideas about a topic in a clear and simple way.

المقال القصيرة عبارة عن نظم كتابة تعطي معلومات أو أفكار عن موضوع بطريقة بسيطة وواضحة

1 Learn► **Structure of a short Article:**

تركيب المقال القصير:

1. Title

العنوان الرئيسي

- Choose a catchy title

اختر عنوان جذاب

2. Introduction

المقدمة

- One or two sentences to introduce the main idea

جملتين أو جملتين لتقديم الفكرة الرئيسية

3. Body

الموضوع الأساسي

- ▶ The main topic and giving more examples

الموضوع الرئيسي وإعطاء أمثلة أكثر

4. Conclusion

الخاتمة

- ▶ A simple sentence to summarize your article

جملة بسيطة تلخص مقالك

▶ Study the following example :

Title

The Power of Family Unity

Introduction : (introduce the main idea)

Family unity means staying together, supporting each other, and sharing good and bad times. It helps people feel safe and loved .

Body : (The main topic)

When families are united, they can face life problems more easily. In Egypt, for example, families gather during Ramadan to share meals, which strengthens love and kindness among them. Family unity also teaches values like respect, cooperation, and patience. These values help children grow into responsible adults. Spending time together creates happy memories that last for years.

Conclusion : (summarize the article)

Family unity keeps relationships strong and brings happiness to everyone. It's one of the most important values in our lives.



Pop Quiz on Writing Skill

2

Practice

Write an article of (100-110) words on :

"Traditions in two different countries"

- When are they celebrated?
- Where are they celebrated?
- What activities happen?
- What food/clothes/tools are used?

General Exercises



On Lessons 5 & 6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Traditions bring people together. This means they people.
a. gather b. separate c. distant d. divide
- The suffix "....." turns the word "decorate" into a noun.
a. -able b. -er c. -ion d. -ment
- The words "tasty" and "delicious" are
a. antonyms b. opposites c. synonyms d. adverbs
- Working as a team us important values such as harmony and respect.
a. learns b. teaches c. makes d. asks

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

traditions - connected - friendship - festival - share

Traditions, which connect families, bring people together and keep history alive. In Egypt, families gather in Ramadan to (1) meals. In Brazil, the carnival is a famous (2) that fills the streets with music and happiness. Although traditions are different, they teach values like respect, (3) and sharing. They also create happy memories that are passed from one generation to another. These customs help people feel (4) to their cultural identity.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Traditions are important because they connect people to their history and values, creating a sense of identity. In England, one tradition is the "afternoon tea," where friends gather to eat small cakes and sandwiches. This shows hospitality. In Saudi Arabia, during Eid, families visit relatives and share delicious meals, reflecting family unity. Some traditions are hundreds of years old, while others are modern. In Thailand, the spring festival is wonderful. The streets are full of decorations and music. People wear colorful clothes and carry flowers. They bring happiness to children and tourists. The important thing is that they help people stay connected in today's fast-changing world.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The tradition of "afternoon tea" is from

- a. Saudi Arabia b. Malaysia c. England d. Egypt

2. The underlined word "unity" is close in meaning to

- a. connection b. conflict c. division d. disagreement

3. The main purpose of traditions is to help people stay

- a. busy b. fast c. rich d. connected

b. Answer the following questions.

4. Give a suitable title for the passage.

.....

5. What do families in Saudi Arabia do during Eid?

.....

6. Do you think traditions can be modern? Why / Why not ?

.....

4 AB Complete the following dialogue :

Two students are working on a school project.

Hamdi : Do you think that we've finished the project now ?

Nasser : It's good, but we could do more. (1)

Hamdi : Include photos ? Yes. (2)

Nasser : We could make a video, too.

Hamdi : (3) We haven't got time.

Nasser : I've found some photos. (4)

Hamdi : Let's put two at the top and two at the bottom.

Nasser : Ok, how does this look ? I think it's good.

Hamdi : (5)

5 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Traditions in two different countries"

.....
.....
.....

Vocabulary	Language	Speaking
Lessons 1 & 2	Relative clauses عبارات الوصل	Traditions and cultures
tradition تقليد	who/that for (people) ex. People who celebrate Eid enjoy time with family.	A: Why do you think traditions can play an important role in our life? B: Because they bring people together, teach values such as respect, harmony, and cooperation.
custom عادة		
respect احترام		
family unity وحدة الأسرة		
values قيم		
community مجتمع	which/that for (things) ex. A festival that spreads joy is important. ex. That's the coat which my mom bought.	A: Are traditions important for families? B: Sure. Traditions connect families and communities, bring people together and keep family united.
festival احتفال		
gathering تجمّع		
cultural ثقافي		
shared values قيم مشتركة		
hospitality حسن الضيافة	where for (places) ex. A place where people gather is special. ex. That is the park where we always play football.	A: Which tradition is important in your country? B: Celebrating Eid is very special as we visit our relatives and share delicious meals.
belonging الانتماء		
generosity الكرم		
Lesson 3		
keep memories alive إبقاء الذكريات حيّة		
honor يُكرم / شرف	when for (time) ex. Eid is a day when families visit each other. ex. Winter is the season when we visit the Valley of the Kings.	
grand كبير / عظيم		
strengthen بقوة / يعزز		
importance أهمية		
delicious لذيذ		
harmony انسجام / تناغم	Lessons 5 & 6	
cultural identity الهوية الثقافية		
expert خبير		
importance أهمية		
fast-changing سريع التغير		
unity الوحدة		
explanation تفسير		
developing تطوير		
interesting ممتع		

Review



on unit 8

Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context

تخبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة (معرفة التفاصيل الدقيقة في النص). 

اقرأ وطم بالإجابة.

Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Traditions are important parts of our lives. They connect families and communities and keep history alive. In Egypt, one of the most **precious** traditions is gathering in Ramadan. Families meet to share meals and help each other. This tradition teaches generosity and strengthens family bonds. Around the world, traditions may look different, but they share the same **purpose**, bringing people together with love and respect.

- The underlined word "**precious**" is closest in meaning to
a. very special b. boring c. old d. dangerous
- The underlined word "**purpose**" means " "
a. the main reason for something
b. a kind of food
c. a group of people
d. a place to live

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة في تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية في النص. 

مفتاح الحل عند قراءة الفقرة تجد أنه يمكن تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية في النص. 

Customs / Festivals

بختبر سؤال المحادثة (dialogue) قدراتك للتعبير عن مواقف معينة. 

اقرأ وطم بالإجابة.

Complete the following dialogue :

Karim and Ahmed are talking about festivals.

Karim : Do you like festivals ?

Ahmed: (1)

Karim : What's your favorite festival ?

Ahmed: (2)

Karim : Eid Al-Fitr! That sounds fun! (3)

Ahmed: Families visit each other and share traditional food together.

Karim : Nice! (4)

Ahmed: It teaches us values of love and respect between family members. What about you?

Karim : (5)

Ahmed: Wonderful! Going outdoors with relatives is very cool. We'll try that.

التحدى تريد السؤال عن (مناسبة عامة) وتجد صعوبة في تكوين أسئلة والرد عليها. 

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من الأسئلة والردود عن الموضوع. 

Test on unit 8

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A is a special event, like a wedding or festival, that is performed in a certain way.
a. culture b. harmony c. community d. ceremony
2. The suffix "....." turns the adjective "wise" into a noun.
a. -ment b. -less c. -dom d. -ship
3. "....." is the antonym of the word "happiness".
a. Joy b. Kindness c. Sadness d. Fitness
4. Traditions help people connected to their families.
a. make b. do c. feel d. ask

The Answers :

1. 2. 3. 4.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

carnival – traditions – connected – families – festival

Every country has its own traditions that show its culture and history. In Egypt, for example, (1) come together to celebrate different events each year. One popular (2) is held in spring when people enjoy food, music, and dancing. Another exciting (3) takes place in the streets with colorful clothes and songs. These celebrations make people feel (4) and proud of their culture.

The Answers :

1. 2. 3. 4.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Hospitality, the act of welcoming guests, is a custom that is valued in many cultures around the world. In Egypt, it is a cornerstone of daily life. When visitors arrive at an Egyptian home, **they** are greeted warmly and are always offered a drink, such as tea or coffee, and often something to eat. It shows that the guest is honored and **appreciated**. This tradition strengthens bonds between neighbors and friends, creating a strong sense of community. Even a simple offer of a drink can carry a deep cultural meaning, reflecting the generosity and warmth of the people. It is a tradition that is passed down through generations, teaching young people the importance of sharing and caring for others.

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. What is the main idea of the passage ?
 a. The types of drinks served in Egypt.
 b. The importance of hospitality in Egyptian culture.
 c. How to be a good guest. d. The history of tea and coffee.
2. The underlined word "**appreciated**" is closest in meaning to
 a. disrespected b. disliked c. ignored d. respected
3. In the Egyptian culture, offering a guest a drink is a sign of
 a. wealth b. friendship and respect
 c. tradition only d. unusual culture

b. Answer the following questions :

4. According to the text, what is hospitality ?

5. What does the underlined pronoun "**they**" refer to ?

6. In your opinion, why is it important for a community to be welcoming to guests and strangers ?

The Answers :

- | | | |
|------------|---------|---------|
| a. 1. | 2. | 3. |
| b. 4. | 5. | 6. |

4 Story

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The commander of the Nautilus was a mysterious man named
 a. Aronnax b. Ned Land c. Conseil d. Captain Nemo
2. Ned Land was angry because he valued above all else.
 a. knowledge b. treasure c. freedom d. safety
3. The Nautilus was powered by
 a. steam b. sails c. electricity d. magic
4. Life on the Nautilus was described as astonishing, like a floating
 a. prison b. palace c. school d. market

b. Answer the following questions :

1. **AB** Why did professor Aronnax accept to be on the Nautilus ?

2. Professor Aronnax and Ned Land reacted very differently to their situation. Why do you think they had such different feelings ?

The Answers :

- | | | | |
|------------|---------|---------|---------|
| a. 1. | 2. | 3. | 4. |
| b. 1. | 2. | | |

5 Rewrite the following sentences:

1. The teacher explained the custom. The students were interested in it. (which)
.....
2. This is the guest. We interviewed him on TV. (who)
.....
3. 2010 was a wonderful year. My sister was born in it. (when)
.....

The Answers :

1.
2.
3.

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The girl (which) my cousin married won the prize.
2. This is the house (who) my grandparents used to live.
3. **AB** Friday is the day (where) I was born.

The Answers :

1.
2.
3.

7 Complete the following dialogue :**A presenter asks Dr. Salma about traditions.****Presenter :** Good evening and welcome. Our guest tonight is a cultural expert.**Dr. Salma,** why are traditions important ?**Dr. Salma :** Thank you. (1)**Presenter :** Interesting. (2) ?**Dr. Salma :** Of course. In Japan, the tea ceremony.**Presenter :** What about a tradition from our country?**Dr. Salma :** (3)**Presenter :** (4) ?**Dr. Salma :** No. Traditions are about the past and present , too.**Presenter :** Thank you, Dr. Salma.**Dr. Salma :** (5)**The Answers :**

1.
2.
3.
4.
5.

8 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on :

مجاہب عنہ فی نہایۃ الكتاب

"A family tradition you celebrate"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test on unit 8

for Al-Azhar students

اختبار لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1. Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Lina asked Mariam about festivals.

Lina : Have you watched the last spring festival?

Mariam : (1)

Lina : (2) ?

Mariam : People wore colorful clothes.

Lina : Do you think traditions like this are important?

Mariam : (3)

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. means peace or balance among people or things.

- a. Fear b. Identity c. Harmony d. ceremony

2. Walking in nature brings and excitement for me.

- a. illness b. joy c. problems d. sadness

3. Ali is the boy won the prize.

- a. who b. which c. whose d. where

4. Dina is the girl father is a doctor.

- a. when b. where c. whose d. who

3. Read and complete the text:

teach – clothes – together – traditions – recipes

Festivals are special days when people gather to celebrate. They bring the whole community (1) During festivals, families follow their old (2) , like cooking special food, singing, or wearing colorful (3) These celebrations make people happy and help them remember their culture. Festivals also (4) children the value of unity and joy.

4. Rewrite the following sentences:

1. This is the book. I bought it yesterday. (that)

2. The man is helpful. His car is black. (whose)

3. Ramadan is the month. We fast in it. (when)

4. She used to live in Tanta. (the town)

5. Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Cairo is a big city. It is the capital of Egypt. About twenty million people live there. There are a lot of gardens where families can go and spend nice time. There are also a lot of restaurants where you can have delicious meals and different dishes. It is always visited by tourists from all over the world. They enjoy visiting ancient places. They visit the Egyptian Museum to see the ancient treasures and statues. They also visit the Cairo Tower where they can have a look at the whole city. They also enjoy the warm weather especially in winter.

a. Answer the following questions:

1. What is the capital of Egypt?

2. Why do tourists prefer coming to Egypt in winter?

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. The underlined pronoun 'It' refers to

- a. the weather b. winter
c. the museum d. Cairo

4. Visitors can see the whole city from the top of the

- a. Cairo Tower b. Gardens
c. Restaurants d. Nile

6. Write a paragraph of SIX (6) sentences on:

"A custom in your community"

Unit NINE

Courage and Survival

تنويه

علامة SB
تدريبات كتاب الطالب
تدريبات كتاب التقييمات

SB Pages 38 : 51

Learning outcomes :

- **Reading**
 - identify the moral lesson in a short legendary or heroic text.
- **Listening**
 - identify the challenge heroes faced in a short podcast about legends and heroes.
- **Speaking**
 - discuss a plan for a treasure hunt in group discussion.
 - retell a folktale in a short role-play using specific vocabulary and clear articulation.
- **Language**
 - accurately identify the correct verb form [gerund or infinitive] in a variety of contexts.
 - Use the correct verb form [gerund or infinitive] in a variety of contexts.
- **Writing**
 - write a short paragraph outlining an exploration plan, connecting short-term goals to a long-term aspiration.



SB Pages 39 : 43

Lessons

1 & 2

► Treasure Hunt
► Lost in the Jungle

I

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

treasure hunt (n)	لعبة جمع الكنوز	shelter (n)	مأوى	clues (n)	مفاتيح اللغز
riddles (n)	الغاز	sour (adj)	حامض / لاذع	torch (n)	كشاف
explorer (n)	مستكشف	panic (v), (n)	يفزع / ذعر	hidden (adj)	مخبأ / مختفي
artifacts (n)	قطع أثرية	survival (n)	البقاء / النجاة	treasure (n)	كنز
survive (v)	يبقى على قيد الحياة	legend (n)	أسطورة		



Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

• Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

hidden - clues - sour - artifacts - survival - survive

1. The children followed the to find the missing toy .
2. The treasure was under the old tree in the garden.
3. We saw ancient in the museum from different cultures.
4. The lemon juice tasted....., so I added some sugar.
5. Clean water is very important for our

Lesson 1 ► SB Pages 39 & 40

centuries (n)	قرون [القرن مائة عام]	follow (ed) (v)	يتبع	educational (adj)	تعليمي
series (n)	سلسلة	brave (adj)	شجاع	sailor (n)	بحار
encourage (d) (v)	يشجع	sunken (adj)	غارق / مغمور	real life (n)	الحياة الواقعية
island (n)	جزيرة	teamwork (n)	عمل جماعي	problem-solving	حل المشكلات
pirates (n)	قراصنة [لصوص السفن]	challenge (n)	تحدي	avoid (ed) (v)	يُتجنب
creatively (adv)	بشكل مبدع	valuable (adj)	ذو قيمة	excitement (n)	حماس - إثارة

Lesson 2 ▶ SB Pages 41 : 43

jungle (n)	الأدغال	backpack (n)	حقيبة ظهر	unfortunately (adv)	لسوء الحظ
plan (n) (v)	يخطط - خطة	branches (n)	فروع الأشجار	physically (adv)	جسديًا / بدنيًا
block (ed) (v)	يسد / يعوق	clearly (adv)	بوضوح	race (d) (v) (n)	يتسابق / سباق
path (n)	ممر / طريق	choice (n)	اختيار	pack (ed) (v)	يعبئ / يحزم
filter straw (n)	فلتر تنقية المياه	refuse (d) (v)	يرفض	courage (n)	شجاعة
discover (ed) (v)	يكشف	compass (n)	بوصلة	force (d) (v)	يجبر

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

clue	a hint that helps you solve something	مفتاح اللغز
riddle	a question or puzzle with a hidden answer	لغز
artifact	a piece of historical object from the past	قطعة أثرية
explorer	a person who travels to discover new places	مستكشف
hidden	being out of sight or not easily seen	مخفى
shelter	a safe place to stay and protect yourself	مأوى
torch	a small electric lamp that you can hold in your hand	كشاف
survival	living through a dangerous or difficult situation	البقاء
sour	having an acidic taste, like lemon	حامض
panicked	showed sudden fear	خائف / مفزع

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

follow	a series of clues	يتبع سلسلة مفاتيح اللغز	get	lost	يضل الطريق
solve	a question	يحل سؤال	make	a choice	يختار
	riddles	يحل الغاز	build	skills	ينمي مهارات

Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

الكلمة Word	المترادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym / Opposite
hidden مخفى	secret / invisible	visible مرئى
riddle لغز	puzzle	solution حل
clues مفاتيح / أدلة	hints / keys	questions أسئلة
survive ينجو / يبقى على قيد الحياة	live	die يموت
calm هادئ	quiet / peaceful	nervous متوتر
sour حامض	acidic	sweet حلو

Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

الوظيفة Function	أمثلة Examples
تكون الاسم من الفعل	explorer مستكشف
تكون الصفة من الفعل	hidden مختبئ
تكون الظرف من الصفة	physically بدنيا
تكون الصفة من الاسم	valuable ذو قيمة
تكون الاسم من الفعل	survival البقاء

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

المضارع Present	الماضي Past	التصريف الثالث P.P.
hide يخفى / يختفى	hid	hidden
give up يستسلم	gave up	given up
hold يمسك	held	held
fight يحارب	fought	fought



Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

on Lesson 1 SB page 39

Treasure hunts

1. Treasure hunts⁽¹⁾ have been popular for a long time, not only in stories but in real life.
2. A treasure hunt is a game where players follow clues⁽²⁾ to find a hidden⁽³⁾ prize.
3. In schools, treasure hunts make learning fun and improve teamwork⁽⁴⁾ and problem-solving⁽⁵⁾.
4. In the past, treasure hunts were connected to explorers and pirates⁽⁶⁾ looking for gold.
5. Today, people still search for valuable artifacts⁽⁷⁾.
6. Treasure hunts teach students to read carefully, work together, and think creatively.
7. Finding a hidden prize makes the game exciting and enjoyable for everyone.

(1) لعبة البحث عن الكنوز	(2) أدلة	(3) مخفي	(4) عمل جماعي
(5) حل المشكلات	(6) قراصنة	(7) قطع أثرية	

on Lesson 2 SB page 41

Lost in the Jungle

1. Nader got lost in the jungle⁽¹⁾.
2. He tried to stay calm because panic⁽²⁾ wastes energy.
3. He used survival skills : collecting water, eating sour⁽³⁾ fruits, and building a shelter⁽⁴⁾.
4. He used a torch to see and feel safe at night.
5. He followed the sun during the day to avoid walking in circles.
6. After three days, he found a river which helped him escape.
7. In the end, he reached a village and was welcomed by people.
8. Nader learned that survival is not only about physical strength - it's about smart⁽⁵⁾ thinking, clear decisions⁽⁶⁾, and never giving up⁽⁷⁾.

(1) الأدغال	(2) الخوف - الذعر	(3) حامض	(4) مأوى
(5) ذكي	(6) قرارات	(7) الاستسلام	

تنويه : الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات إنشائية أخرى:

* Treasure hunts

* The role of games in learning

* Survival skills

Reading and Listening



Reading

on Lesson 1 SB page 39

Treasure hunts⁽¹⁾ have been popular for centuries, not only in stories, but also in real life. A treasure hunt is a game in which players follow a **series**⁽²⁾ of **clues**⁽³⁾ to find **hidden**⁽⁴⁾ objects or a final "treasure." The clues may be written on paper, hidden in places, or even given as **riddles**⁽⁵⁾.

In schools, treasure hunts are often used to make learning fun. Teachers may hide small cards around the classroom, each with a question to answer. When students solve the question, they get the next clue. This activity **encourages**⁽⁶⁾ **teamwork**⁽⁷⁾ **problem-solving**⁽⁸⁾, and **quick thinking**⁽⁹⁾.

In history, real treasure hunts were often connected to **explorers**⁽¹⁰⁾ and **pirates**⁽¹¹⁾. Many **legends**⁽¹²⁾ tell about pirates hiding gold on islands and **brave**⁽¹³⁾ **sailors**⁽¹⁴⁾ searching for it. Even today, some people search for lost treasures, such as **old coins**⁽¹⁵⁾ **sunken ships**⁽¹⁶⁾, or valuable **artifacts**⁽¹⁷⁾.

A treasure hunt is more than just a game-it builds skills. Students learn to read carefully, think creatively, and work together. Whether in a classroom, a garden, or a whole city, the **excitement**⁽¹⁸⁾ of finding the "hidden prize" makes treasure hunts **enjoyable**⁽¹⁹⁾ for all ages.



Pop Quiz

تدرب على ٩ من
قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع

- (1) لعبة البحث عن الكنوز
- (2) سلسلة
- (3) أدلة
- (4) مخفي
- (5) الفاز
- (6) يشجع
- (7) عمل جماعي
- (8) حل المشكلة
- (9) التفكير السريع
- (10) مستكشفون
- (11) قراصنة
- (12) أساطير
- (13) شجاع
- (14) بحارة
- (15) عملات معدنية قديمة
- (16) سفن غارقة
- (17) قطع أثرية
- (18) متعة
- (19) ممتع / رائع

- Extracting information.

استخراج المعلومات.

Answer
the following
questions.

Learn

1. What is the main idea of the first paragraph ?

- Treasure hunts have been popular for centuries, not only in stories but also in real life.

Practice

2. What is the main idea of the second paragraph ?



Listening

on Lesson 2 SB page 41

Lost in the Jungle podcast

"My name is Nader, and this is the story of how I **survived**⁽¹⁾ in the **jungle**⁽²⁾". I had **planned a trip**⁽³⁾, but **unfortunately**⁽⁴⁾, I got lost in the jungle.

The air was hot, and the trees seemed to **block**⁽⁵⁾ every

path⁽⁶⁾. Suddenly, I heard a strange sound that **made my heart race**⁽⁷⁾.

I tried to **stay calm**⁽⁸⁾, reminding myself that **panicking**⁽⁹⁾ means **losing energy**⁽¹⁰⁾.

The rain kept falling heavily, but I **forced**⁽¹¹⁾ myself to keep walking.

I used an empty bottle to collect water, I remembered packing a **filter straw**⁽¹²⁾ in my **backpack**⁽¹³⁾. For food, I chose **sour fruits**⁽¹⁴⁾, even though they weren't easy to eat. At night, I built a **shelter**⁽¹⁵⁾ from **leaves**⁽¹⁶⁾ and **branches**⁽¹⁷⁾. Hearing animals near my shelter made me nervous, but holding my **torch**⁽¹⁸⁾ helped me to feel safe.

During the day, I followed the sun to avoid walking in circles. I was tired, but I refused to stop moving. After three days, I reached a river.

Following it meant finding a **way out**⁽¹⁹⁾!

Finally, I discovered a small village. People welcomed me and listened to my story.

"The jungle taught me this," I say now. "**Survival**⁽²⁰⁾ isn't about being **physically**⁽²¹⁾ strong -it's about thinking **clearly**⁽²²⁾, making **smart choices**⁽²³⁾, and never **giving up**⁽²⁴⁾."



(1) يبقى على قيد الحياة

(2) الغابة

(3) خطط لرحلة

(4) لسوء الحظ

(5) يعوق / يسد

(6) طريق

(7) جعل قلبي ينبض سريعاً

(8) يبقى هادئاً

(9) الرعب والخوف

(10) فقدان الطاقة

(11) يجبر

(12) فلتر تنقيه المياه

(13) حقيبة الظهر

(14) فواكه حامضية

(15) مأوى

(16) أوراق الشجر

(17) فروع الشجر

(18) كشاف ضوئي

(19) طريق للخروج

(20) نجاة / البقاء

(21) بدنياً

(22) بوضوح

(23) قرارات ذكية

(24) الاستسلام



General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 clue - riddle

* **clues** (n)

أدلة [تساعد على إيجاد شيء]

▶ The map has **clues** to find the treasure.

* **riddles = puzzles** (n)

الغاز [تحتاج تفكيرًا لحلها]

▶ We solved a **riddle** to get the next clue.

▶ We use clues to solve **riddles**.

2 explorers - inventors - discoverers

* **explorers** (n)

مستكشفون [يسافرون لاكتشاف أماكن جديدة]

▶ **Explorers** travel to new lands and forests.

* **inventors** (n)

مخترعون [أشخاص يبتكرون شيئًا جديدًا]

▶ **Inventors** create tools that help people in daily life.

* **discoverers** (n)

مكتشفون

▶ **Discoverers** found old artifacts in the ocean.

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

Expressions التعابير

stay calm	يبقى هادئًا	made my heart race	جعل قلبي ينبض بسرعة
walk in circles	يمشي في دوائر	work together	يعملون معًا
quick thinking	سرعة البديهة	stay alive	يبقى على قيد الحياة

Prepositions حروف الجر

find away out	يجد طريقًا للخروج	search for	يبحث عن
series of clues	سلسلة من الأدلة	afraid of	خائف من

Exercise on Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

► Key vocabulary

- They built a to protect themselves from rain.
a. shelter b. barn c. port d. museum
- Archaeologists always find valuable under the desert.
a. tablets b. artifacts c. trips d. robots
- They couldn't see the hole as it was under straw.
a. hidden b. swum c. played d. visible
- They followed a series of to find the treasure.
a. clues b. clocks c. clays d. dreams

► SB & AB Exercises

Definitions

- SB** means having an acidic taste, like lemon.
a. Sour b. Hidden c. Salty d. Sweet
- SB** A is a hint that helps you solve something.
a. cup b. knife c. clue d. result
- SB** means showed sudden fear.
a. Delighted b. Glad c. Funny d. Panicked

Guessing the meaning

- AB** When students solve the question, they get the next clue. The word "solve" means find a
a. prize b. solution c. puzzle d. problem
- SB** The students learn to think creatively and work together. "Work together" here means ".....".
a. fight b. steal c. cooperate d. die

Collocations

- SB** The game of treasure hunt skills.
a. builds b. removes c. weakens d. sleeps
- SB** I had planned a trip, but I lost in the jungle.
a. played b. got c. read d. filled

Synonyms, Antonyms, Prefixes & Suffixes

12. **SB** The synonym of "clues" is ".....".
a. questions b. hints c. artifacts d. darkness
13. **SB** The antonym of "hidden" is ".....".
a. visible b. secret c. safe d. relaxed
14. **SB** His courage helps him survive in the jungle. The antonym of "survive" is ".....".
a. live b. travel c. face d. die
15. **SB** To form the noun of the verb "explore", we add the suffix ".....".
a. -er b. -ed c. -ly d. -able
16. **SB** The suffix "-al" in survival changes the verb to a / an ".....".
a. noun b. adverb c. adjective d. plural form

► El-Moasser Exercises

Definitions

17. A/An is a piece of historical object from the past.
a. planet b. crop c. artifact d. glass
18. A is a small electric lamp that you can hold in your hand.
a. torch b. pencil c. tablet d. fridge

Guessing the meaning

19. The accident made my heart race. This means I was
a. funny b. frightened c. modern d. late

Collocations

20. The clever person good choices to improve his life.
a. plays b. goes c. makes d. does

Synonyms, Antonyms, Prefixes & Suffixes

21. The synonym of "calm" is ".....".
a. nervous b. secret c. quiet d. acidic
22. The antonym of "sour" is ".....".
a. sweet b. safe c. puzzle d. hidden
23. The clues may be given as riddles. The word "riddles" is the synonym of ".....".
a. posts b. puzzles c. solutions d. shelters
24. The suffix "-ly" in the word "physically" makes the word a/an ".....".
a. adjective b. noun c. adverb d. verb

25. We add the suffix "....." to form the adjective from the word "value".

a. -ly

b. -able

c. -er

d. -en

2. Speaking Skill

مهارة التحدث

▶ Discussing survival skills.

مناقشة مهارات البقاء.

Questions ?

1. What would you do if you found a treasure map?

ماذا ستفعل إذا وجدت خريطة كنز؟

2. How can you survive in the jungle?

كيف يمكنك النجاة في الغابة؟

3. What skills do you need to stay alive in a dangerous place?

ما المهارات التي تحتاجها للبقاء حيًا في مكان خطير؟

4. How do you feel when something scary happens?

كيف تشعر عندما يحدث شيء مخيف؟

Answers ✓

- I would follow the clues with my friends to find the hidden treasure.

سأتبع الأدلة مع أصدقائي للعثور على الكنز المخفي.

- I would build a shelter, look for clean water, and stay calm.

سأبني مأوى، وأبحث عن ماء نظيف، وأبقى هادئًا.

- Smart choices, teamwork, and never giving up are important survival skills.

الاختيارات الذكية، والعمل الجماعي، وعدم الاستسلام، من مهارات النجاة المهمة.

- My heart races, but I try to think clearly and act carefully.

قلبي ينبض بسرعة، لكن أحاول أن أفكر بوضوح وأتصرف بحذر.



Pop Quiz on Speaking Skill

• Complete the following dialogue.

Marwan is telling Shady about his adventure in the jungle.

Shady : Have you ever had an adventure ?

Marwan : (1)

Shady : Really! (2) ?

Marwan : I had the adventure in the jungle.

Shady : (3)

Marwan : At first, I was excited, but then I was scared.

Shady : Why ?

Marwan : (4)

Shady : How did you get lost ? Didn't you bring your map ?

Marwan : (5)

III

Language in use

Verbs + infinitive / -ing form

1 Verbs followed by (to + inf.)

agree	يوافق	fail	يفشل في	plan	يخطط
arrange	يرتب	help	يساعد في	promise	يعد
ask	يسأل / يطلب	hope	يأمل	refuse	يرفض
choose	يختار	intend	ينوي	threaten	يهدد
decide	يقرر	need	يحتاج	want	يريد
expect	يتوقع	learn	يتعلم	wish	يتمنى
encourage	يشجع	manage	يتمكن		
invite	يدعو	offer	يعرض		

ex. - My neighbor **agreed to water** my plants when we were away on holiday.

ex. - I **wanted Omar to work** hard.

• **لاحظ الآتي:**

• في حالة النفي يمكن أن تُستخدم (not to) بعد الأفعال السابقة.

ex. - Ahmed **decided not to use** my tools.

2 Verbs followed by (v. + ing)

avoid	يتجنب	finish	ينهى	practice	يمارس
consider	يفكر في	imagine	يتخيل	recommend	يوصي بـ
deny	ينكر	include	يشمل / يتضمن	suggest	يقترح
dislike	يكره	keep	يظل / يستمر في	admit	يقر/يعترف
enjoy	يستمتع بـ	mind	يمنع	can't stand	يكره

ex. - You should **avoid going** out late at night.

• في حالة النفي يمكن أن تُستخدم (not + v + ing) بعد الأفعال السابقة

ex. - He **suggested not going** to the park.

3 Verbs followed by (v. + ing) or (to + inf.)

• الأفعال التالية يأتي بعدها (to + inf.) أو (v. + ing) دون فرق في المعنى.

begin / start	يبدأ	hate	يكره	love	يحب
continue	يستمر	like	يحب	prefer	يفضل

ex. - We **continued to run / running** until we got home.

- ولكن لاحظ أنه إذا استخدمنا (would) قبل الأفعال love / prefer / like يأتي بعدها (to + inf.).

ex. - I'd prefer to finish my work early today.

- لاحظ أن (starting / beginning) يأتي بعدها (to + inf.) فقط

ex. - The rain is starting to fall.

٢. الأفعال التالية يأتي بعدها (to + inf.) أو (v. + ing) مع وجود فرق واضح في المعنى.

remember, forget, stop, try + [to + inf.] / [v. + ing]

1 remember

• remember + (to + inf.)

يتذكر أن يفعل شيء ما

ex. - Remember to bring your homework tomorrow.

• remember + (inf. + ing)

يتذكر أنه فعل شيء ما

ex. - I remember waking up in the middle of the night.

2 forget

• forget + (to + inf.)

ينسى أن يفعل شيء [هنا الشيء لم يتم القيام به]

ex. - She forgot to buy her grandfather's newspaper, so he was angry.

• forget + (inf. + ing)

ينسى أنه فعل شيء من قبل [فعل الشيء لكنه نسي ذلك]

ex. - I forgot phoning the manager, so I phoned him again.

3 stop

• stop + (to + inf.)

يتوقف [لكي يفعل شيء ما]

ex. - On her way home, Dina stopped to talk to her friend Nada.

• stop + (inf. + ing)

يتوقف عن فعل شيء [بشكل دائم]

ex. - He stopped smoking because he was ill.

4 try

• try + (to + inf.)

يحاول بكل جهد [لكنه لا يستطيع فعله]

ex. - She tried to solve the math problem, but it was difficult.

• try + (inf. + ing)

يجرب [فعل شيء]

ex. - She tried eating fresh vegetables and she liked them.

Exercises on Language in use

1. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

► SB & AB Exercises

1. **SB** He agreed (come) to the party.
2. **SB** I always avoid (make) noise.
3. **SB** He remembered (feel) afraid of the glowing eyes.
4. **SB** He refused (stops) moving.
5. **SB** Nader used an empty bottle (collect) water.

6. **SB** Eating wild fruits was not easy, but he needed (eat) them.
 7. **SB** Following the river helped him (finding) a way out.

► El-Moasser Exercises

8. Amira enjoys (reads) stories before bed.
 9. He promised (calling) me after the exam.
 10. Our team want (win) the next competition.
 11. His sister finished (does) the dishes in the kitchen.
 12. Ayman refused (wait) for them.
 13. My brother kept (asks) questions about the new mobile.
 14. They hoped (find) a solution to the problem.
 15. Would you like (watch) the new film?

2. Rewrite the following sentences :

► SB & AB Exercises

1. **SB** He didn't want to stop in the jungle. (refused)

 2. **SB** His dream is to buy a new car. (wants)

 3. **SB** The explorer needed to collect water in a bottle. (hoped)

 4. **SB** He said that he would help me. (promised)

► El-Moasser Exercises

5. He looks forward to finding a good job. (hopes)

 6. He said that he would give me some money. (agreed)

 7. We liked the meal very much. (enjoyed)

 8. He decided not to smoke. (avoided)

 9. His decision was to play football. (decided)

 10. She said she would help me with my homework. (offered)

Grammar in points

تدرب على القاعدة اللغوية في شكل نقاط طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية
(أهم الأفكار التي وردت في كتاب الطالب والتقييمات)

Verbs+to+inf. /v+-ing form

1. Rewrite Notes

Sentence	Answer	Explanation
1. AB Let's play chess. (He suggested)	He suggested playing chess.	الفعل suggest يتبعه (v.+ing) عند تحويل الاقتراح تحذف (Let's...) ونستخدم الفعل suggested متبوعاً بـ playing .
2. AB Could you turn the light off, please? (mind)	"Do you mind turning the light off, please?"	الفعل mind يتبعه دائماً (v.+ing).
3. AB The thief said that he had stolen the jewellery. (admitted)	The thief admitted stealing the jewellery.	الفعل admit (يعترف) يتبعه (v.+ing).
4. AB It's not a good idea to smoke cigarettes. (avoid)	You should avoid smoking cigarettes.	الفعل avoid (تجنب) يتبعه دائماً (v.+ing).
5. AB I no longer borrow books from the library. (stopped)	I stopped borrowing books from the library.	نستخدم (stop) متبوعاً بـ (v.+ing) لوجود (no longer) التي تعبر عن التوقف الدائم عن فعل شيء.

2. Correction Notes

Sentence	Correction	Explanation
1. SB She enjoys (reads) stories before bed.	reading	الفعل enjoy هو أحد الأفعال التي يجب أن يتبعها (v.+ing).
2. SB Mazen promised (calling) me after the exam.	to call	الفعل promise هو أحد الأفعال التي يجب أن يتبعها (to+inf.).
3. SB My team wants (win) the competition this year.	to win	الفعل want هو أحد الأفعال التي يتبعها المصدر المسبوق بـ (to).
4. SB My mom finished (does) the dishes in the kitchen	doing	الفعل finish هو أحد الأفعال التي يجب أن يتبعها (v.+ing).
5. SB He refused (wait) for us.	to wait	الفعل refuse هو أحد الأفعال التي يتبعها المصدر المسبوق بـ (to).

General Exercises



On Lessons 1 & 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A/An is a hint that helps you solve something.
a. riddle b. clue c. artifact d. torch
2. **AB** Ancient were found during the excavation of the old temple.
a. clothes b. artifacts c. vegetables d. machines
3. Staying calm helps you overcome challenges. The antonym of "calm" is ".....".
a. expensive b. peaceful c. nervous d. healthy
4. We get the from the verb "hide" by adding the suffix "-en".
a. preposition b. noun c. adverb d. adjective

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

clues - riddle - shelter - real - torch

Nader's survival in the jungle was difficult. He had to find water and build a (1) from leaves and branches to stay safe at night. He used his (2) to see in the dark. His story wasn't a game with (3) to follow, it was a (4) test of courage.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Nader was an explorer who got lost in the jungle. At first, he panicked, but he tried to stay calm. He showed great survival skills. He used an empty bottle to collect rainwater because he knew the river water wasn't safe. At night, he built a **shelter** from leaves and branches to protect himself from wind and animals. He refused to give up. He needed to find a way out, so he decided to follow the river. This decision helped him find a village. His story teaches us that courage and smart choices are essential for survival.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. How did Nader get safe drinking water ?
a. He drank from the river. b. He built a shelter.
c. He collected rainwater. d. He found a village.
2. The underlined word "**shelter**" means ".....".
a. a safe place b. a dark cave c. a tall tree d. a fast river
3. Nader got lost in a
a. desert b. city c. mountain d. jungle

b. Answer the following questions.

4. Give a suitable title for the passage.

.....

5. How did Nader protect himself at night?

.....

6. In your opinion, what is more important for survival: courage or smart choices? Why?

.....

4 Rewrite the following sentences:

1. He didn't want to stop in the jungle. (refused)

.....

2. His decision was to buy a new car. (decided)

.....

3. It's my wish to come first. (hope)

.....

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. I tried (stay) calm when I heard the noise.

2. Following the river helped him (finding) a way out.

3. He forced himself (keep) walking.

6 AB Complete the following dialogue:

Sally is asking her teacher for advice.

Teacher : Hello ! Sally. How can I help you ?

Sally : (1)

Teacher : What do you want my advice for ?

Sally : (2)

Teacher : Dyslexia ! (3) ?

Sally : Yes. I have tried to overcome this problem.

Teacher : (4)

Sally : A special teacher! (5) ?

Teacher : Because a special teacher can understand your case.

Sally : OK, I will try that. Thanks for your advice.

7 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on :

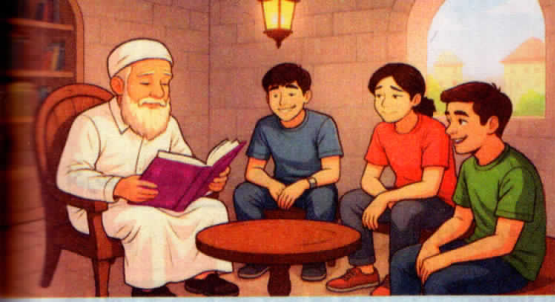
مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Treasure hunts"

.....

.....

.....



SB Pages 44 & 45

Lesson

3

Legends and Heroes

تنويه: ! الدرس الرابع القصة المقررة في نهاية الكتاب

I

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

tribe (n)	قبيلة	defeat (ed) (v)	يهزم	wisdom (n)	حكمة
courage (n)	شجاعة	rival (n), (adj)	منافس - خصم	loyalty (n)	وفاء / ولاء
strategies (n)	استراتيجيات / خطط	inspire (d) (v)	يلهم	loyal = faithful (adj)	وفى
heroes (n)	أبطال	folk (adj)	شعبي	folk tale (n)	حكاية شعبية



Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

• Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

enemy - rival - courage - tribe - loyalty

1. The people in the jungle live together as one to help and protect others.
2. You need to face dangerous situations without fear.
3. A good friend always shows and stands by you in hard times.
4. In competitions, a/an tries to win against you, but you still respect them.

Lesson 3 ► SB Pages 44 & 45

performances (n)	عروض	enemies (n)	أعداء	leadership (n)	قيادة
bravery (n)	شجاعة	ability (n)	قدرة	defend (ed) (v)	يدافع عن
unite (d) (v)	يوجد	storyteller (n)	راوي القصص	cultural (adj)	ثقافي
adventures (n)	مغامرات	fighter (n)	محارب	hardship (n)	ضيق / معاناة
values (n)	قيم	wise (adj)	حكيم	leader (n)	قائد

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

tribe	a group of families living together with shared traditions	قبيلة
rival	a person or group that competes with another	منافس
loyal	being faithful and supportive to others	وفى
strategy	clever plan to win a battle	استراتيجية
wisdom	great intelligence and good judgment	حكمة

Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

الكلمة Word	المترادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym / Opposite
rival	competitor / opponent	helper
loyal	faithful	disloyal / unfaithful
wisdom	insight	ignorance
courage	bravery	fear / cowardness
defend	protect	hurt
leader	chief	follower

Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

الوظيفة Function	أمثلة Examples
تكون الاسم من الفعل	performance
تكون الاسم من الفعل	fighter
تكون الاسم من الصفة	leader
تكون الاسم من الصفة	bravery
تكون الاسم من الصفة	wisdom

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

المضارع Present	الماضي Past	التصريف الثالث P.P.
bear	bore	born
fight	fought	fought
teach	taught	taught
lead	led	led

Reading and Listening



Reading

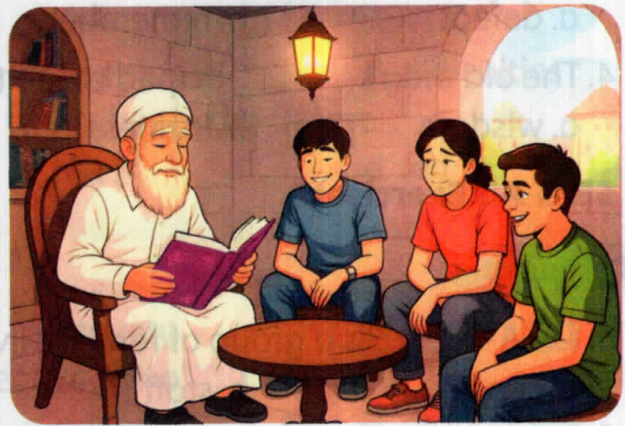
Pop Quiz

تدرب على ٩ من
قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع

• on Lesson 3 SB page 44

The Legend of Abu Zayd al-Hilali

Abu Zayd al-Hilali is one of the most famous Arab folk⁽¹⁾ heroes⁽²⁾. His story has been told in poems, songs, and performances for centuries. Born into the Hilali tribe, Abu Zayd was known for his strength, wisdom⁽³⁾, and courage.



When his tribe faced enemies, Abu Zayd led them with bravery. He fought to defend his people and used clever strategies to defeat⁽⁴⁾ stronger armies. His adventures⁽⁵⁾ included long journeys across deserts, battles against rival tribes, and wise leadership during times of hardship.

What makes Abu Zayd's legend special is not only his strength⁽⁶⁾, but also his ability to unite people. He encouraged loyalty, protected the weak, and inspired others to act bravely.

Even today, storytellers known as "al-Hakawati" continue telling his adventures in cafés and cultural⁽⁷⁾ festivals. The folk tale of Abu Zayd teaches us that a hero is not only a fighter but also a leader who gives hope.

Folk legends like this remind us of values⁽⁸⁾ such as courage, loyalty, and wisdom. They show how one person's actions can inspire generations.

(1) شعبي (2) أبطال (3) حكمة (4) يهزم (5) مغامرات (6) قوة (7) ثقافي (8) قيم



Exercise on Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

► Key vocabulary

1. Heroes are always to their country.
a. careful b. angry c. loyal d. nervous
2. These amazing stories children to be brave like him.
a. use b. inspire c. avoid d. defend
3. Your self-confidence will help you your fear.
a. defeat b. remember c. draw d. visit
4. The old man's helped me to take a good decision.
a. wisdom b. laziness c. anger d. sadness

► SB & AB Exercises

Definitions

5. **SB** A is a group of families living together with shared traditions.
a. crew b. staff c. tribe d. rival
6. **SB** A is a clever plan to win a battle.
a. strategy b. dream c. recipe d. hobby

Synonyms, Antonyms, Prefixes & Suffixes

7. **SB** The synonym of "rival" is ".....".
a. friend b. helper c. opponent d. leader
8. **SB** The antonym of "loyal" is ".....".
a. faithful b. helpful c. disloyal d. brave
9. **SB** We can form the noun from the verb "perform" by adding the suffix ".....".
a. -ship b. -ance c. -ness d. -ly
10. **SB** The synonym of "wisdom" is ".....".
a. foolishness b. confusion c. insight d. weakness

Guessing the meaning

11. **SB** Abu Zayd al-Hilali was known for his strength and wisdom. "Known for" here means ".....".
a. strange b. famous c. unknown d. hidden

► El-Moasser Exercises

Definitions

12. A is a person or group that competes with another.
a. rival b. friend c. relative d. supportive
13. means great intelligence and good judgment.
a. Greed b. Hunger c. Thirst d. Wisdom

Guessing the meaning

14. He is one of the greatest people in history. This means he may be a/an
a. legend b. enemy c. firefighter d. thief
15. She was wise during hardships. The underlined word "hardships" is similar in meaning to ".....".
a. festivals b. success c. happiness d. difficulties
16. The battle place last year between two tribes in the desert.
a. took b. made c. felt d. fed

Synonyms, Antonyms, Prefixes & Suffixes

17. The synonym of "courage" is ".....".
a. fear b. weakness c. bravery d. hardship
18. The suffix "dom" forms the of the adjective "wise".
a. verb b. noun c. adverb d. pronoun
19. His courage made him defeat strong enemies. The opposite of "courage" is ".....".
a. bravery b. wisdom c. ignorance d. fear
20. The antonym of "defend" is ".....".
a. expect b. lead c. protect d. hurt



أحرص على اقتناء

كتاب EL-MOASSER

في اللغة الإنجليزية

أمنح ثقتك لمن يستحق

General Exercises



On Lesson 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A person or group that competes with another is a
a. tribe b. rival c. hero d. loyal
2. Being faithful and supportive to your friends and family means you are
a. strong b. lazy c. loyal d. greedy
3. "Wisdom" is the antonym of the word ".....".
a. strength b. ignorance c. courage d. loyalty
4. **AB** The school trip will a visit to the museum and a boat tour.
a. include b. miss c. forget d. avoid

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

strange - storytellers - enemies - leadership - strength

Salah El-Din was a wise and powerful leader. He is a symbol of strength and intelligence. He fought bravely to defeat his (1) and defend the land. His (2) in battles showed that real heroes win not only by physical (3), but also with wisdom. Egyptian (4) still tell his adventures.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Abu Zayd al-Hilali is one of the most famous Arab folk heroes. Born into the Hilali tribe, he was known for his strength, wisdom, and courage. When his tribe faced enemies, Abu Zayd led them with bravery. He used clever **strategies** to defeat stronger armies. His legend is special not only because of his strength, but also his ability to unite people, protect the weak, and inspire loyalty. Storytellers, known as "al-Hakawati," continue telling his adventures in cafés and festivals. His story teaches values like courage and wisdom, showing how one person can inspire generations.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Abu Zayd al-Hilali was known for his strength, courage, and
a. wealth b. magic c. wisdom d. silence
2. The underlined word "**strategies**" is close in meaning to ".....".
a. clever plans b. strong horses c. loud songs d. folk tales

3. The storytellers were called

a. al-Hilali

b. al-Hakawati

c. rivals

d. tribes

b. Answer the following questions:

4. Give a suitable title for the passage.

5. What values does the story of Abu Zayd teach us?

6. Why do you think people still tell stories about heroes like Abu Zayd today?

4 AB Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed and Mona are speaking about finding a job.

Ahmed : Mona, let's talk about our future jobs.

Mona : Ok. (1)

Ahmed : My goal in life is to be an accountant.

Mona : (2)

Ahmed : As I've graduated from the faculty of commerce.

Mona : (3) ! Where do you want to work ?

Ahmed : I prefer to find a job in the private sector.

Mona : Is it easy to find a job there ?

Ahmed : (4) But I must try.

Mona : Why don't you read the advertisement in the newspaper ?

Ahmed : (5)

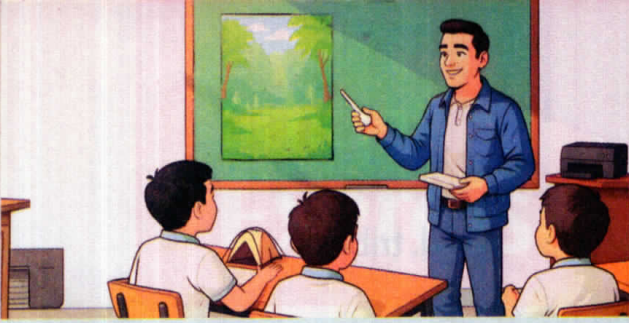
Mona : I wish you good luck.

Ahmed : Thank you.

5 AB Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on :

مجاوب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A famous person you admire"



SB Pages 48 : 50

Lessons

5 & 6

► Let's Talk

► Writing a Short Story

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

explorer (n)	مستكشف	patience (n)	صبر	rainforest (n)	غابة مطيرة
dangers (n)	مخاطر	historians (n)	مؤرخين	knowledge (n)	معرفة
attack (ed) (v), (n)	يهجم / هجوم	curiosity (n)	حب الاستطلاع / فضول	respect (ed) (v), (n)	يحترم / احترام

Lesson 5 ► SB Pages 48 & 49

explore (d) (v)	يستكشف	local (adj)	محلي	qualities (n)	صفات / سمات
compass (n)	بوصلة	traditions (n)	عادات	wild (adj)	بري

Lesson 6 ► SB Page 50

real (adj)	حقيقي	culture (n)	ثقافة	goal (n)	هدف
record (ed) (v)	يسجل / يدون	powerful (adj)	قوي	traveler (n)	مسافر / رحالة

Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

الكلمة Word	المترادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym / Opposite
explore	يستكشف	search
dangers	مخاطر	threats
patience	صبر	tolerance
inspire	يلهم	motivate
		ignore
		safety
		impatience
		discourage

Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

الوظيفة Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	أمثلة Examples
-ous	يكون الصفة من الاسم	dangerous
-ful	تكون الصفة من الاسم	powerful
-er	تكون الاسم من الفعل	explorer



Main Points on Reading & Listening Texts

on Lesson 5 SB page 48

1. The speaker imagines being an **explorer**⁽¹⁾ traveling to the Amazon rainforest.
2. He would **discover**⁽²⁾ new plants and animals never seen before.
3. He would face **dangers**⁽³⁾ such as wild animals, heavy rain, and getting lost.
4. He would use tools like a **compass**⁽⁴⁾ and build shelters to survive.
5. He would meet local people and learn about their culture and **traditions**⁽⁵⁾.
6. Being an explorer teaches courage, **patience**⁽⁶⁾, and respect for nature.
7. He wants to bring back stories that inspire others to protect the rainforest.

(1) مستكشف	(2) يكتشف	(3) مخاطر
(4) بوصلة	(5) عادات	(6) الصبر

* Being an explorer

on Lesson 6 SB page 50

1. Ibn Battuta was a great explorer from Morocco in the 14th century.
2. He started traveling at the age of 21; his journey lasted around 30 years.
3. He enjoyed learning about cultures, meeting kings, and recording what he saw.
4. His trips were sometimes dangerous including crossing deserts and avoiding attacks.
5. He wrote about people, cities, and traditions in his famous book "Rihla".
6. Historians use his writings to understand the past.
7. Ibn Battuta became famous because he showed that knowledge and curiosity are as important as bravery.
8. His story inspires people to keep exploring and learning.

تتويبه: الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات إنشائية أخرى:

* A famous explorer

II

Skills

! Reading and Listening

للمزيد من إتقان
المهارات اللغوية
كراسة المعاصر
للمهارات اللغوية

 Reading

on Lesson 5 SB page 48

If I were an Explorer

Introduction

Hello everyone. If I were an explorer, I would travel to the Amazon rainforest.

Body

I would like to discover new plants and animals that people have never seen before.

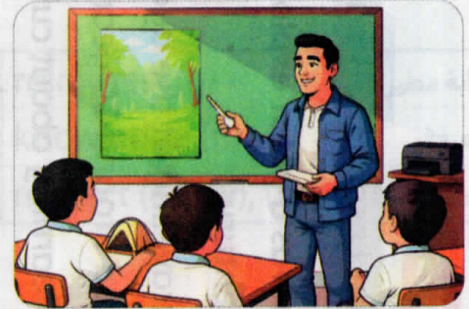
I would face many dangers, such as wild animals, heavy rain, and getting lost.

To survive, I would use a compass to find my way and build a shelter to stay safe at night.

I would also try to talk to local people and learn about their traditions.

Conclusion

Being an explorer would teach me courage and patience. I would bring back stories to inspire others to respect nature and protect the rainforest.



on Lesson 6 SB page 50

A short story

One of the greatest real **explorers**⁽¹⁾ in history was Ibn Battuta, born in **Morocco**⁽²⁾ in the 14th century. At the age of 21, he decided to leave his home and travel. His first **goal**⁽³⁾ was to visit Mecca, but his **journey**⁽⁴⁾ continued for almost 30 years!

Ibn Battuta traveled across Africa, Asia, and even parts of Europe. He enjoyed meeting kings, learning about cultures, and recording what he saw. Sometimes, the trips were dangerous: crossing deserts, sailing through storms, and avoiding **attacks**⁽⁵⁾.

But he refused to stop traveling because he loved discovering new places.

In his book, *Rihla* (The journey), he described cities, traditions, and people from more than 40 countries. **Historians**⁽⁶⁾ today still use his writing to understand the past.

Ibn Battuta became famous because he showed that **knowledge**⁽⁷⁾ and **curiosity**⁽⁸⁾ can be as powerful as **bravery**⁽⁹⁾. His story **inspires**⁽¹⁰⁾ students and **travelers**⁽¹¹⁾ everywhere to keep exploring and to keep learning.

(1) مستكشفون	(2) دولة المغرب	(3) هدف	(4) رحله طويلة	(5) هجمات	(6) مؤرخين
(7) معرفة	(8) حب الاستطلاع	(9) شجاعة	(10) يلهم / يشجع	(11) مسافرون - رحالة	



Exercise on Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

► Key vocabulary

1. We must be careful in the desert because there are many
a. dangers b. dreams c. plans d. tools
2. Sharks sometimes made sudden in the sea.
a. games b. trips c. attacks d. parties
3. We must other people's traditions and culture.
a. respect b. survive c. die d. drop
4. The study old maps and books to learn about ancient Egypt.
a. farmers b. artists c. historians d. players

► SB & AB Exercises

Guessing the meaning

5. **SB** He refused to stop traveling. The word "refused" means ".....".
a. agreed b. attacked c. explored d. disagreed
6. **SB** Knowledge can be as powerful as bravery. The word "bravery" here means ".....".
a. courage b. poverty c. sport d. anger
7. **SB** **Historians** today still use his writing. The word "**Historians**" refers to people who about history.
a. cheat b. sing c. act d. write
8. **SB** I would many dangers in the rainforest, such as wild animals.
a. face b. invent c. sell d. hire
9. **SB** He a shelter to stay safe at night.
a. flew b. drew c. built d. damaged

Synonyms, Antonyms, Prefixes & Suffixes

10. **SB** The suffix "-er" in "explorer" forms the ".....".
a. adjective b. noun c. adverb d. verb
11. **SB** "Explore" is a synonym of ".....".
a. survive b. die c. lose d. search

► El-Moasser Exercises

Guessing the meaning

12. We should respect nature and **protect** the rainforest. The word "**protect**" here means keep
a. dangerous b. safe c. endangered d. funny

13. My first **ambition** is to visit Mecca. The word "**ambition**" here can be replaced with

- a. team b. meal c. goal d. hobby

14. I use a compass to my way.

- a. find b. lose c. miss d. die

15. Scientist always new plants.

- a. eat b. water c. discover d. invent

Synonyms, Antonyms, Prefixes & Suffixes

16. "Threats" has almost the same meaning as ".....".

- a. safety b. dangers c. patience d. journey

17. "Impatience" is the opposite of ".....".

- a. protect b. courage c. patience d. inspire

18. "Inspire" is closest in meaning to ".....".

- a. attack b. motivate c. ignore d. worry

19. The suffix "-ful" in "powerful" changes the word into a/an

- a. noun b. adverb c. verb d. adjective

2. Speaking Skill

مهارة التحدث

► Explorer's podcast

Questions ?

1. What qualities make a good explorer?

ما الصفات التي تجعل الشخص مستكشفًا جيدًا ؟

2. If you were an explorer, where would you go? Why?

إذا كنت مستكشفًا، إلى أين ستذهب ؟ ولماذا ؟

3. What dangers might you face there?

ما المخاطر التي قد تواجهها هناك ؟

4. What would you use to survive?

ماذا ستستخدم للبقاء على قيد الحياة ؟

Answers ✓

- A good explorer must be brave, patient, curious, and strong.

يجب أن يكون المستكشف شجاعًا وصبورًا وفضوليًا وقويًا.

- I would go to the Amazon rainforests to discover new plants and animals.

سأذهب إلى غابات الأمازون لاكتشاف نباتات وحيوانات جديدة.

- I might face wild animals, heavy rain, and getting lost.

قد أواجه حيوانات برية وأمطارًا غزيرة وفقدان الطريق الصحيح.

- I would use a compass and build a shelter from branches.

سأستخدم بوصلة وأبني مأوى من الفروع.

3. Writing Skill

مهارة الكتابة

► Writing a short story :

كتابة قصة قصيرة

1. What is a short story?

١. ما هي القصة القصيرة

A short story is a small piece of fiction that tells about one main character and one main problem. It is meant to be read in one sitting.

القصة القصيرة هي قطعة قصيرة من الرواية تتحدث عن شخصية رئيسية واحدة ومشكلة واحدة رئيسية، وتقرأ في جلسة واحدة.

2. Structure of a Short Story

٢. بنية القصة القصيرة

A short story includes:

تتكون القصة القصيرة من:

1. **Beginning:** Introduce the character and setting

١. البداية: تقديم الشخصية والمكان.

2. **Middle:** Show the problem or conflict

٢. الوسط: عرض المشكلة أو الصراع.

3. **End:** Solve the problem or give a lesson.

٣. النهاية: حل المشكلة أو تقديم درس / رسالة.

Sample Short story

Last year, I went on a journey with my friends to explore the mountains. We were very excited and wanted to enjoy the fresh air. As we climbed higher, the weather changed and a powerful storm started. The rocks were dangerous and we were afraid of falling. To survive, we stayed close to each other and helped our friend who was tired. After a long walk, we finally found a safe place to rest. We watched the beautiful sky and felt proud of our bravery. That day inspired me to always be strong and never give up in difficult situations.



Pop Quiz on Writing Skill

Write a short story of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words about a special day you spent with your friends including :

- What that day was ?

- How you felt ?

- What you did on it ?

General Exercises



On Lessons 5 & 6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. To survive in the jungle, I would use a to find my way.
a. shelter b. compass c. goal d. journey
2. To get the adjective of the word "danger", we add the suffix ".....".
a. -er b. -ous c. -ly d. -ment
3. The opposite of the word "inspire" is ".....".
a. discourage b. aim c. explore d. travel
4. Travelers learn important landmarks from the locals. "Locals" here means people who
a. study history b. live in the area
c. work in art d. travel to other countries

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

decided - inspired - journey - culture - deserts

Marco Polo was a famous traveler from Italy. When he was seventeen, he went on a long (1) with his father to China. They traveled for many years through (2) and mountains. In China, Marco met the great ruler Kublai Khan. He learned about the Asian (3) and brought back new ideas to Europe. His stories (4) other explorers to travel.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

One of the greatest real explorers in history was Ibn Battuta, born in Morocco. At the age of 21, he decided to leave his home and travel. His first **goal** was to visit Mecca, but his journey continued for almost 30 years. He traveled across Africa, Asia, and parts of Europe. He enjoyed meeting kings and learning about cultures. Sometimes, the trips were dangerous: crossing deserts or sailing through storms. But he refused to stop traveling because he loved discovering new places. His book, Rihla (The Journey), described more than 40 countries. His story inspires students and travelers to keep exploring and learning.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Ibn Battuta was born in
a. Mecca b. Turkey c. Egypt d. Morocco

2. The underlined word "**goal**" is close in meaning to ".....".

- a. book b. story c. aim d. journey

3. Ibn Battuta's journey lasted for almost years.

- a. 21 b. 30 c. 40 d. 50

b. Answer the following questions.

4. Give a suitable title for the passage.

.....

5. Why did Ibn Battuta refuse to stop traveling despite the dangers?

.....

6. What does Ibn Battuta's story inspire people to do?

.....

4 Rewrite the following sentences:

1. **AB** It's not a good idea to smoke cigarettes. (avoid)

.....

2. He didn't refuse to come to the party. (agreed)

.....

3. It's not a good idea to make friends with people on social media. (stop)

.....

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. He agreed (**come**) to the meeting.

2. Children need (**eat**) more vegetables and fruits.

3. People wanted shelters (**protect**) themselves.

6 Write a biography of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A great explorer"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Review



on unit 9

Vocabulary	Language	Speaking
Lessons 1 & 2	Gerunds and infinitives	
survival النجاة	1. Verb + to + inf.	A: What makes a good explorer?
explorer مستكشف	الأفعال التالية يأتي بعدها (to + inf.) :	B: Bravery, curiosity and patience.
danger خطر		A: What dangers might you face?
bravery الشجاعة	mean يعني / يقصد	B: Wild animals, rain and getting lost.
goal هدف	want يريد	A: Why is Abu Zayd remembered as a hero?
patience الصبر	need يحتاج	B: Because he protected his tribe with courage.
powerful قوي	hope يأمل	A: What values does his story teach?
protect يحمي	ex. - I decided to help my sister with her homework.	B: Loyalty, bravery and wisdom.
journey رحلة طويلة		A: What would you do if you were lost in the jungle?
inspire يلهم	2. Verb followed by + (v. + ing)	B: I would stay calm and find a way out.
	الأفعال التالية يأتي بعدها (v. + ing) :	A: What skills help you survive?
Lesson 3		B: Courage, teamwork and patience.
tribe قبيلة	enjoy يستمتع بـ	
rival خصم	finish ينتهي	
loyal وافي	keep يحفظ	
strategy خطة		
wisdom حكمة		
leadership القيادة		
unite يوحد	ex. - You should avoid making bad friends.	
enemies أعداء		
hero بطل		
legend أسطورة		
Lessons 5 & 6		
discover يكتشف		
dangerous خطير		
survive ينجو		
explore يستكشف		
courage شجاعة		
qualities صفات / سمات		
record يسجل / يدون		
culture ثقافة		
compass بوصلة		
historians مؤرخين		

Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية في النص.

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Nader was lost in the jungle for three days. He tried to stay calm and find a way out. He used a filter straw to drink clean water and built a shelter from leaves. He didn't give up and finally reached a small village. His survival showed great bravery and smart thinking.

- The underlined word "shelter" means ".....".
a. danger b. safe place c. jungle d. weapon
- The underlined word "bravery" is the opposite of ".....".
a. fear b. courage c. wisdom d. laziness
- The underlined phrase "give up" means ".....".
a. continue b. surrender c. relax d. return

التحدي قد تجد صعوبة في تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية في النص.

مفتاح الحل عند قراءة الفقرة تجد أنه يمكن تخمين مفردة لغوية في النص.

Being an explorer

تختبر سؤال المحادثة (dialogue) معرفتك لقدر كاف من (Language Functions) والتي غالباً ما تكون على شكل أسئلة والرد عليها.

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

Complete the following dialogue :

Omar and Reem are talking about being an explorer.

Omar : Can I ask you some questions?

Reem : (1)

Omar : If you were an explorer, where would you go?

Reem : (2)

Omar : (3) ?

Reem : I'd like to discover mountain, caves and forests in the desert.

Omar : What dangers might you face?

Reem : (4)

Omar : (5) ?

Reem : I think teamwork, problem solving, and quick thinking are the most important survival skills.

التحدي تريد السؤال عن (لو كنت مستكشف) وتجد صعوبة في تكوين أسئلة والرد عليها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من الأسئلة والردود التي قد تحدث بينك وبين زميلك.

Test on unit 9

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The prefix "....." gives the opposite of "known".
a. un- b. il- c. dis- d. re-
2. **AB** Real is shown when someone faces danger without giving up.
a. courage b. fear c. anger d. surprise
3. The army used a clever strategy to defeat their enemy. The word "strategy" means a clever
a. plan b. map c. company d. person
4. The antonym of the word "weak" is ".....".
a. valuable b. courage c. powerful d. long

The Answers :

1. 2. 3. 4.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

people – dangers – teamwork - avoid - discover

When people explore jungles, they learn more than just facts about plants and animals. They learn about survival, (1) and respect for the environment. They must prepare carefully before taking any steps as they may face (2) like wild animals and getting lost. To (3) that, they use maps and compasses. Exploring the jungle helps scientists (4) new insects and plants that can be used in medicine.

The Answers :

1. 2. 3. 4.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

A treasure hunt is a game in which players follow a series of clues to find hidden objects or a final "treasure." In schools, teachers often use treasure hunts to make learning fun. They may hide cards around the classroom, each with a question. When students solve the question, they get the next clue. This activity **encourages** teamwork, problem-solving, and quick thinking. Whether in a classroom or a garden, the excitement of finding the "hidden prize" makes treasure hunts enjoyable for all ages. They are more than just a game; they build important skills.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. What is the main idea of the text?
a. Treasure hunts are only for children
b. Treasure hunts are fun and educational
c. Treasure hunts are bad and educational
d. Classrooms are the best place for games

2. The underlined word "**encourages**" is closest in meaning to ".....".
 a. stops b. solves c. motivates d. hides
3. In schools, students get the next clue by
 a. finding a map b. solving a question
 c. building a team d. finding a prize

b. Answer the following questions :

4. What is a treasure hunt?

.....

5. According to the text, what three skills do treasure hunts encourage?

.....

6. Why do you think people of all ages enjoy treasure hunts?

.....

The Answers :

- a. 1. 2. 3.
 b. 4. 5. 6.

4 Story

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. What did Professor Aronnax see through the submarine's windows?
 a. a hidden island b. other submarines
 c. colorful coral reefs and fish d. a giant squid
2. Captain Nemo provided special that allowed them to walk on the sea bed.
 a. suits b. maps c. torches d. boats
3. Which character grew impatient and missed freedom on the land?
 a. Professor Aronnax b. Conseil
 c. Captain Nemo d. Ned Land
4. The companions agreed that Captain Nemo was both brilliant and
 a. friendly b. mysterious c. fearful d. ordinary

b. Answer the following questions:

1. **AB** What did Nemo invite his guests to do ?

.....

2. What did they discover on one journey that hinted at "forgotten civilizations"?

.....

The Answers :

- a. 1. 2. 3. 4.
 b. 1. 2.

5 Rewrite the following sentences:

1. He decided to build a shelter. (not)
2. **AB** Are you sorry for not helping them? (regret)
3. **AB** He said that he didn't take part in the crime. (denied)

The Answers :

1.
2.
3.

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. He hoped (**find**) a way out of the jungle.
2. She finished (**write**) her report on the treasure hunt.
3. Following the map helped him (**discovering**) the prize.

The Answers :

1.
2.
3.

7 Complete the following dialogue:

An interviewer is asking Nader about his adventure in the jungle.

Interviewer : You survived for ten days in the jungle. What was the most difficult challenge?

Nader : (1)

Interviewer : How did you find food?

Nader : (2)

Interviewer : (3) ..?

Nader : I refused to give up. I kept walking and thinking of my family.

Interviewer : (4) ..?

Nader : I would always tell them to carry a compass and a torch.

Interviewer : Thank you for sharing your story.

Nader : (5)

The Answers :

1.
2.
3.
4.
5.

8 Write a review of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"An adventure"

.....

.....

.....

Test on unit 9

for Al-Azhar students

اختبار لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1. Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Samy and Ramy are talking about a folk hero.

Samy : Have you ever heard of a folk hero?

Ramy : (1)

Samy : (2) ?

Ramy : My favorite folk hero is Abu Zayed al-Hilali.

Samy : What was he known for?

Ramy : (3)

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An is a person who travel to discover new places.

a. engineer

b. swimmer

c. explorer

d. artist

2. Using a/an helps us walk safely in dark places.

a. treasure

b. artifact

c. drawing

d. torch

3. She asked me my lessons.

a. revise

b. revising

c. revised

d. to revise

4. People should avoid bad friends.

a. make

b. to make

c. made

d. making

3. Read and complete the text:

tales – times – protect – courage – laziness

Every tribe has its own heroes. They are remembered in (1) These heroes become legends because they show great (2) They (3) their people and help their community stay safe. Children enjoy hearing these stories and learning from them. Legends teach everyone to be brave, kind, and strong in difficult (4)

4. Rewrite the following sentences:

1. He didn't like to stay up late. (refused)

2. Let's play chess. (He suggested)

3. He said that he would give me a present. (promised)

4. you shouldn't smoke because it is dangerous. (stop)

5. Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Mona loves to swim. She loves sea animals. Her friends bought her tickets to the aquarium as a present on her birthday. She was so happy. She took her camera to the aquarium. She was ready to take a lot of pictures. She saw twenty five different types of fish. She saw a whale. She saw a turtle. She saw an octopus and a stingray. She saw a jellyfish and a shark. Her favorites were the whales because she thinks they are cute and friendly. She bought a picture album at the gift shop. There were small whales on the picture album. What a good day!

a. Answer the following questions:

1. What does the underlined pronoun "they" refer to?

2. Why did Mona's friends buy her tickets to the aquarium?

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. Mona loves animals.

a. wild

b. sea

c. desert

d. forest

4. It was a day.

a. bad

b. sad

c. nice

d. terrible

6. Write a paragraph of SIX (6) sentences on:

"A short story about your last adventure"

Review 3



SB Pages 52 : 55

Vocabulary

Lesson 1 ▶ SB Pages 103 & 104

culture (n)	ثقافة	celebrate (d) (v)	يحتفل
traditions (n)	تقاليد	connect (ed) (v)	يتواصل
include (d) (v)	يشتمل على	history (n)	تاريخ
festival (n)	احتفال	community (n)	مجتمع
respect (ed) (v)	يحترم	learning (n)	التعلم

Listening

Every culture has its own traditions that make it unique. These traditions can include food, clothing, festivals, and ways of greeting. For example, in Japan, people bow to show respect, while in many Western countries, people shake hands. In Mexico, families celebrate the Day of the Dead to remember loved ones who have passed away. Traditions help people feel connected to their history and community. Learning about other cultures teaches us respect and helps us understand the world better.

General Exercises



On Review 3

Lesson 2

Lesson 1

1 Complete the following dialog:

Ayman and Baher are talking about their favorite sports.

Ayman: What's your favorite sport?

Baher : (1)
It's the most popular sport in Egypt.

Ayman: Do you like swimming?

Baher : (2)

Ayman: (3)?

Baher : I really like LeBron James. He is the best basketball player.

Ayman: Do you prefer team sports or individual sports?

Baher : (4)
I enjoy working together with others.

Ayman: (5)?

Baher : I usually play twice a week to stay healthy.

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

1. That's the restaurant (**where**) serves the best pizza in town.
2. I (**don't**) use to eat fish.
3. I (**use**) to stay up late on weekends.
4. She decided (**study**) abroad next year instead of staying in her hometown.

3 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

champion - reflect - knight - customize - harmony

1. A brave warrior who served a king or queen was known as a
2. The Olympic gold medalist was welcomed as a true after winning the race.
3. After the difficult meeting, the manager needed time to on the decisions made.
4. The team coach wants to create between the players.

Lesson 2

1 Listen to the audio, then answer the questions.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- In Japan, people usually to show respect.
a. wave b. bow c. smile d. nod
- The Day of the Dead is celebrated in
a. Mexico b. Japan c. France d. India
- Learning about other cultures helps us
a. forget our history b. change our traditions
c. remember our memories d. understand the world better

b. Answer the following questions:

- What can traditions include?
- How do traditions help people?

2 Read the following text, then answer the questions.

Mohamed Salah was born in a small village in Egypt, in 1992. From a young age, he showed great interest in football. Salah spent hours practicing with a ball in the streets of his village.

By the time he joined El Mokawloon, he had already trained for many years with great dedication and patience. His hard work finally paid off when he signed with FC Basel in Switzerland—it was the start of his international journey.

Salah later played for Chelsea, Roma, and Liverpool, where he achieved incredible success. He scored record-breaking goals, won the Champions League, and was named one of the best footballers in the world.

Beyond football, Salah became a role model for millions. Egyptians call him "the humble star," because he never forgot where he came from.

Mohamed Salah's story teaches us that success comes from hard work, faith, and kindness. He had faced many challenges, but he never gave up—and that's why he remains a true Egyptian hero.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Before Salah joined FC Basel, he had played for
a. Rome b. Chelsea c. El Mokawloon d. Liverpool
- The text teaches us about
a. luck and fame b. strength and money
c. hard work and kindness d. poverty and diseases

b. Answer the following questions:

3. Where was Mohamed Salah born?

.....

4. How did Salah spend most of his free time?

.....

5. What record did Salah break at Liverpool?

.....

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. Nabil isn't using the mobile phone any more.

(used to)

.....

2. His favorite hobby is to write poetry.

(enjoy)

.....

3. The man who stole the money had brown hair.

(whose)

.....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An is a person who travels to new or unfamiliar places to learn about them, discover new things, or gather information.

a. passenger b. discoverer c. inventor d. explorer

2. The hotel staff were praised for their excellent towards all the guests.

a. honesty b. hospitality c. creativity d. activity

3. The treasure was in a cave where no one could find it.

a. open b. visible c. known d. hidden

4. During the match, the two played with great skill and respect.

a. workers b. coaches c. opponents d. fans

5. The graduation was held in the school hall with proud families watching.

a. meeting b. ceremony c. party d. trial

6. In ancient times, warriors rode into battle on a pulled by horses.

a. chariot b. car c. bicycle d. carriage

7. The students looked at their teacher with great for her kindness and wisdom.

a. anger b. admiration c. boredom d. surprise

8. She enjoys early in the morning before work.

a. to jog b. jogging c. jogs d. jog

9. I didn't to study, but I care about it much now.
 a. use b. used c. uses d. using
10. The woman helped me yesterday works at the hospital.
 a. which b. whose c. who d. where

5 The Story

A. Answer the following questions.

1. Who is the main character in the story?

.....

2. What is the name of Captain Nemo's submarine?

.....

3. What kind of animals did the crew see under the sea?

.....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The story was written by

- | | |
|--------------------|---------------------------|
| a. Jules Verne | b. Mark Twain |
| c. Charles Dickens | d. Robert Louis Stevenson |

2. Captain is the mysterious leader of the submarine.

- | | | | |
|---------|---------|----------|---------|
| a. John | b. Ahab | c. Smith | d. Nemo |
|---------|---------|----------|---------|

3. The submarine in the story is called the

- | | | | |
|------------|-------------|------------|---------------|
| a. Seagull | b. Nautilus | c. Dolphin | d. Ocean Star |
|------------|-------------|------------|---------------|

6 Write from ONE HUNDRED (100) to ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"How you celebrate your birthday!"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

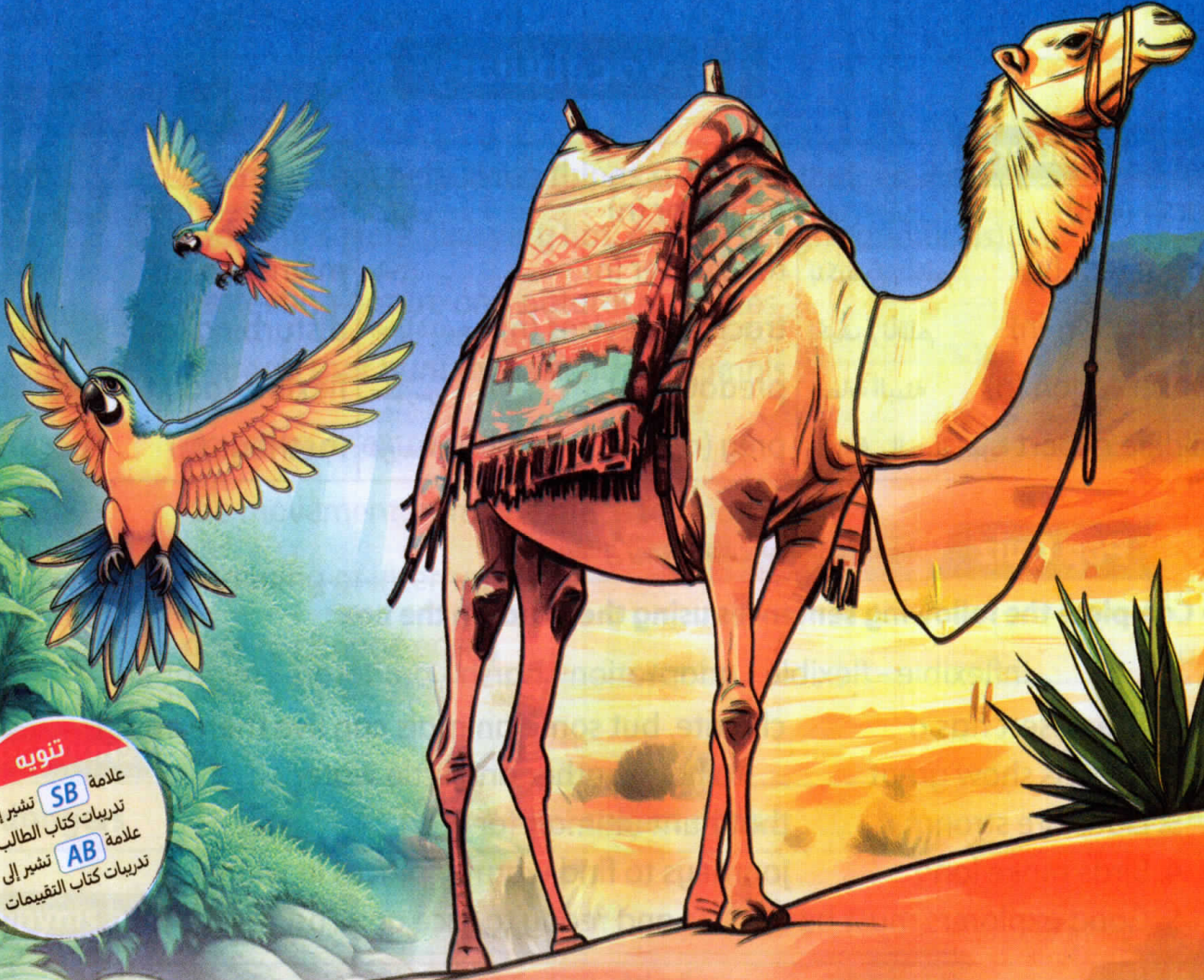
.....

.....

.....

Unit TEN

Animal Adaptations



SB Pages 56 : 71

Learning outcomes :

• Reading :

- identify the main ideas in informational texts about desert and Arctic animals.
- identify specific details in informational texts about desert and Arctic animals.

• Listening :

- recognize the gist of an interview with a wildlife expert.
- guess the meaning of unknown words based on contextual clues.
- recognize the supporting details of an interview with a wildlife expert.

• Speaking :

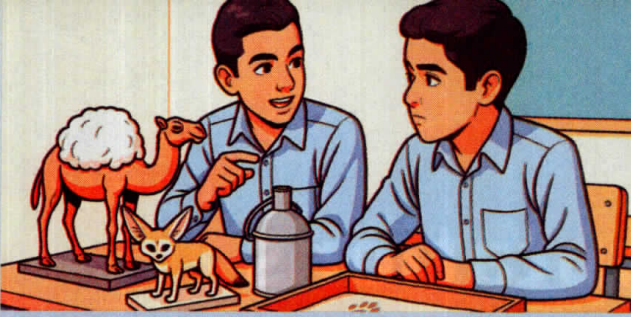
- participate in a role-play as a wildlife expert.
- present information on animal adaptations using reported speech.

• Language :

- transform direct questions into reported speech in written exercises.

• Writing :

- write a fact file about animals.



SB pages 57 : 62

Lessons

1 & 2

► Desert Animals
► Wildlife Experts

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

harsh (adj)	قاس / صعب	behavior (n)	سلوك	fascinated (adj)	منبهر / شديد الإعجاب
adapt (ed) (v)	يتكيف / يتأقلم	researcher (n)	باحث	migration (n)	هجرة
adaptation (n)	تكيف / تأقلم	tracking devices (n)	أجهزة تتبع	disturbing (adj)	مقلق / مزعج
conservation (n)	حماية البيئة	predator (n)	مفترس	flexible (adj)	مرن / قابل للتغير
wildlife expert	خبير في الحياة البرية	prey (n)	فريسة	methods (n)	طرق / أساليب



Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

• Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

inflexible - flexible - adaptation - harsh - predators - migration

1. The desert has a climate, but some animals can live there easily.
2. Camels show great to hot weather and little water.
3. Lions are strong that hunt animals for food.
4. Birds make long journeys to find warmer places in winter.
5. Good explorers must be and ready to face any change.

Lesson 1 ► SB Pages 57 : 59

extremely (adv)	جدا / للغاية	store (d) (v)	يخزن	locate (d) (v)	يحدد [مكان]
challenging (adj)	صعب/ يتطلب جهدًا	scarce (adj)	نادر / قليل	hump (n)	سنام [الجمال]
conditions (n)	ظروف / أحوال	master (n)	رئيس / سيد	sinking (n)	غوص / غطس
creatures (n)	مخلوقات	tough (adj)	قوي / قاس	eyelashes (n)	رموش
desert tortoise	سلحفاة الصحراء	thick fur	فرو سميك	adapted (adj)	متكيف

Lesson 2 ▶ SB Pages 60 : 62

extreme (adj)	شديد / متطرف	attach (ed) (v)	يرفق / يربط	observe(d) (v)	يراقب / يلاحظ
biology (n)	علم الأحياء	seal (n)	حيوان الفقمة	field (n)	مجال
Arctic (n)	القطب الشمالي	species (n)	نوع / أنواع		

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

adaptations	changes that help living things survive in their environment	تعديلات
harsh	rough or severe (like very hot, cold, or tough conditions)	قاسٍ
conservation	protecting nature and natural resources	الحفاظ على البيئة
predators	animals that hunt and eat other animals	المفترسون
fascinated	amazing or extraordinary	منبهر / مفتون
migration	the movement from one place to another	الهجرة
disturbing	annoying or interrupting	مزعج
flexible	able to change easily	مرن

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

face dangers	يواجه المخاطر	collect data	يجمع البيانات
--------------	---------------	--------------	---------------

Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

الكلمة Word	المترادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym / Opposite
harsh قاس / صارم	severe	mild لطيف / خفيف
tough صعب / قوى	hard	weak ضعيف
adaptation تكيف	adjustment	resistance مقاومة [رفض التغيير]
conserve يحافظ / يوقّر	save / protect	waste يُبدّد
flexible مرن / قابل للتكيف	bendable	rigid جامد / صلب
extreme شديد / قاس	intense	moderate معتدل

Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix بادئة / ناهية	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
-al	تكون الاسم من الفعل	survival بقاء
-er	تكون الاسم من الفعل	researcher باحث
-tion	تكون الاسم من الفعل	migration هجرة adaptation تكيف - تأقلم conservation حفاظ - حماية
-ble	تكون الصفة من الاسم / الفعل	flexible مرن / قابل للتغيير

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
understand يفهم	understood	understood
hear يسمع	heard	heard
begin يبدأ	began	begun

احرص على اقتناء

كتاب EL-MOASSER

في اللغة الإنجليزية

امتح ثقتك لمن يستحق





Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

on Lesson 1 SB page 57

1. Life in the desert is very **challenging**⁽¹⁾ because of the extreme heat during the day and freezing cold at night.
2. Some animals have developed amazing **adaptations**⁽²⁾ to survive in such **tough**⁽³⁾ environments.
3. The fennec fox is perfectly **adapted**⁽⁴⁾ to desert life. Its large ears help it lose heat and hear **prey**⁽⁵⁾, and its thick fur protects it from hot sand.
4. Desert tortoises can store water in their bodies for months and slow down their energy use when food is **scarce**⁽⁶⁾.
5. Camels are famous for their **survival skills**⁽⁷⁾. They store water, use fat in their humps for energy, and their long **eyelashes**⁽⁸⁾ protect them from **sandstorms**⁽⁹⁾.

(1) صعب	(2) تكيفات	(3) قاسي
(4) متكيف	(5) فريسة	(6) نادر
(7) مهارات البقاء	(8) رموش العين	(9) عواصف رملية

on Lesson 2 SB page 60

1. The interview is with Dr. Maha Ezzat, a researcher who studies **animal behavior**⁽¹⁾ in extreme **environments**⁽²⁾.
2. She explained that animals face and solve **survival problems**⁽³⁾ in amazing ways.
3. Her **current research**⁽⁴⁾ focuses on how **Arctic animals**⁽⁵⁾ adapt to climate change.
4. Some species are changing their **migration patterns**⁽⁶⁾ and feeding habits faster than scientists expected.
5. Dr. Maha and her team collect data using different **methods**⁽⁷⁾, such as **tracking devices**⁽⁸⁾ and hidden cameras.
6. She discovered that animals are much more **flexible**⁽⁹⁾ than people thought as they can change their behavior quickly to survive.

(1) سلوك الحيوان	(2) بيئات	(3) مشاكل البقاء
(4) بحث حالي	(5) حيوانات القطب الشمالي	(6) أنماط الهجرة
(7) طرق	(8) أجهزة تتبع	(9) مرن

تنويه: الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات إنشائية أخرى:

* Desert animals

* Extreme environments

* Adaptations in animals

II

Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz

تدرب على ٩ من
قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع

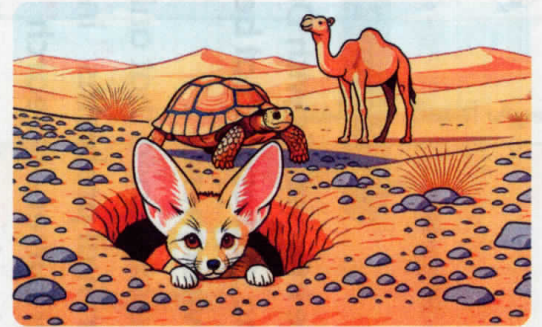


Reading

on Lesson 1 SB page 57

Masters of Adaptation

Life in the desert is extremely challenging. Too much heat during the day and freezing cold at night create **harsh**⁽¹⁾ conditions that would kill most animals. However, some amazing **creatures**⁽²⁾ have developed **incredible**⁽³⁾ adaptations to survive in these **tough**⁽⁴⁾ environments.



The fennec fox is perfectly **adapted**⁽⁵⁾ to desert life. Its large ears help it lose heat and hear prey moving underground. This small fox has thick **fur**⁽⁶⁾ on its feet to protect against hot sand and excellent **hearing**⁽⁷⁾ to locate insects and small animals. During the hot day, it stays cool in underground holes.

Desert tortoises are masters of water **conservation**⁽⁸⁾. They can store water in their bodies for months and get water from the plants they eat. Their hard shells protect them from **predators**⁽⁹⁾ and extreme temperatures. When food becomes scarce, they can slow down their use of energy and survive without eating.

Camels are famous for their **survival skills**⁽¹⁰⁾. They can drink huge amounts of water quickly and store it. Their **humps**⁽¹¹⁾ contain fat which provides energy during long journeys. Their wide feet prevent them from sinking into sand, and their long eyelashes protect their eyes from **sandstorms**⁽¹²⁾.

- Giving the main idea.

إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية في النص.

Answer
the following
questions.

Learn

1. What is the main idea of the first paragraph ?

- *Life in the desert.*

Practice

2. What is the general idea of the last paragraph ?

(1) قاس	(2) مخلوقات	(3) رائع / مذهل	(4) صعب	(5) متكيف	(6) فرو
(7) حاسة السمع	(8) حماية	(9) مفترسون	(10) مهارات البقاء	(11) سنام الجمل	(12) عواصف رملية

Listening

on Lesson 2 SB page 60

Recently⁽¹⁾, I interviewed Dr. Maha Ezzat, a researcher⁽²⁾ who studies animal behavior⁽³⁾ in extreme environments⁽⁴⁾. I began by asking what had made her interested in this field⁽⁵⁾. She explained⁽⁶⁾ that she had always been fascinated⁽⁷⁾ by the ways animals solve survival problems⁽⁸⁾. She added that when she was studying biology⁽⁹⁾, she had learned that animals are incredible problem-solvers⁽¹⁰⁾ and that they often develop solutions⁽¹¹⁾ that humans are still trying to understand.

Next, I asked if she had ever researched Arctic animals⁽¹²⁾. Dr. Maha told me that her current research⁽¹³⁾ was about how Arctic animals were adapting to climate change⁽¹⁴⁾.

She mentioned⁽¹⁵⁾ that some species⁽¹⁶⁾ were changing their migration patterns⁽¹⁷⁾ and feeding habits⁽¹⁸⁾ much faster than scientists had expected. For example, she said that some seals⁽¹⁹⁾ were moving to new areas where the ice lasted longer.

Then, I asked how she and her team collected their data⁽²⁰⁾. She explained that they used several methods⁽²¹⁾, including attaching⁽²²⁾ small tracking devices⁽²³⁾ to animals to follow their movements.

She also said that they used hidden cameras to observe natural behavior without disturbing the animals.

Finally, I asked what the most surprising thing she had discovered was. Dr. Maha replied that animals were much more flexible⁽²⁴⁾ than people had thought. She said they could change their behavior in just one generation when they needed to survive.

(1) حديثاً
(2) باحث
(3) سلوك الحيوان
(4) بيئات قاسية
(5) مجال
(6) فسرت
(7) منبهرة
(8) مشاكل البقاء
(9) علم الاحياء
(10) حلال مشاكل
(11) حلول
(12) حيوانات القطب الشمالي
(13) بحث جاري
(14) تغير المناخ
(15) ذكرت
(16) نوع / فصيلة
(17) نماذج الهجرة
(18) عادات التغذية
(19) حيوان الفقمة
(20) بيانات
(21) طرق / اساليب
(22) يربط / يرفق
(23) اجهزة تتبع
(24) مرن / قابل للتغير



General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 harsh - severe - rough - tough

* **harsh**

قاس [للظروف أو الطقس أو الكلام]

- ▶ The desert has **harsh** weather in summer.

* **severe**

شديد [للألم والمرض أو العقوبة]

- ▶ He had a **severe** headache after the trip.

* **rough**

خشن / قاسى / [للملمس أو هائج للبحر أو بيئى للسلوك]

- ▶ The road was **rough** and full of stones.

- ▶ The sea was **rough** yesterday.

* **tough**

صعب / قوى [للشخص أو المهمة]

- ▶ The exam was **tough**, but I did well.

2 adaptation - adoption

* **adaptation**

تكيف / تأقلم

- ▶ Animals' **adaptation** helps them survive in deserts.

* **adoption**

تبني [طفل] / اتخاذ [قرار]

- ▶ They decided on the **adoption** of a new teaching method.

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions التعبيرات

adapt to extreme environments يتكيف مع البيئات القاسية	freezing cold slow down	برد قارس / شديد البرودة يبطئ من
solve problems يحلّ مشكلات	perfectly adapted	متكيف تمامًا
masters of adaptation أسياد التكيف	migration patterns	أنماط الهجرة
last longer تدوم مدة أطول	huge amounts of water	كميات ضخمة من المياه

Prepositions حروف الجر

adapt to يتكيف مع	protect from / against	يحمي من / ضد
interested in مهتم بـ	prevent from	يمنع من
fascinated by مفتون بـ / منبهير بـ	blend into	يندمج فى
study of دراسة عن	use of (energy)	استخدام [الطاقة]

Exercise on Vocabulary

☉ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

► Key vocabulary

1. The living conditions in the desert kill many animals.

- a. soft b. harsh c. easy d. nice

2. **AB** Camels have long eyelashes as a / an to the desert.

- a. adaptation b. invitation c. drought d. carnival

3. A/An is an animal that hunts and eats other animals.

- a. predator b. plant c. prey d. artist

► SB & AB Exercises

Definitions

4. **SB** "....." means able to change easily.

- a. Harsh b. Hard c. Steel d. Flexible

5. **SB** is the movement from one place to another.

- a. Staying b. Death c. Migration d. Marriage

Guessing the meaning

6. **SB** Our teacher uses different methods to explain difficult lessons. The word "methods" here means ".....".

- a. ways b. rocks c. glasses d. friends

7. **SB** Animals' thick fur keeps them warm. The word "thick" here means ".....".

- a. light b. old c. new d. heavy

Synonyms, Antonyms, Prefixes & Suffixes

8. **SB** The synonym of the word "adaptation" is ".....".

- a. resistance b. conflict c. adjustment d. reaction

9. **SB** The opposite of "harsh" is ".....".

- a. complex b. hard c. severe d. mild

10. **SB** The words "tough" and "hard" are

- a. nouns b. synonyms c. antonyms d. opposites

11. **SB** To get the adjective from the verb "flex", we add the suffix ".....".

- a. -ed b. -er c. -ible d. -tion

12. **SB** The suffix "-al" forms the of the word "survive".
 a. adjective b. adverb c. verb d. noun

► El-Moasser Exercises

Definitions

13. means protecting nature and natural resources.
 a. Conversation b. Conservation c. Pollution d. Migration
14. means annoying or interrupting.
 a. Disturbing b. Calm c. Easy d. Funny
15. means changes that help living things survive in their environment.
 a. Adaptations b. Carnivals c. Population d. Flags

Guessing the meaning

16. My sister will study biology. This means she will study
 a. math b. tourism c. history d. living things
17. Animals are much more flexible than people. The underlined word "flexible" here means to change.
 a. hard b. bad c. easy d. difficult
18. Some animals have adapted to survive in bad weather. This means they there.
 a. die b. miss c. live d. escape
19. Some animals move away to themselves from predators.
 a. meet b. protect c. dry d. feel

Collocations

20. Scientists always data before doing research.
 a. buy b. sail c. damage d. collect

Synonyms, Antonyms, Prefixes & Suffixes

21. "Flexible" is close in meaning to
 a. rigid b. bendable c. lazy d. slow
22. To "conserve water" means to it.
 a. waste b. save c. mix d. boil
23. The opposite of "extreme" is ".....".
 a. heavy b. moderate c. warm d. low

24. To form the noun of the verb "conserve", we add the suffix ".....".

a. -ment

b. -tion

c. -ly

d. -al

25. The suffix "-tion" in "adaptation" changes the word into a/an

a. adjective

b. verb

c. noun

d. adverb

2. Speaking Skill

مهارة التحدث

► Ask and Answer about Amazing animal adaptations :

السؤال والإجابة عن التكيف الرائع للحيوانات :

Questions ?

1. How does the fennec fox stay cool in the desert?

كيف يحافظ ثعلب الفنك على برودته في الصحراء ؟

2. What protects the fennec fox's feet from hot sand?

ما الذي يحمي أقدام ثعلب الفنك من الرمل الساخن ؟

3. How do desert tortoises conserve water?

كيف تحافظ سلاحف الصحراء على الماء ؟

4. What is the main function of a camel's hump?

ما الوظيفة الأساسية لسنام الجمل ؟

5. How do camels walk easily on sand?

كيف تمشي الجمال بسهولة على الرمال ؟

6. How do camels protect their eyes in sandstorms?

كيف تحمي الجمال عينيها في العواصف الرملية ؟

Answers ✓

- It loses heat through its large ears and rests in underground holes during the day.

يفقد الحرارة عبر أذنيه الكبيرتين ويستريح في حفر تحت الأرض أثناء النهار.

- Its thick fur on the feet protects them from the hot sand.

الفرو السميك على الأقدام يحميها من الرمل الساخن.

- They store water in their bodies and slow down their use of energy.

تخزن الماء في أجسامها وتبطئ استهلاكها للطاقة.

- It stores fat for energy during long journeys.

يخزن الدهون لتوفير الطاقة أثناء الرحلات الطويلة.

- Their wide feet help them walk without sinking into the sand.

أقدامهم العريضة تساعدهم على المشي دون أن يغوصوا في الرمال.

- Their long eyelashes protect their eyes from blowing sand.

رموشهم الطويلة تحمي عيونهم من الرمال المتطايرة.

III Language in use

1 Reported «Yes / No» Questions : السؤال بـ «هل» في الكلام غير المباشر

A reported question is when you tell someone what another person asked, but you are not quoting their exact words.

السؤال المنقول (أو السؤال غير المباشر) هو عندما تخبر شخصًا بما سأله شخص آخر، ولكنك لا تنقل كلماته الحرفية بالضبط.

يبدأ السؤال بـ [هل] بأحد الأفعال المساعدة أو الأفعال الناقصة التالية :

Do / Does / Did - Have / Has / Had - Am / Is / Are / Was / Were / - Can / Could - Will / Would - May / Might - Shall / Should - Must - Need

يتم تحويل السؤال بـ [هل] إلى الكلام الغير مباشر كالتالي :

- استفسر / inquired / تساءل / asked / wondered + المُتحدث Speaker -
+ فاعل / مفعول + if / whether + wanted to know

١ نحذف علامات التنصيص (".....") ونحذف علامه الاستفهام ونضع (full stop(.)) مكانها.

٢ تتحول أفعال القول كالتالي :

مُخاطَب + ask / asks → مُخاطَب + say to / says to

مُخاطَب + asked → مُخاطَب + said to

٣ تتحول الأزمنة إلى الماضي.

٤ تتحول ظروف الزمان و المكان كالتالي.

أسماء الإشارة	
Direct speech	Reported speech
this	that
these	those
ظروف المكان	
here	there

التعبيرات الزمنية			
Direct speech	Reported speech	Direct speech	Reported speech
today	that day	tonight	that night
tomorrow	the following day	now	then
yesterday	the day before	ago	before
last week	the week before		

ex. - "Will you buy this T-shirt?" Ashraf said.

- Ashraf wondered if I would buy that T-shirt.

٥ عند وجود (do - does) كفعل مساعد فإنها تُحذف ويوضع الفعل الأساسي في زمن الماضي البسيط.

ex. - "Do you get up early, Mariam?" Zamzam said.

- Zamzam asked Mariam if/whether she got up early.

٦ عند وجود (did) كفعل مساعد فإنها تُحذف ويوضع الفعل الأساسي في زمن الماضي التام.

ex. - "Did you see the criminal?" the officer said.

= The officer asked if/whether I had seen the criminal.

٧ بعد (if / whether) يأتي الفاعل أو المفعول ثم الفعل [أي يتحول السؤال إلى جملة خبرية]

ex. - "Can you make pizza?" she asked.

= She asked if / whether I could make pizza.

2 Reported Wh-Questions : الأسئلة بأداة استفهام في الكلام غير المباشر

١ في الكلام المباشر، يبدأ السؤال بأحد أدوات الاستفهام التالية يليه الفعل المساعد :

What – When – Where – Why – Who – Whose – Which – How ...

ex. - "Why has she arrived home late?" asked Ali.

= Ali asked, "Why has she arrived home late?"

٢ تتكون جملة السؤال بأداة استفهام في الكلام غير المباشر من :

نص الكلام غير المباشر + أداة استفهام + فعل قول + مَبْلَغ
she had arrived home late. why (her) asked Ali

٣ تستخدم أفعال الإبلاغ بنفس الطريقة التي تم شرحها في (Yes / No questions) :

ex. - Sama asked Abdo when he had got up.

- Sama wondered / wanted to know when Abdo had got up.

٤ يستخدم الفاعل وليس الفعل المساعد بعد [أداة الاستفهام] في الكلام غير المباشر :

ex. - I wondered where she had gone. (NOT : where had she).

٥ تتحول الضمائر حسب المتكلم والمُخاطب مثل الجملة الخبرية :

ex. - Omar asked, "When will you explain the lesson for me, mom?" [مباشر]

- Omar asked mom when she would explain the lesson for him. [غير مباشر]

٦ تتحول بعض ظروف الزمان والمكان مثل الجملة الخبرية :

ex. - "Where are you now, Aya?", asked Ziad. [مباشر]

- Ziad asked Aya where she was then. [غير مباشر]

٧ تتحول الأزمنة إلى الماضي :

ex. - "When **are you leaving**, Salma ?", asked father. [مباشر]

- Father asked Salma when she **was leaving**. [غير مباشر]

٨ لا تتحول الأزمنة عندما يكون فعل القول في زمن المضارع.

ex. - "Do you **like** coffee?" he **asks**.

- He **asks** if I **like** coffee.

Not: if I **liked**.

Exercises on Language in use

1. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

► SB & AB Exercises

1. **SB** She asks her friend where she (**live**).
2. **SB** Basma wondered if I (**am**) coming to the festival.
3. **SB** Hatem wanted to know if Hisham (**can**) help him with the project.
4. **SB** I asked him when the report (**be**) done.
5. **SB** He asked me what I (**think**) of his presentation.
6. **SB** She asked me where I (**go**) the night before.
7. **SB** The teacher asked us if we (**understand**) the lesson.
8. **SB** He (**said**) his friends if they could lend him some money.
9. **SB** I asked him where he (**spend**) his weekend.
10. **SB** They wondered when he (**reply**) to their messages.

► El-Moasser Exercises

11. She wanted to know if I (**have**) a car.
12. I wondered where she (**has met**) them before.
13. Salma (**said**) when they had arrived the night before.
14. The policeman asked me if I (**see**) the thief.
15. Basma asked Reham which dress she (**chooses**).

2. Rewrite the following sentences :

► SB & AB Exercises

1. **SB** "How do camels store water ?" (He asked)
.....
2. **SB** "How do Arctic foxes survive in their habitats ?" (The student asked)
.....
3. **SB** "Do penguins migrate south ?" (She wanted to know)
.....
4. **SB** "Can polar bears swim long distances ?" (They wondered)
.....
5. **SB** "Why do some animals hibernate ?" (The teacher asked)
.....

► El-Moasser Exercises

6. She said to her dad, "Can I use your laptop?" (asked)
.....
7. Ahmed said, "Have you found a new job ?" (wanted to know)
.....
8. The teachers said to them, "What is the answer ?" (asked)
.....
9. She said to me, "Will you go to the party ?" (asked)
.....
10. "When is the test ?", she said. (wondered)
.....
11. He said to me, "Do you like fish ?" (asked)
.....
12. She asked me how I went to school. (said to me)
.....
13. Hany said, "How does climate change affect animals ?" (wanted to know)
.....
14. He said to her, "Have you finished your homework ?" (asked)
.....
15. He said, "Who wins the prize ?" (asked)
.....

Grammar in points

تدرب على القاعدة اللغوية في شكل نقاط طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية
(أهم الأفكار التي وردت في كتاب الطالب والتقييمات)

Reported Questions

1. Rewrite Notes

Sentence	Answer	Explanation
1. SB "How do Arctic foxes survive in their habitats?" (The student asked...)	The student asked how Arctic foxes survived in their habitats.	تحول سؤال يبدأ بكلمة استفهام (How) إلى الكلام غير المباشر نستخدم: asked + wh-word + subject + verb . يتم تحويل زمن المضارع البسيط (survive) إلى الماضي البسيط (survived).
2. SB "Do penguins migrate south?" (She wanted to know...)	She wanted to know if/whether penguins migrated south.	سؤال يبدأ بفعل مساعد (Do) في الكلام غير المباشر نستخدم: asked/wanted to know + if/whether + subject + verb يتم تحويل زمن المضارع البسيط (migrate) إلى الماضي البسيط (migrated).
3. SB "Can polar bears swim long distances?" (They wondered...)	They wondered if/whether polar bears could swim long distances.	تحويل سؤال يبدأ بفعل مساعد (Can) إلى الكلام غير المباشر. نستخدم if/whether للربط. يتم تحويل Can إلى could بعد الفاعل.
4. AB Abdo asked me, "Where have you spent the holiday?" (I)	Abdo wanted to know where. I had spent the holiday.	تحويل سؤال يبدأ بـ Where إلى الكلام غير المباشر .. have you spent → I had spent
5. AB Hana asked Basmalla, "What did you buy last week?" (the week before)	Hana asked Basmalla what she had bought the week before.	تحويل سؤال يبدأ بـ What إلى الكلام غير المباشر did you buy → she had bought last week → the week before

2. Correction Notes

Sentence	Correction	Explanation
1. SB She asks her friend where she (live).	lives	فعل القول هو (asks) وهو مضارع، لذا لا يتم تغير زمن الفعل في غير المباشر. يبقى الفعل في المضارع البسيط، ويتم تصريفه حسب الفاعل (she) ليصبح (lives).
2. SB Basma wondered if I (am) coming to the festival.	was	الفعل الرئيسي هو (wondered) وهو ماضي، لذا يجب تأخير زمن الفعل. زمن الجملة الأصلية كان مضارع مستمر (am coming) ويتحول إلى ماضي مستمر (was coming) ليناسب الفاعل (I).
3. SB I asked him when the report (be) done.	was	الفعل الرئيسي هو (asked) وهو ماضي، لذا يجب تأخير الزمن. الفعل (be done) يشير إلى المبني للمجهول في زمن ما، ويتحول الزمن إلى الماضي ليصبح (was done).
4. SB He (said) his friend if he could lend him some money.	asked	فعل القول المناسب هو (asked). يُستخدم الفعل (asked) بدلاً من (said) عند وجود مفعول به (his friend) وبعده أداة استفهام if/whether .
5. SB I asked him where he (spend) his previous weekend.	had spent	الفعل الرئيسي هو (asked) وهو ماضي، لذا يجب تحويل زمن الفعل إلى الماضي. الجملة الأصلية كانت في الماضي البسيط (spent)، ويتم تحويلها إلى زمن الماضي التام (had spent) لوجود (previous).

General Exercises



On Lessons 1 & 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. **AB** The loud noise outside was and made it hard to concentrate.
a. pleasant b. disturbing c. peaceful d. relaxing
2. The police tried to locate the missing car. This means they tried to the place.
a. turn off b. change c. discover d. build
3. The suffix " " turns the word "migrate" into a noun.
a. -ly b. -tion c. -ed d. -ment
4. A wildlife is a person who studies animals and their behavior.
a. predator b. expert c. tortoise d. adaptation

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

adaptations - plants - conservation - predators - migration

Life in the desert is difficult because of the harsh conditions. Animals need special (1) to survive. For example, a tortoise's hard shell protects it from (2) Water (3) is a key, so many animals get water from (4)

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Life in the desert is extremely challenging. Too much heat during the day and freezing cold at night create **harsh** conditions. However, some amazing creatures have developed incredible adaptations. The fennec fox has perfectly adapted. Its large ears help it lose heat and hear prey moving underground. It has thick fur on its feet to protect against hot sand. Camels are also famous for their survival skills. Their humps contain fat, which provides energy during long journeys. Their wide feet prevent them from sinking into sand, and their long eyelashes protect their eyes from sandstorms.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The fennec fox uses its large ears to
a. store water b. lose heat and hear prey
c. hide from predators d. protect its feet
2. The underlined word "**harsh**" is close in meaning to
a. easy b. amazing c. severe d. cool
3. A camel's hump contains for energy.
a. water b. sand c. fat d. fur

B. Answer the following questions :

4. Give a suitable title for the passage.

.....

5. What protects a fennec fox's feet from the hot sand?

.....

6. In your opinion, why is it important to study how animals adapt?

.....

4 Rewrite the following sentences :

1. "How do lizards survive in the desert?"

.....

(He asked)

2. "What's your favorite animal?"

.....

(She wanted to know)

3. "Why do you know about desert animals?"

.....

(The teacher asked)

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. She asked me if I (will go) to the party that evening.

2. **AB** They wanted to know if Habiba (have) a bicycle.

3. They asked me if I (go) to the concert the day before.

6 Complete the following dialogue :

Two students are discussing how animals adapt to the desert.

Student A : What's your favorite desert animal?

Student B : (1) I think fennec foxes are amazing.

Student A : (2) ?

Student B : They have large ears to lose heat and thick fur on their feet.

Student A : That's a great adaptation. What about camels?

Student B : (3) They walk on sand without sinking.

Student A : Wow. Animals are great at survival.

Student B : (4) I've the same opinion.

Student A : (5) ?

Student B : Yes, I think life is very harsh for animals.

7 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"How animals adapt to survive in their environments"

.....

.....



SB Page 63 & 64

Lesson

3

Arctic Animals

تنويه: الدرس الرابع القصة المقررة في نهاية الكتاب

I

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

miles (n)	أميال [مسافة]	Arctic (n)	القطب الشمالي
demonstrate (d)(v)	يظهر / يبرهن	warmth (n)	دفء
thick (adj)	سميك / كثيف	camouflage (n)	تمويه / اختفاء
remarkable (adj)	رائع / مذهل	absorb (ed) (v)	يمتص



Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

• Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

absorb - remarkable - camouflage - thick - thin

1. The chameleon uses to hide from predators.
2. Dark colors more heat from the sun than light colors.
3. The Arctic fox has a ability to survive in freezing weather.
4. The polar bear has fur to keep it warm in the snow.

Lesson 3 ▶ SB Pages 63 & 64

frozen (adj)	متجمد	male (adj)	ذكر
icy (adj)	جليدي / مثلج	emperor penguin (n)	البطريق الإمبراطور
skin (n)	جلد	hatch (ed) (v)	يفقس [الببيض]
paws (n)	كفوف [مخالب مغطاة بالفراء]	gather (ed) (v)	يجمع - يتجمع
snowshoes (n)	أحذية ثلجية	feathers (n)	ريش
seasonal (adj)	موسمي	wild (n) (adj)	الحياة البرية - بري
vegetation (n)	نبات / غطاء نباتي	fins (n)	زعانف

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

take	turns	ببديل الأدوار	stay	warm	يحافظ على دفته
------	-------	---------------	------	------	----------------

Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

الكلمة Word	المترادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym / Opposite
remarkable مدهش / رائع	amazing	ordinary عادي
thick كثيف / سميك	dense / heavy	thin رقيق / نحيف
warmth دفء	heat	cold برودة
demonstrate يوضح	show	hide يخفي
frozen متجمد	icy	melted ذائب

Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

بادئة / نهاية Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	أمثلة Examples
-er	تكون الاسم من الفعل	hunter صياد
-ness	تكون الاسم من الصفة	darkness ظلام
-able	تكون الصفة من الفعل	remarkable جدير بالملاحظة
-y	تكون الصفة من الاسم	icy جليدي
-th	تكون الاسم من الصفة	warmth دفء
-al	تكون الصفة من الاسم	seasonal موسمي natural طبيعي

أحرص على اقتناء



كتاب EL-MOASSER

في اللغة الإنجليزية

امنح ثقتك لمن يستحق

Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz

تدرب على ٩ من
قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع



Reading

on Lesson 3 SB page 63

Surviving the Frozen North

The Arctic is one of Earth's most extreme environments. With temperatures **dropping to** ⁽¹⁾ -40°C and months of **total darkness** ⁽²⁾. However, many **remarkable** ⁽³⁾ animals can survive in these icy wilds.

Polar bears are the best at surviving in the Arctic. Their thick, white fur provides excellent **warmth** ⁽⁴⁾ and perfect **camouflage** ⁽⁵⁾ against snow. Under their fur, black skin absorbs heat from the sun. Large **paws** ⁽⁶⁾ work like snowshoes to walk on thin ice. These powerful hunters can smell seals from **miles** ⁽⁷⁾ away.



Arctic foxes **demonstrate** ⁽⁸⁾ amazing seasonal adaptations. In winter, their fur turns completely white and becomes much thicker for warmth. During summer, it changes to brown or gray to mix with rocks and vegetation.

Male emperor penguins ⁽⁹⁾ stand on ice for months, protecting their eggs before **hatching** ⁽¹⁰⁾ in **freezing winds** ⁽¹¹⁾. They gather to take turns moving to the warm center. Their thick **feathers** ⁽¹²⁾ create natural warmth for them.

(6) كف الحيوان	(5) تمويه / إخفاء	(4) دفء	(3) مدهش	(2) ظلام تام	(1) تنخفض إلى
(12) ريش	(11) رياح متجمدة	(10) الفقس	(9) ذكر بطريق الإمبراطور	(8) يظهر	(7) أميال

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary

- He sat near the fire to feel
a. speed b. cold c. warm d. noise
- The teacher will how to use the computer.
a. steal b. feed c. demonstrate d. wash
- The pyramids are buildings.
a. modern b. remarkable c. tiny d. small
- Polar bears live in the region.
a. desert b. city c. forest d. Arctic
- Some animals use to hide from danger.
a. songs b. babies c. camouflage d. mobiles
- Plants sunlight to make food.
a. lose b. absorb c. share d. feed

SB & AB Exercises

Guessing the meaning

- SB** Temperature drops to -40°C in the Arctic. The word "drops" here means
a. increases b. rises c. decreases d. swims
- SB** Many remarkable animals can survive in these icy wilds. The word "icy" is similar in meaning to
a. hot b. lazy c. warm d. frozen
- SB** Arctic foxes demonstrate amazing seasonal adaptation. The word "seasonal" means every
a. day b. week c. month d. season

10. **SB** They gather to take turns moving to the warm center. "Gather" here means they

- a. step up b. take care c. come together d. look up

11. **AB** Their thick fur excellent warmth.

- a. provides b. steals c. loses d. plays

12. **SB** In winter, their fur completely white.

- a. turns b. makes c. swims d. flies

Synonyms, Antonyms, Prefixes & Suffixes

13. **SB** The opposite of "thick" is ".....".

- a. heavy b. thin c. long d. wide

14. **SB** The suffix "y" in "-icy" turns it into a/an

- a. adverb b. noun c. adjective d. verb

► El-Moasser Exercises

Guessing the meaning

15. Their fur provides perfect camouflage. The word "perfect" means ".....".

- a. ideal b. bad c. unimportant d. sunny

16. The animal changes its color to mix with vegetation. The underlined word "vegetation" means ".....".

- a. water b. rocks c. rivers d. plants

17. His experiment demonstrates his opinion to others. This means it that clearly.

- a. shows b. forces c. lifts d. dies

Collocations

18. Our teacher asked us to turns answering the questions.

- a. do b. take c. make d. put

Synonyms, Antonyms, Prefixes & Suffixes

19. To turn the adjective "warm" into a noun, we add the suffix ".....".

- a. -th b. -able c. -al d. -ness

20. The antonym of "frozen" is ".....".

- a. cool b. hard c. solid d. melted

General Exercises



On Lesson 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. **AB** Bird occurs every year when they fly to warmer places.
a. imagination b. migration c. invitation d. decoration
2. We add the suffix "....." to get the noun from the adjective "dark".
a. -ly b. -ment c. -ly d. -ness
3. "Remarkable" is a synonym for the word
a. ordinary b. amazing c. cold d. white
4. A polar bear's black skin heat from the sun to stay warm.
a. reflects b. absorbs c. demonstrates d. changes

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

predators - fur - snowshoes - survive - distance

The Arctic fox is known for its incredible adaptations that help it live in freezing environments. It can (1) in low temperature because of its thick (2) Its paws are covered with fur, acting like natural (3) Its sharp sense of hearing allows it to locate small animals under the snow. They dig burrows in the ground to protect themselves from the cold and (4)

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

The Arctic is one of Earth's most extreme environments. However, many remarkable animals can survive in these icy wilds. Polar bears are the best at surviving there. Their thick, white fur provides excellent warmth and perfect camouflage against snow. Under their fur, black skin absorbs heat from the sun. Arctic foxes demonstrate amazing seasonal adaptations. In winter, their fur turns completely white for warmth and **camouflage**. During summer, it changes to brown or gray to mix with rocks and vegetation. Male emperor penguins stand on ice for months, protecting their eggs. They gather to take turns moving to the warm center.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Under their fur, polar bears have skin.
a. white b. brown c. black d. gray

2. The underlined word "camouflage" is close in meaning to ".....".

- a. hatching b. stay warm c. hunting d. hide

3. In, the foxes' fur turns white.

- a. winter b. spring c. fall d. summer

B. Answer the following questions :

4. Give a suitable title for the passage.

5. How do emperor penguins work together to stay warm?

6. Why is it useful for an Arctic fox's fur to change color?

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Magy asked Walaa what she (do) the following day.

2. Ghada wondered if I (am) late.

3. Salma asked me why I (leave) early the day before.

5 Complete the following dialogue :

Alaa and Kareem discuss how animals survive in the Arctic.

Alaa : What do you think the most extreme environment is?

Kareem : (1)

Alaa : (2) ?

Kareem : I think so because temperatures drop to -40°C in the Arctic.

Alaa : (3) ?

Kareem : Animals do some adaptations to survive.

Alaa : Can you give me an example ?

Kareem : (4) Polar bears change their fur between seasons.

Alaa : Why is fur important for arctic animals?

Kareem : (5)

6 AB Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Arctic Animals"



SB Pages 67 : 70

Lessons

5 & 6

► Let's Talk
► Animal Fact File

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

migration (n)	هجرة	exhibit (n)	معرض / عرض	hibernation (n)	البيات الشتوي
hollow (adj)	اجوف / مجوف [فارغ من الداخل]	store (d)(v)	يخزن	physical (adj)	بدني / جسدي
features (n)	ملامح / صفات	status (n)	حالة	habitat (n)	موطن / بيئة [الحيوان]
reflect (ed) (v)	يعكس	hibernate (d) (v)	يدخل في بيات شتوي	endangered (adj)	معرض لخطر الانقراض



Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

• Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

hollow - habitat-store - hibernation - exhibit

1. Squirrels nuts and seeds to eat later in the cold season.
2. A forest is the natural for many wild animals and birds.
3. The bear sleeps inside a tree during its long winter rest.
4. Some animals go into during winter to save energy when food is hard to find.

Lesson 5 ► SB Pages 67 & 68

incredible (adj)	لا يصدق / مذهل	survivors (n)	الناجون / الباقون على قيد الحياة	sense (n)	حاسة
snow leopard	فهد الثلوج	detect(ed) (v)	يكتشف / يلاحظ	keen (adj)	حاد / شديد

Lesson 6 ► SB Pages 69 & 70

diet (n)	نظام غذائي	rocky (adj)	صخري	description(n)	وصف
cliffs (n)	منحدرات	identify (ied) (v)	يتعرف على / يحدد	snowy owl (n)	بومة المناطق الجليدية
spots (n)	بقع / نقاط	desert kangaroo rat (n)	فأر الكنغر الصحراوي	regions (n)	مناطق
Arctic wolf (n)	الذئب القطبي	protection (n)	حماية	section (n)	قسم / جزء

Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

الكلمة Word	المترادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym / Opposite
store	يخزن keep / pack	يهدر spend / waste
hollow	أجوف empty	صلب solid
thick	سميك dense	نحيف / رقيق thin

Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	أمثلة Examples
in-	تعطي عكس المعنى	incredible لا يصدق
-ly	تكون الظرف من الصفة	exactly تمامًا
-tion	تكون الاسم من الفعل	description وصف
-ion	تكون الاسم من الفعل	protection حماية

احرص على اقتناء

كتاب EL-MOASSER

في اللغة الإنجليزية
أهلث ثقتك لمن يستحق





Main Points on Reading & Listening Texts

on Lesson 5 SB page 67

Amazing Adaptations⁽¹⁾ of Polar Bears

1. Polar bears' fur is not white; each hair is **hollow**⁽²⁾ and reflects light.
2. Their fur helps them **blend into**⁽³⁾ the snow.
3. The hollow hair traps air, keeping the bear warm in freezing weather.
4. Their big **paws**⁽⁴⁾ help them walk on thin ice without falling through.
5. Polar bears have a strong **sense of smell**⁽⁵⁾, about seven times stronger than dogs.
6. Their sense of smell helps them find seals under snow.

(1) تكيفات	(2) اجوف	(3) يندمج في
(4) كفوف الحيوان	(5) حاسة الشم	

on Lesson 6 SB page 69

Snow Leopard Fact File⁽¹⁾

1. Snow leopards are large cats with thick, gray fur and **dark spots**⁽²⁾.
2. They have long tails and strong legs.
3. They live in mountain regions at **heights**⁽³⁾, up to 18,000 feet high.
4. Their **thick fur**⁽⁴⁾ keeps them warm in cold weather.
5. Their wide paws act like snowshoes.
6. Their long tails help them balance on **rocky cliffs**⁽⁵⁾.
7. They hunt wild sheep, goats, and smaller animals.

(1) ملف حقائق	(2) بقع داكنة	(3) مرتفعات
(4) فرو سميك	(5) منحدرات صخرية	

تنويه: الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات إنشائية أخرى:

* Adaptation of polar bear * Fact file about snow leopard

1. Reading and Listening



Reading

للمريد من إتقان
المهارات اللغوية
كراسة المعاصر
للمهارات اللغوية

• on Lesson 5 SB page 67

Amazing Adaptations of Polar Bears

Hadeer : Look at this polar bear exhibit! It's amazing how big they are.

Mona : Yeah, and did you know their fur isn't actually white? Each hair is hollow and reflects light.

Hadeer : Really? That's so cool! I wonder why they adapted that way.

Mona : Well, it helps them hide in snow and ice when they're hunting seals. Plus, the hollow hairs keep air for extra warmth.

Hadeer : That makes sense. What about their paws? They look huge.

Mona : Those big paws help them walk on thin ice without falling through. It's like wearing snowshoes.

Hadeer : Nature is incredible! I read that they can smell seals from really far away too.

Mona : Exactly! Their sense of smell is about seven times stronger than a dog's. They can detect seals under three feet of snow.

Hadeer : I had no idea! Polar bears are such amazing survivors.

• on Lesson 5 SB page 68

Mona : Look at this Arctic fox exhibit! Wow how small and fluffy it is.

Hadeer : Yeah, did you know that its fur changes color with the seasons? In winter, it turns white to blend in with the snow.

Mona : Really? That's so cool! What happens in summer?

Hadeer : In summer, its fur turns brown or gray, so it can hide among the rocks and plants.

Mona : It's amazing! What about its paws? They look covered in fur.

Hadeer : The thick fur on their paws works like warm boots. It helps them walk on snow and ice without freezing.

Mona : Nature is incredible! I read that Arctic foxes can survive in temperatures as low as 50°C.

Hadeer : Exactly! Their keen hearing also helps them find small animals under the snow.

• on Lesson 6 SB page 69

Snow Leopard Fact File

Physical Description: (size, color, features)	* Snow leopards are large cats with thick, gray fur covered in dark spots. * They have long tails and powerful legs.
Habitat: (place, climate)	They live in mountain regions of Central Asia, at heights up to 18,000 feet.
Adaptations: (For temperature, food, protection)	* Their wide paws work like snowshoes. * Thick fur keeps them warm. * Long tails help them balance on rocky cliffs.
Diet	They hunt wild sheep, goats, and smaller animals.
Conservation Status	Endangered - only about 4,000 left in the wild.



General Notes on Reading & Listening

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions التعبيرات			
from far away	من بعيد	That makes sense.	هذا يبدو منطقي.
I had no idea!	لم يكن لدى فكرة!	seven times stronger	أقوى سبعة أضعاف
Prepositions حروف الجر			
blend in	يندمج	covered in	مغطى بـ
under three feet	تحت مسافة ٣ أقدام	at heights up to	في مرتفعات يصل ارتفاعها إلى



Exercise

on Vocabulary

◉ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

► Key vocabulary

1. Bears sleep all winter. This is called

a. celebration

b. hibernation

c. happiness

d. migration

2. We food in the fridge.

a. eat

b. open

c. store

d. throw

3. Mirrors light to show a clear image.

a. imagine

b. reflect

c. copy

d. celebrate

4. Twins usually have many in common.
a. features b. smells c. buildings d. diets
5. The bird made its nest inside a tree.
a. hollow b. greedy c. lazy d. funny
6. Football needs a lot of strength.
a. musical b. magical c. chemical d. physical
7. The ocean is the of fish and whales.
a. holiday b. habit c. habitat d. farm

► SB & AB Exercises

Guessing the meaning

8. **SB** It is amazing how big they are. The word "big" means ".....".
a. tiny b. old c. funny d. huge
9. **SB** The hollow hairs keep air for extra warmth. The word "extra" is similar in meaning to
a. less b. unimportant c. additional d. weak
10. **SB** "That makes sense". This expression means we can it.
a. understand b. miss c. lose d. delete

Collocations

11. **SB** Animals' thick fur them warm.
a. keeps b. plays c. washes d. teaches

Synonyms, Antonyms, Prefixes & Suffixes

12. **SB** The antonym of the word "....." is solid.
a. rocky b. high c. hollow d. exact
13. **SB** The prefix "....." gives the opposite of "credible".
a. im- b. dis- c. in- d. ir-
14. **SB** To get the adverb of the word "exact", we add the suffix ".....".
a. -ment b. -ness c. -ed d. -ly
15. **SB** The word "hollow" and "empty" are
a. synonyms b. adverbs c. opposites d. verbs

► El-Moasser Exercises

Guessing the meaning

16. The survivors of the accident were rescued by the police. The word "survivors" means people who
a. worked b. lived c. traveled d. died

17. In some places, nature is incredible. The word "incredible" means ".....".
 a. normal b. ugly c. amazing d. useless
18. They live in mountain regions of central Asia. The word "regions" has the same meaning as
 a. capitals b. cities c. oceans d. areas
19. I wonder why they adapted that way. The word "wonder" here means ".....".
 a. reply b. respond c. ask d. wander
20. Their diet includes wild sheep, goats and smaller animals. The word "diet" is related to
 a. food b. habitat c. body d. temperature

Synonyms, Antonyms, Prefixes & Suffixes

21. The synonym of "thick" is ".....".
 a. dense b. soft c. thin d. light
22. To "store" food means to it.
 a. eat b. sell c. keep d. waste
23. Ants store food for winter. The antonym of the word "store" is ".....".
 a. spell b. keep c. empty d. waste

2. Writing Skill

مهارة الكتابة

► A fact file :

A fact file is a short report that gives important information about a topic-like an animal, a place, a person, or a machine - in a clear and organized way.

ملف الحقائق هو تقرير قصير ي طرح معلومات مهمة عن موضوع مثل حيوان، مكان، شخص أو آلة بطريقة منظمة وواضحة.

How to write a fact file

1. Start with a title. ابدء بكتابة عنوان.
2. Use sections: - physical, description, habitat,...
 استخدم اقسام رئيسية مثل (الوصف الجسدي ، الموطني ، التكيفات ...)
3. Write short notes. اكتب ملاحظات قصيرة.
4. Include interesting facts. أضف حقائق شيقة.
5. Keep the language simple. حافظ على بساطة اللغة المستخدمة.
6. Add a picture. أضف صورة.

Animal Fact File - Arctic Wolf:

Section	Information
Animal	Arctic Wolf
Physical Description:	
Size:	About 1 to 1.8 meters long.
Color:	White or light gray.
Special features:	Thick fur, small ears, and strong legs to survive in freezing weather.
Habitat:	
Where it lives:	In the Arctic regions of North America and Greenland.
Climate:	Very cold and snowy.
Adaptations:	
For temperature:	Thick fur and a layer of fat under the skin keep it warm.
For finding food:	Hunts in groups (packs) to catch large animals like musk oxen and Arctic hares.
For protection:	Its white color helps it blend into the snow to hide from enemies.
Diet:	Mainly meat eats hares, caribou, and musk oxen.
Interesting Facts:	Arctic wolves can live in -30°C temperatures and do not hibernate.

احرص على اقتناء

EL MOASSER

اللغة الإنجليزية

امح ثققت لمن يستحق



General Exercises

On Lessons 5 & 6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A good strategy helps achieve your dreams. The word "strategy" here means ".....".
a. friend b. dream c. plan d. skill
2. The synonym of the word "hollow" is
a. dense b. thin c. solid d. empty
3. To form the noun of the word "protect", we add the suffix ".....".
a. -ive b. -ed c. -ly d. -ion
4. Every tool is made for a special
a. purpose b. color c. nature d. sense

2 Read the following text , then answer the questions :

In many countries, solar power is becoming an important source of energy. It uses sunlight to produce electricity without harming the environment. Students in a small Egyptian village built a solar panel system for their school. They learned how sunlight hits the panels and creates energy that can light classrooms and charge devices. The project helped them understand the value of renewable energy and teamwork. It also inspired others in the community to use solar power at home. Now, the school not only saves money but also teaches students how science can improve life.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Solar power is a type of energy.
a. harmful b. renewable c. limited d. chemical
2. The students' project mainly promoted
a. teamwork b. competition c. pollution d. entertainment
3. The school now saves
a. books b. money c. time d. teachers

B. Answer the following questions :

4. What does solar power use to produce electricity ?

.....

5. Give a suitable title for the passage.

.....

6. What did the students learn from the project ?

.....

3 Rewrite the following sentences :

1. "Where do snow leopards live?"

(She asked)

.....

2. "What is their diet?"

(He wanted to know)

.....

3. "Are they endangered?"

(They wondered)

.....

4 Complete the following dialogue :

Lily and Esraa are talking about snowy owls.

Lily : Hello, Esraa, what's your favorite bird?

Esraa : Hello, Lily. (1)

Lily : Have you ever seen a snowy owl?

Esraa : (2)

Lily : (3)

Esraa : It lives in the Arctic.

Lily : (4)

Esraa : Its feathers help it survive in cold weather.

Lily : Is it meat eater or plant eater?

Esraa : (5) It's a good hunter.

Vocabulary	Language	Speaking
Lessons 1 & 2 adaptation تكيف harsh قاسٍ / شديد predators مفترسات conservation حفظ / حماية survival skills مهارات البقاء sandstorms عواصف رملية thick fur فراء سميك camouflage تمويه Lesson 3 warmth دفء remarkable مذهل / رائع demonstrate يُظهر / يوضح paws كفوف الحيوان claws مخالب feathers ريش hollow أجوف Lessons 5 & 6 researcher باحث extreme environments بيئات قاسية migration patterns أنماط الهجرة feeding habits عادات التغذية species نوع / فصيلة data بيانات tracking devices أجهزة تتبع flexible مرن	Reported Questions In reported questions : - Don't use question marks. - Use "ask, wonder, inquire, want to know" + (if / whether or question word). - Change the tense (present → past) if needed. e.g. "Do you like ice cream ?" → She asked if I liked ice cream. e.g. "When is the test ?" → He asked when the test was. e.g. "Can you swim, Tarek ?" Said Omar. → Omar asked Tarek if he could swim. e.g. "Will you buy this T-shirt ?" Ashraf said. → Ashraf wondered if I would buy that T-shirt. e.g. "Where are you now, Aya ?" asked Zeina. → Zeina asked Aya where she was then.	Talking about Animal Adaptations A: Which animal do you think is the best at surviving in the Arctic? B: I think the polar bear . A: What do you find most remarkable about these animals? B: Their adaptations are remarkable: they can live in such harsh conditions. A: What can we learn from animal adaptations? B: They can learn to be strong and adapt to change like they do.

Review



on unit 10

Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية في النص.

اقرأ وقيم بالإجابة.

Read the following text, then answer the questions :

The Komodo dragon is the world's largest living lizard. It can grow up to 3 meters long and weigh over 70 kilograms. These reptiles live only on a few Indonesian islands, including Komodo, Rinca, and Flores. They are meat eaters and sometimes they eat very large prey like deer or water buffalo.

- The underlined word "largest" can be replaced by
a. biggest b. smallest c. hardest d. easiest
- The opposite of the underlined word "live" is " "
a. drive b. die c. meet d. lead

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة في تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية في النص.

مفتاح الحل عند قراءة الفقرة تجد أنه يمكن تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية في النص.

Animal adaptations

تختبر سؤال المحادثة (dialogue) قدراتك للتعبير عن مواقف معينة.

اقرأ وقيم بالإجابة.

Complete the following dialogue :

Father is talking with his son about animal adaptations.

Father : How was your day at school?

Son : (1)

Father : (2) ?

Son : We learned about animal adaptation in the English class.

Father : (3) ! How do lizards survive in the desert?

Son : They have a body shape that helps them blend in .

Father : You're right. (4) ?

Son : Desert tortoises can get water from the plants they eat.

Father : What special body part protects it from predators?

Son : (5) It's very hard.

التحدى تريد السؤال عن [تكيف الحيوان] وتجد صعوبة في تكوين أسئلة والرد عليها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من الأسئلة والردود عن الموضوع.

Test on unit 10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. **AB** The car had a sudden in the middle of the road.
a. vacation b. breakdown c. holiday d. picnic
2. A leopard is a because it hunts other animals for food.
a. conservation b. predator c. prey d. healthy
3. We add the suffix "....." to get the adjective from the word "nature".
a. -er b. -ment c. -ing d. -al
4. "....." means annoying or interrupting.
a. Fascinated b. Disturbing c. Incredible d. Harsh

The Answers :

1. 2. 3. 4.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

shape - underwater - swimmers - hunt - prey

Emperor penguins are one of the remarkable animals that can survive in the Arctic. They are one of the best (1) Their body (2) helps them move quickly through the water. Their sharp eyesight allows them to see well (3) Emperor penguins (4) in groups to catch their prey and they are fast and skillful hunters in the water.

The Answers :

1. 2. 3. 4.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Have you ever explored the desert? Life in the desert is extremely challenging due to harsh conditions. However, creatures there have incredible **adaptations**. The fennec fox's large ears help it lose heat and hear prey underground. It also has thick fur on its feet to protect against hot sand. Desert tortoises are masters of water conservation; they can store water for months and get it from the plants they eat. Camels are famous for their survival skills. Their humps contain fat, which provides energy not water. Their wide feet stop them from sinking into sand, and long eyelashes protect their eyes from sandstorms.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. What is the main idea of this text?
a. The desert climate b. Survival in the desert
c. Fennec foxes d. Water
2. The underlined word "**adaptations**" is closest in meaning to ".....".
a. excitement b. hibernation c. adjustment d. resistance

3. A fennec fox's large help it to stay cool and hear prey.
 a. legs b. ears c. arms d. feet

b. Answer the following questions :

4. What does a camel store in its hump?

5. Why is life in the desert extremely challenging?

6. How do desert tortoises get and save water?

The Answers :

- a. 1. 2. 3.
 b. 4. 5. 6.

4 Story

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. When the Nautilus was trapped under the ice, the began running low.
 a. food b. water c. electricity d. oxygen
2. Captain Nemo showed calm courage but also a cold to human life.
 a. indifference b. curiosity c. loyalty d. happiness
3. For Professor Aronnax, the ocean was a school of wonder, for Ned Land, it was a
 a. battlefield b. prison c. home d. mystery
4. Who attacked warships on the surface "without mercy"?
 a. Ned Land b. The giant squid
 c. Captain Nemo d. Professor Aronnax

b. Answer the following questions :

1. What two major dangers did the Nautilus face?

2. **AB** What can we learn from Captain Nemo's leadership in dangerous situations?

The Answers :

- a. 1. 2. 3. 4.
 b. 1. 2.

5 Rewrite the following sentences :

1. **AB** Abdo asked me, "where have you spent the holiday?" (I)

2. "Can camels survive without water?" (He wondered)

3. "When did the migration start?"

(They asked)

The Answers :

1. 2. 3.

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. She asked if he (has) any news about the animals.

2. I asked him when the report (be) done.

3. They wanted to know if I (am) coming to the zoo.

The Answers :

1. 2. 3.

7 Complete the following dialogue :

An interviewer is asking a researcher who studies animal behavior.

Interviewer : Welcome, Dr. Maha. As a wildlife expert, what do you study?

Dr. Maha : (1)

Interviewer : (2)

Dr. Maha : We use tracking devices to follow their movements and hidden cameras to watch their behavior.

Interviewer : (3)

Dr. Maha : Yes, we discovered that some animals can change their behavior very quickly to survive changes in the climate.

Interviewer : (4)

Dr. Maha : Exactly. It shows how flexible nature can be.

Interviewer : (5)

Dr. Maha : You're welcome.

The Answers :

1. 2. 3.
4. 5.

8 AB Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Desert animals"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test on unit 10

for Al-Azhar students

اختبار لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1. Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Amira and Salma are talking about animals.

Amira: What is your favorite animal?

Salma: (1)

Amira: Why do you like the cat?

Salma: (2)

Amira: I agree it is nice and kind.

Salma: (3)

Amira: I like horses the best.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- are animals that hunt and eat other animals.
a. Features b. Adaptations
c. Habitats d. Predators
- The teacher will how to solve the problem.
a. survive b. demonstrate
c. escape d. store
- Noha wanted to know if I Luxor.
a. had visited b. visit
c. will visit d. am visiting
- She us where we lived.
a. said b. asked
c. told d. suggested

3. Read and complete the text :

camouflage – skills – adapt – changes – flood

Adaptation is very important for animals. Animals (1) to different environments to stay safe and find food. Some animals use (2) to hide from danger. They change their colors to look like trees, rocks, or sand. These smart (3) help them survive in the wild. Nature gives every animal special (4) to live and grow.

4. Rewrite the following sentences:

- "Will you carry this box ?" Ahmed said. (asked)
- "How do they go to school?" The teacher said. (wondered)
- "Have you met Ali?" Salma said to Nada. (if)
- She said to me, "How did they spend time?" (asked)

5. Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Doctors are important because they care for people. Doctors are people who take care of others and help them get well when they are **sick**. Doctors find out what is wrong with people when they are sick. Doctors help sick people get better by giving them the right medicine. **They** work in hospitals and doctor's offices. They are caring people. To be a doctor, you will have to go to college. You should like working with people and helping others. You should be kind and helpful. If you are not kind, patients will not love you.

a. Answer the following questions:

- What does the underlined pronoun "**They**" refer to?
.....
- What is the main idea of the passage?
.....

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- If you are not kind, patients will you.
a. love b. like c. admire d. dislike
- The underlined word "**sick**" means ".....".
a. tall b. happy c. ill d. thick

6. Write a short paragraph of SIX (6) sentences on:

"How can animals adapt in different places"

Unit ELEVEN

Stories on the Move



SB Pages 72 : 87

Learning outcomes :

- **Reading**
 - identify the main idea in a narrative text.
 - correctly identify the main challenge, the turning point in the story, and the final realization of the narrator.
- **Listening**
 - correctly identify specific facts (e.g., activity, location, feeling) mentioned in a short travel narrative audio.
- **Speaking**
 - share a personal travel experience.
 - describe the setting, a turning point/challenge, and the final outcome.
 - use appropriate past narrative tenses.
- **Language**
 - correctly use the appropriate past tense [Simple, or Perfect] to establish a clear timeline.
- **Writing**
 - write a cohesive travel narrative that describes a personal trip.
 - use varied past tenses [simple, perfect] to sequence events logically.



SB Pages 73 : 78

Lessons

1 & 2

- ▶ Travel Tales
- ▶ The Journey to a Better Life

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

book (ed) (v)	يحجز	lifelong (adj)	مدى الحياة	unforgettable (adj)	لا ينسى
unexpected (adj)	غير متوقع	challenging (adj)	مليء بالتحدي	snorkeling	الغطس [باستخدام انبوب التنفس]
hiking trail	طريق للمشي في الجبال أو الطبيعة	safari (n)	رحله سفاري	breathtaking (adj)	مذهل / ساحر
		hospitality (n)	كرم الضيافة	scenery (n)	منظر طبيعي
columns(n)	أعمدة	slippery (adj)	زلق [قابل للإنزلاق]	tombs(n)	مقابر



Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

unforgettable - slippery - booked - challenging - snorkeling

1. We..... two rooms in a hotel in Luxor for three nights.
2. Be careful! The rocks are..... after the rain.
3. I will never forget this trip. It was an experience.
4. Climbing the mountain was really ,but we did it.
5. We went in the Red Sea and we saw colorful fish.

Lesson 1 ▶ SB Pages 73 : 75

camping trip (n)	رحله تخيم	adventure (n)	مغامرة	extra (adj)	زائد / اضافي
pack (ed) (v)	يحزم [امتعته]	remote (adj)	بعيد / ناء	relaxed (adj)	مسترخي
necessary (adj)	ضروري / هام	waterfall (n)	شلال	embarrassed (adj)	محرج / مكسوف
slip (ped) (v)	ينزلق	crystal/clear (adj)	صافي / نقي	ignore (d) (v)	يتجاهل
path (n)	ممر / طريق	rare (adj)	نادر	prepared (adj)	مجهز / مستعد
blankets (n)	بطاطين	experience (n)	خبره / تجربه	lightweight (adj)	خفيف الوزن

Lesson 2 ▶ SB Pages 76 : 78

seaside (n)	ساحل البحر	mix (n)	خليط - مزيج	felucca (n)	فلوكة [مركب شراعى]
explore (d) (v)	يستكشف	the Valley of the Kings (n)		flooding (n)	فيضان
coral reefs (n)	شعاب مرجانية		وادي الملوك	treatment (n)	معاملة
Bedouin (adj)	بدوى	Karnak Temple (n)	معبد الكرنك		
sail (ed) (v)	يبحر	perfect (adj)	مثالى		

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

unforgettable	impossible to forget	لا ينسى
breathtaking	very beautiful, impressive, or surprising	رائع / مذهش
challenging	difficult in a way that tests your abilities and skills	صعب / يتطلب جهداً
slippery	smooth and hard to stand on because you might slide	زلق
snorkeling	swimming near the surface of the sea using a mask to see underwater	الغوص بالأنبوب
safari	a trip into the desert to explore and enjoy nature	رحله سفاري
hospitality	warm and friendly treatment to guests and visitors	كرم الضيافة
columns	large stone structures in temples or buildings	أعمدة حجرية
tombs	places where the dead are buried, often underground	مقابر / قبور

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

	photos	يلتقط صور	face	a challenge	يواجه تحدى
take	a safari	يقوم برحلة سفاري	have	an experience	يخوض تجربة
	shelter	يلجأ إلى مأوى			
make	a plan	يضع خطة	go	snorkeling	يمارس الغوص
	friends	يكون صداقات			
explore	places	يستكشف الاماكن	share	an experience	يتبادل خبرة / تجربة

Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

الكلمة Word	المترادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym / Opposite
unforgettable لا يُنسى	memorable	forgettable يمكن نسيانه
breathtaking مُدهش	amazing	boring مملّ
challenging صعب	difficult	easy سهل
slippery زلق	smooth	rough خشن
remarkable استثنائي	extraordinary	ordinary عادي
brave شجاع	courageous	cowardly جبان
embarrassed محرج	ashamed / shy	confident واثق
comfortable مريح	relaxed / cozy	uncomfortable / restless غير مريح
book يحجز	reserve	cancel يلغى
remote بعيد	far / distant	close / near قريب

Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	أمثلة Examples
-able	تكون الصفة من الاسم	comfortable مريح
un-	تكون عكس الصفة	unforgettable لا يُنسى unexpected غير متوقع
-ing	تكون الصفة من الاسم	challenging مُتحدٍ / صعب
-ery	تكون الصفة من الفعل	slippery زلق

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

المضارع Present	الماضي Past	التصريف الثالث P.P.
take يأخذ	took	taken
catch يلحق - يمسك	caught	caught
spend يقضي / يصرف	spent	spent
steal يسرق	stole	stolen



Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

on Lesson 1 SB page 73

Travel Tales

1. The story describes a family **trip**⁽¹⁾ in Wadi EL-Rayan.
2. They planned carefully and **packed**⁽²⁾ everything they needed.
3. The trip turned into an **unforgettable**⁽³⁾ adventure because of the weather.
4. They saw **breathtaking scenery**⁽⁴⁾ with waterfalls, rare plants, and birds.
5. When a **storm**⁽⁵⁾ came, they took shelter under rocks to stay safe.
6. They met another family who shared food and blankets with them.
7. They made **lifelong**⁽⁶⁾ friends and learned from this unexpected experience.

(1) رحلة	(2) حزم الامتعة	(3) لا ينسى
(4) منظر ساحر	(5) عاصفة	(6) مدى الحياة

on Lesson 2 SB page 76

Adventure in Dahab

1. Sophie is a **tourist**⁽¹⁾ from France who visited Dahab on the Red Sea.
2. She loved the **relaxing**⁽²⁾ atmosphere of Dahab.
3. She spent her mornings walking along the **seaside**⁽³⁾.
4. Then, she went snorkeling at the Blue Hole, where she saw colorful fish and **coral reefs**⁽⁴⁾.
5. On another day, she joined a desert safari and enjoyed Bedouin tea.
6. Sophie thought Dahab had been a perfect mix of **adventure**⁽⁵⁾ and peace.

Exploring Luxor and Aswan

1. John is an American **traveler**⁽⁶⁾ who spent a week **exploring**⁽⁷⁾ Egypt.
2. In Luxor, John visited the Valley of the Kings and walked inside tombs.
3. He admired the Great Karnak Temple with its tall **columns**⁽⁸⁾.
4. Then, he sailed on a felucca boat along the Nile River to Aswan.
5. There, he enjoyed the calm water and visited the famous Philae Temple.
6. He thought that Southern Egypt had been even more amazing than he had imagined, and he hoped to return one day.

(1) سائح	(2) مريح	(3) شاطئ	(4) شعاب مرجانية
(5) مغامرة	(6) مسافر	(7) يستكشف	(8) اعمدة

تنويه: الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات إنشائية أخرى:

* A trip you had

* A visit to Dahab

* A visit to Luxor and Aswan

1. Reading and Listening



Reading

on Lesson 1 SB page 73

Last summer, my family planned a simple **camping trip**⁽¹⁾ to Wadi El-Rayan in Fayoum, Egypt. We had **booked**⁽²⁾ a comfortable place and **packed**⁽³⁾ all the necessary things. However, our journey turned into an **unforgettable**⁽⁴⁾ adventure that we still talk about today.



On the second day, we decided to take a **challenging**⁽⁵⁾ hiking trail to see a **remote**⁽⁶⁾ **waterfall**⁽⁷⁾. The **breathtaking**⁽⁸⁾ **scenery**⁽⁹⁾ along the path was absolutely amazing - golden desert hills, crystal-clear lakes, and **rare**⁽¹⁰⁾ plants and birds everywhere. We felt completely relaxed.

Suddenly, dark clouds gathered overhead, and heavy rain started pouring down. We had **ignored**⁽¹¹⁾ the weather and weren't prepared for such **conditions**⁽¹²⁾. Our **lightweight**⁽¹³⁾ jackets became very wet within minutes. The path became **slippery**⁽¹⁴⁾ and dangerous, so we took shelter under some large rocks.

While waiting for the storm to pass, we met another family who had been caught in the same **situation**⁽¹⁵⁾. They shared their extra food and warm **blankets**⁽¹⁶⁾ with us. We spent hours talking, laughing, and sharing travel stories. When the rain finally stopped, we had made new **lifelong**⁽¹⁷⁾ friends. That unexpected experience turned our ordinary camping trip into an unusual one.

Choose
the correct
answer.

- Guessing the meaning.

Learn

1. The underlined word **remote** means

- a. near b. shallow c. far d. fast

Practice

2. What is the opposite of the underlined word **breathtaking**?

- a. wonderful b. ugly c. nice d. beautiful

خمن المعنى.

(1) رحله تخييم	(2) حجز	(3) حزم امتهه	(4) لا تنسى	(5) صعب / تحدي	(6) بعيد / ناء
(7) شلال	(8) تخطف الانفاس	(9) منظر طبيعي	(10) نادر	(11) تجاهل	(12) ظروف
(13) خفيف الوزن	(14) زلق	(15) موقف	(16) بطاطين	(17) مدى الحياة	

on Lesson 1 SB page 75

Last summer, my family and I went on a camping trip in the forest. The place was breathtaking, with tall green trees and birds singing everywhere. Setting up the tent was a bit challenging, but we were excited. While enjoying our picnic, something unexpected happened. A hungry monkey suddenly appeared and tried to steal fruit from our basket. I jumped to scare it away, but I slipped and fell, which made everyone laugh. The monkey ran off with an apple, and I felt very embarrassed. It was an unforgettable day that we still talk about and laugh at together.



Listening

on Lesson 2 SB page 76

Story 1. Adventure in Dahab

Last winter, Sophie, a tourist from France, visited Dahab on the Red Sea. She had **dreamed of** ⁽¹⁾ visiting Egypt before she finally made the trip. Before arriving in Dahab, she had read about its **beauty** ⁽²⁾ and the **hospitality** ⁽³⁾ of its people. She loved the **relaxing atmosphere** ⁽⁴⁾ of the small town and spent her mornings walking along the **seaside** ⁽⁵⁾. After **exploring** ⁽⁶⁾ the beaches, she went **snorkeling** ⁽⁷⁾ at the Blue Hole, where she saw colorful fish and **coral reefs** ⁽⁸⁾. On another day, she joined a desert safari and enjoyed Bedouin tea under the stars. After the trip, Sophie said that Dahab had been the perfect mix of adventure and peace, and she hoped to return soon.

Story 2. Exploring Luxor, and Aswan

John, an American traveler, spent a week exploring Southern Egypt. He had long wanted to visit the country before he finally made the trip. Before arriving in Luxor he had read about its ancient temples and **tombs** ⁽⁹⁾. In Luxor, he visited the Valley of the Kings and walked inside tombs that had been decorated with colorful paintings thousands of years earlier. He also **admired** ⁽¹⁰⁾ the great Karnak Temple with its tall columns.

After John had visited Luxor, he sailed **on a felucca** ⁽¹¹⁾ boat along the Nile River to Aswan. There, he enjoyed the calm waters and visited the famous Philae Temple, which had been moved to a new island to protect it from **flooding** ⁽¹²⁾. After the trip, John said that southern Egypt had been even more amazing than he had imagined, and he hoped to return one day.

(1) حلم بـ	(2) جمال	(3) كرم الضيافة	(4) جو عام مريح	(5) الشاطئ	(6) استكشاف	(7) الفطس باستخدام انبوب التنفس
(8) شعاب مرجانية	(9) مقابر	(10) أعجب بـ	(11) في الفلوكة	(12) فيضان		



General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 trip - hike - journey - flight - picnic

* trip

▶ We went on a weekend **trip** to Aswan.

رحلة قصيرة

* hike

▶ They went on a **hike** through the desert hills.

تنزه سيرًا على الأقدام في الطبيعة

* journey

▶ The **journey** across the desert took two days.

رحلة برية طويلة

* flight

▶ Our **flight** to Luxor was delayed by two hours.

رحلة جوية

* picnic

▶ The students had a **picnic** in the park.

تنزهة قصيرة في الهواء الطلق (يتناول فيها طعامًا)

2 atmosphere

▶ The **atmosphere** at the festival was full of joy.

جوّ / أجواء

▶ The **atmosphere** of the Earth protects us from the sun's heat.

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions التعبيرات			
a bit challenging	صعبة قليلاً	feel embarrassed	يشعر بالاحراج
feel relaxed	يشعر بالراحة	set up the tent	يثبت الخيم
Prepositions حروف الجر			
turn into	يتحول إلى	wait for	ينتظر
along the path	عبر أو بطول الممر	walk through	يمشي خلال
pour down	بغزارة - ينهمر (للمطر)	run off with	يهرب بـ
within minutes	في خلال دقائق	laugh at	يسخر من



Exercise on Vocabulary

◉ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

▶ Key vocabulary

1. We the tickets before going to Hurghada.

a. sailed

b. booked

c. mended

d. played

2. The exam was not easy, it was
 a. challenging b. simple c. funny d. clear
3. Egyptians are known for their They give food and help strangers.
 a. laziness b. unkindness c. hospitality d. pollution
4. We can't forget our visit to the country. It was We enjoyed a lot.
 a. unforgettable b. boring c. difficult d. forgettable

► SB & AB Exercises

Definitions

5. **SB** means very beautiful, impressive or surprising.
 a. Breathtaking b. Ordinary c. Usual d. Late
6. **SB** means smooth and hard to stand on because you might slide.
 a. Hard b. Harsh c. Ahead d. Slippery

Guessing the meaning

7. **SB** We have booked a comfortable place. The word "book" here means
 a. reserve b. cancel c. delay d. change
8. **SB** We took a challenging hiking trail to see a remote waterfall. The word "remote" here is similar in meaning to
 a. here b. close c. distant d. silly
9. **AB** We saw a breathtaking scenery along the path. This means the scenery was
 a. hard b. awful c. terrible d. amazing

Collocations

10. **SB** We experiences with our friends.
 a. share b. meet c. boil d. feed
11. **SB** He can challenges easily, he is brave.
 a. swim b. fly c. post d. face

Synonyms, Antonyms, Prefixes & Suffixes

12. **SB** The word "breathtaking" is a synonym of "".
 a. ordinary b. boring c. amazing d. slow
13. **SB** The opposite of "ancient" is "".
 a. old b. historic c. modern d. traditional
14. **SB** To form the adjective of the noun "comfort", we add the suffix "".
 a. -able b. -er c. -ness d. -al
15. **SB** The prefix "un-" in "unforgettable" means "".
 a. again b. not c. before d. full of

► El-Moasser Exercises

Definitions

16. means impossible to forget.
 a. New b. Ancient c. Unforgettable d. Unsure
17. A is a trip into the desert to explore and enjoy nature.
 a. safari b. voyage c. flight d. song

Guessing the meaning

18. The path became and dangerous. Be careful, you may slide.
 a. slippery b. rough c. hard d. difficult
19. Ancient temples have tall stone that hold the roof.
 a. doors b. columns c. windows d. stairs

Collocations

20. We had new lifelong friends.
 a. done b. bought c. shot d. made
21. He snorkeling in the Red Sea to see coral reefs.
 a. shared b. sailed c. went d. made

Synonyms, Antonyms, Prefixes & Suffixes

22. The antonym of "brave" is " ".
 a. friendly b. strong c. cowardly d. calm
23. The words "slippery" and "smooth" are " ".
 a. antonyms b. synonyms c. opposites d. verbs
24. The word "remarkable" has the same meaning as
 a. wonderful b. brave c. ordinary d. special
25. The suffix " " changes the word "challenge" into an adjective .
 a. -ment b. -or c. -ing d. -less

2. Speaking Skill

► An unexpected Adventure.

Questions ?

1. Where did you go on your last trip?
أين ذهبت في رحلتك الأخيرة ؟
2. How did you feel during the trip?
كيف كان شعورك اثناء الرحلة ؟
3. What did you see there?
ماذا رأيت هناك ؟
4. Did anything unexpected happen?
هل حدث شيء غير متوقع ؟
5. Did you find any help ?
هل وجدتم أى مساعدة ؟

Answers ✓

- I went on a camping trip to Wadi El-Rayan with my family.
ذهبت في رحلة تخييم إلي وادي الريان مع أسرتي.
- I felt excited and relaxed because the place was peaceful.
شعرت بالحماسة والاسترخاء لأن المكان كان هادئًا.
- I saw beautiful waterfalls, rare plants, and desert birds.
رأيت شلالات جميلة ونباتات نادرة وطيورًا صحراوية.
- Yes, it rained heavily, so we had to take shelter under some rocks.
نعم، هطلت أمطار غزيرة، فاضطررنا للاحتباء تحت بعض الصخور.
- Yes, we met another family who shared food and blankets with us.
قابلنا عائلة أخرى شاركتنا الطعام والأغطية.

► A visit to Dahab.

Questions ?

1. Have you ever been on an adventure trip?
هل ذهبت من قبل في رحلة مغامرة ؟
2. What was the most exciting part of the trip?
ما هو الجزء الأكثر إثارة في الرحلة ؟
3. What did you do ?
ماذا فعلت ؟

Answers ✓

- Yes, I have. I went on a safari in Dahab in the desert with my friends.
نعم، ذهبت في رحلة سفاري في مدينة دهب في الصحراء مع أصدقائي.
- The most exciting part was riding camels and watching the sunset in the desert.
أكثر جزء مثير كان ركوب الجمال ومشاهدة غروب الشمس في الصحراء.
- I met some Bedouins who offered us Bedouin tea and told amazing stories.
قابلت بعض البدو الذين قدّموا لنا الشاي البدوي وحكوا قصصًا رائعة.

4. What did you learn from your travel?

ماذا تعلمت من رحلتك ؟

- I learned to respect different cultures and enjoy new experiences.

تعلمتُ احترام الثقافات المختلفة والاستمتاع بتجارب جديدة.



Pop Quiz on Speaking Skill

- Complete the following dialogue.

Sara and Manal are talking about their last trip.

Sara : Where did you go on your last trip ?

Manal : (1)

Sara : Dahab! Wonderful!(2)

Manal : I went on a camping trip with my classmates and teachers.

Sara : (3)

Manal : We set up tents, made a fire and enjoyed our time.

Sara : What activities did you do during the camp?

Manal : (4)

Sara : Safari in the desert is very cool! Did you enjoy yourself ?

Manal : (5)

Sara : Great! I hope to come with you next time.

Manal : I hope so. It'll be great.

III

Language in use

- **Past tenses** → are the set of tenses used to tell stories. They include:

الأزمنة الماضية ← هي مجموعة الأزمنة التي نستخدمها لكي نسرد القصص وتشمل:

1 The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

- It is used for the main events of a story in chronological order.

يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط لسرد الأحداث الرئيسية في القصة بترتيبها الزمني.

ex. He got up, opened the door, and left.

2 The Past Perfect Tense زمن الماضي التام

Formation التكوين

1

Affirmative Statements

الجملة الخبرية
المثبتة

Subject الفاعل + had ['d] + p.p. التصريف الثالث

ex. - He **had done** his homework before he watched TV.

2

Negative Statements

الجملة الخبرية
المنفية

Subject الفاعل + hadn't + p.p. التصريف الثالث

ex. - I **hadn't watched** TV before I finished my homework.

3

Interrogative

صيغة
الاستفهام

(A) Yes/No question : (أ) السؤال بـ "هل" :

Had + subject + p.p.
الفاعل التصريف الثالث ?

ex. - **Had** you **finished** everything by five ?

- **Had** she **studied** English well before her last exam ?

(B) Wh - question : (ب) السؤال باستخدام كلمة إستفهام :

Question word + had + subject + p.p.
كلمة الاستفهام الفاعل التصريف الثالث ?

ex. - What **had** they **bought** before traveling ?

- Where **had** you **been** before going to the cinema ?

Usage الاستخدام

We use the past perfect to go back even further in time, describing an event that happened before the main events of the story.

◀ نستخدم لوصف حدث يتم قبل الأحداث الرئيسية في القصة.

• It provides the order of actions in the past. • يساعد على توضيح ترتيب الأفعال في الماضي.

✍ الحدث الأول [الأقدم] ماضى تام والحدث الثاني [الأحدث] ماضى بسيط.

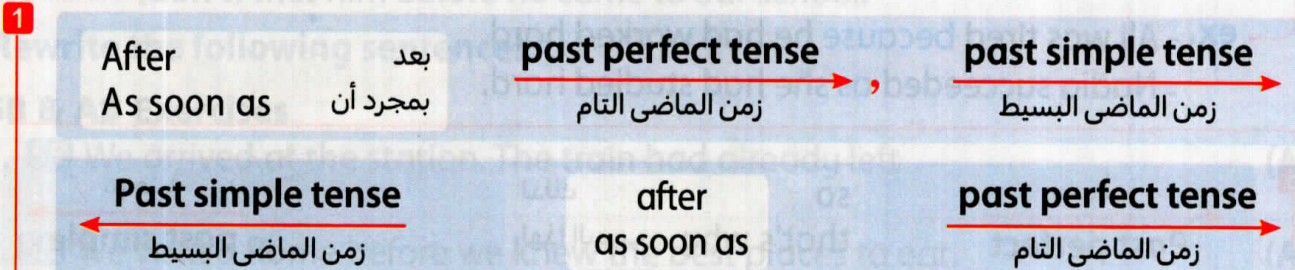
ex. - I **went** to the cinema after I **had completed** my work.

الحدث الثاني : ماضى بسيط

الحدث الأول : ماضى التام

Time connectors

يستخدم زمن الماضي التام مع الروابط الآتية :



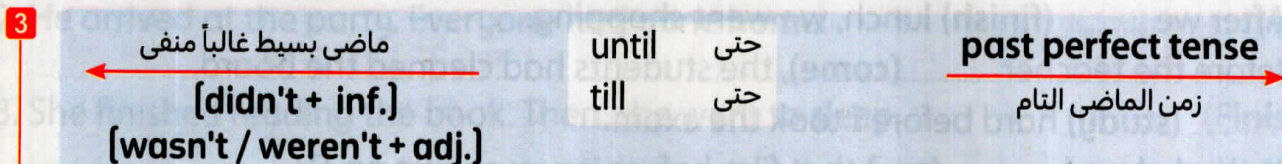
- ex.** - After he **had parked** his car, he **went** to work.
- He **had** breakfast **as soon as** he **had washed** his face.



- ex.** - Before he **arrived**, his uncle **had left** to Mansoura.
- He **had written** the letter to his uncle **by the time** he **visited** him.
- **When** we **arrived** at the station, the train **had left**.

لاحظ في حالة عدم وجود فاعل بعد **After / Before** نستخدم **(inf. + ing)** بعدهما

- ex.** - After **parking** his car, he went to work.
- Before **watching** TV, he had studied his lessons.



- ex.** - He **didn't watch** TV **until** he **had done** his homework.
- The car **wasn't sold** **till** he **had repaired** it.
- Sara and Manar **weren't happy** **until** their mother **had come**.

4

نتيجة

Past simple

because
asلأن
لأن

سبب

past perfect (had + p.p.)

- ex. - Ali was tired **because** he had worked hard.
- Nadia succeeded **as** she had studied hard.

5

سبب

Past perfect

so

that's why

لذلك

لهذا السبب

نتيجة

past simple

- ex. - Ali had worked hard **so** he was tired.
- Nadia had studied hard **that's why** she succeeded.



Exercises

on Language in use

1. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

► SB & AB Exercises

- After we (**reach**) the mountain village, it got completely dark.
- Before the train (**arrive**), we had booked our tickets.
- I (**meet**) him before he came to our school.
- Last week, my grandpa (**give**) me a present.
- Bassem watched TV after he (**do**) his homework.
- After we had eaten dinner, we (**go**) for a walk.
- (**After**) we arrived at the stop, the bus had left. We missed it.
- We had already (**visit**) five countries before we went to Italy.
- I found the book after (**look**) for it for two hours.
- She had (**forgot**) to bring her camera on the trip.

► El-Moasser Exercises

- After we (**finish**) lunch, we went shopping.
- Before the teacher (**come**), the students had cleaned the board.
- I (**study**) hard before I took the exam.
- We had already (**see**) that film before it was shown on TV.
- As soon as the bell (**ring**), the students left the class.
- After he (**wash**) the vegetables, he started cooking.
- By the time we (**arrive**) home, it had started to rain.

18. The children (**start**) playing football after they had reached the club.
19. As soon as she (**finish**) her homework, she called her friend.
20. Before we (**travel**) to Luxor, we had packed everything.
21. I (**don't**) met him before he came to our school.

2. Rewrite the following sentences:

► SB & AB Exercises

1. **SB** We arrived at the station. The train had already left. (After)
-
2. **SB** We visited Rome before we knew the best places to eat. (After)
-
3. **SB** First, she ate her breakfast, then she went to the park. (before)
-
4. **SB** He finished his homework and then he watched TV. (before)
-

► El-Moasser Exercises

5. We cleaned the house. Then, we watched a movie. (After)
-
6. The bell rang. The children ran out of the classroom. (As soon as)
-
7. I washed my hands. Then I ate my lunch. (Before)
-
8. He did his homework. Then he played football. (After)
-
9. The teacher entered the class. The students stood up. (As soon as)
-
10. **AB** First, he ate. Then, he went walking. (After)
-
11. We reached the airport. The plane had already taken off. (By the time)
-
12. He arrived at the party. Everyone had gone home. (When)
-
13. She finished reading the book. Then, she went to sleep. (Finishing)
-
14. The GPS stopped working an hour earlier than when we reached the village. (Before)
-
15. After he had had his lunch, he slept. (having)
-

Grammar in points

Past Tenses

تدرب على القاعدة اللغوية في شكل نقاط طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية
(أهم الأفكار التي وردت في كتاب الطالب والتقييمات)

1. Rewrite Notes

Sentence	Answer	Explanation
1. SB First, she ate her breakfast, then she went to the park. (before)	She had eaten her breakfast before she went to the park.	يستخدم before لربط حدثين في الماضي. بعد before يأتي الحدث الثاني في الماضي البسيط (she went)، والحدث الأول في الماضي التام (had eaten).
2. SB He had visited Rome before he knew the best places to eat. (after)	He knew the best places to eat after he had visited Rome.	نبدأ بجملة الماضي البسيط ونضع (after) ثم جملة الماضي التام.
3. AB After they had arrived, we finished. (when	We had finished when they arrived.	نستخدم when وبعدها جملة ماضى بسيط (الحدث الثاني).
4. AB By the time he phoned, I had worn my clothes. (After	After I had worn my clothes, he phoned.	نستخدم بعد After الماضي التام (had worn) وفي الجملة الأخرى الماضي البسيط (he phoned).

2. Correction Notes

Sentence	Correction	Explanation
1. AB Before she (comes), she had phoned.	came	أداة الربط Before يتبعها الحدث الذي وقع ثانياً (الماضي البسيط).
2. AB After Mohamed (has played), he went home.	had played	أداة الربط After يتبعها الحدث الذي وقع أولاً (الماضي التام).
3. AB Aisha (studies) as soon as she had had lunch.	studied	أداة الربط as soon as تربط الحدث الذي وقع أولاً (الماضي التام) بالحدث الذي وقع ثانياً (الماضي البسيط).
4. AB After (read) the story, he took a rest.	reading	عندما تأتي After بدون فاعل بعدها، يجب أن يتبعها (Gerund).
5. SB Last summer , I (plan) a perfect beach vacation in Hawaii.	planned	عبارة Last summer هي كلمة دالة على زمن الماضي البسيط لذا يتم تصريف الفعل (plan) إلى (planned).

General Exercises



On Lessons 1 & 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. **AB** The safari trip was a/an experience that I'll never forget.
a. forgettable b. unforgettable c. boring d. ordinary
2. are places where the dead are buried.
a. Columns b. Tombs c. Rivers d. Boxes
3. "Normal" and "....." have the same meaning.
a. ordinary b. unexpected c. unforgettable d. strange
4. We can get the adjective from the verb "prepare" by adding the suffix ".....".
a. -ation b. -ment c. -ed d. -or

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

challenging - unforgettable - together - breathtaking - unexpected

Last summer, my family and I went on a camping trip in the forest. The scenery was truly (1) full of tall green trees and singing birds. Setting up our tent was a bit (2), but we were excited. While we were enjoying our picnic, something (3) happened. A hungry monkey appeared and stole an apple! I tried to scare it but slipped, making everyone laugh. It was an (4) day we still talk about.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Last summer, my family planned a simple camping trip to Wadi El-Rayan in Fayoum, Egypt. We had booked a comfortable place and packed all the necessary things. However, our journey turned into an unforgettable adventure that we still talk about it today.

On the second day, we decided to take a challenging hiking trail to see a remote waterfall. The breathtaking scenery along the path was absolutely amazing - golden desert, hills, crystal-clear lakes, and rare plants and birds everywhere. We felt completely relaxed by watching it.

Suddenly, dark clouds gathered overhead, and heavy rain started pouring down. We had ignored the weather and weren't prepared for such conditions. Our lightweight jackets became very wet within minutes. The path became slippery and dangerous, so we took shelter under some large rocks.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. On the second day, they went

- a. shopping b. hiking c. swimming d. diving

2. The underlined word "**unforgettable**" means

- a. amazing b. boring c. nervous d. sad

3. The jackets became very wet because of

- a. heavy rain b. floods c. sandstorm d. lightning

b. Answer the following questions.

4. What is the main idea of the passage?

.....

5. What does the underlined pronoun "**it**" refer to?

.....

6. How did the family prepare for the trip?

.....

4 Rewrite the following sentences :

1. First, we had dinner, then we went for a walk.

(Before)

.....

2. Salma had washed the dishes before she slept.

(After)

.....

3. Ahmed visited his uncle three days ago.

(not)

.....

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Bassem watched TV after he (do) his homework.

2. **AB** By the time Sama (phones), I had gone out.

3. Before the train (arrive), we had booked our tickets.

6 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"An unforgettable trip you have taken"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



SB Pages 79 & 80

Lesson

3

A Solo Ride Across Egypt

تنويه : الدرس الرابع القصة المقررة في نهاية الكتاب

I

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

solo (adj)	بمفرده / منفرد	landmark(n)	معلم بارز / مكان مشهور	determined (adj)	مصمم / عازم
memorable(adj)	لا يُنسى / مميز	landscape (n)	الطبيعة	motorcycle (n)	دراجة نارية
southward (adj), (adv)	باتجاه الجنوب	attractions (n)	عوامل جذب	exhausting (adj)	مرهق / متعب



Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

• Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

memorable – landmark – determined – motorcycle – car

1. She is very to achieve her dreams.
2. The Grand Egyptian Museum is a modern of Egypt.
3. It was a day that I will never forget.
4. He rode this to work every morning.

Lesson 3 SB Pages 79 & 80

crazy (adj)	متهور	ferry (n)	معدية / عبّارة	brilliant (adj)	رائع / لامع
prove (d)	يثبت	historic (adj)	تاريخي	sandstone (n)	حجر رملي
incredible (adj)	رائع - مذهش	travel journal (n)	مدونة السفرات	inner (adj)	داخلي
endless (adj)	غير منتهى / بلا نهاية	sights (n)	معالم / أماكن مشهورة	struggle (d)	بصارع / يكافح
stretch (ed) (v)	يمتد	desert valley (n)	وادي صحراوي		

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

got	lost	مفقود / ضل الطريق	face	problems	يواجه مشكلات
offer	attractions	يوفر عوامل جذب			

Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

الكلمة Word	المترادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym / Opposite
solo بمفرده	alone / single	together / group معًا
determined مصمم / عازم	resolved	uncertain / unsure غير واثق
struggle يصارع / يكافح	try hard	give up استسلم
exhausted مُرهق جدًا	very tired	energetic / lively مفعم بالنشاط
memorable لا يُنسى	unforgettable	forgettable قابل للنسيان
landmark معلم بارز	attraction	ordinary place مكان عادي
courage شجاعة	bravery	fear خوف

Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

الأمثلة Examples	الوظيفة Function	اللاحقة / البادئة Prefix / Suffix
determined مصمم/عازم	تكون الصفة من الفعل	-ed
memorable لا يُنسى	تكون الصفة من الاسم	-able
attraction عوامل جذب	تكون الاسم من الفعل	-tion
unforgettable لا يُنسى	يعطى عكس المعنى	un-
personal شخصي	تكون الصفة من الاسم	-al

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

المضارع Present	الماضي Past	التصريف الثالث P.P.
give up يستسلم	gave up	given up
ride يركب [دراجة]	rode	ridden
know يعرف	knew	known

II Skills

Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz

تدرب على ٩ من
قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع

Reading

• on Lesson 3 SB page 79

Three months ago, I set off the journey of a lifetime – a **solo**⁽¹⁾ motorcycle ride across Egypt from Cairo to Luxor. Many people thought I was crazy to try such a long trip alone, but I was **determined**⁽²⁾ to prove them wrong. The first week was absolutely **exhausting**⁽³⁾. I faced many problems, got lost several times, and **struggled**⁽⁴⁾ alone. In small towns along the Nile Valley, friendly people helped me fix my motorcycle, and suggested excellent street food places. Their kindness helped me not to give up. As I continued **southward**⁽⁵⁾ the landscape changed, green fields, then **endless** desert stretched on both sides of the road. Each governorate offered special attractions – from historic **landmarks**⁽⁶⁾ in Minya to amazing temples near Qena. I wrote down everything in my travel journal, including both the wonderful **sights**⁽⁷⁾ and my personal images. The most **memorable**⁽⁸⁾ moment happened near Luxor. While riding through a desert valley close to the mountains, I saw an **incredible sunset**⁽⁹⁾ that painted the sandstone cliffs in brilliant colors. In the end, I realized this journey had changed me forever. I had discovered **inner strength**⁽¹⁰⁾ I never knew I really had.



Choose
the correct
answer.

- Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context.

تخمين المعنى.

Learn

1. The synonym of the underlined word "**incredible**" is ".....".

a. silly b. ugly c. usual d. amazing

Practice

2. The underlined word "**endless**" can be replaced by

a. continuous b. limited c. short d. little

(1) منفرد (2) مصمم / عازم (3) مرهق (4) صارع / كافح (5) باتجاه الجنوب (6) معالم بارزه (7) أماكن سياحية (8) لاينسى / مميز (9) غروب (10) قوة داخلية



General Notes on Reading & Listening

• landmarks – sights

- * **landmarks** معالم مشهورة / رموز بارزة [يسهل تمييزها وله قيمة تاريخية وغالبًا ما تكون رموزًا لمدينة أو بلد]
 - ▶ The Eiffel Tower is one of Paris's most famous **landmarks**.
- * **sights** مشاهد سياحية / أماكن تستحق المشاهدة [قد تكون مشهورة أو غير مشهورة]
 - ▶ We visited many **sights** during our trip to Aswan.

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

Expressions التعبيرات	
the journey of a lifetime	رحلة العمر
set off a journey	انطلق / بدأ في رحلة
Prepositions حروف الجر	
across Egypt	عبر مصر
on both sides of	على جانبي
inner strength	القوة الداخلية
at the end of	في نهاية
toward the mountains	باتجاه الجبال



Exercise

on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

▶ Key vocabulary

- Nour was and never gave up when she faced a challenge.
 - a. lazy b. greedy c. determined d. silly
- The Pyramids are one of the most famous Egyptian
 - a. landmarks b. trademarks c. recipes d. roads
- He while climbing the mountain until he reached it safely.
 - a. painted b. struggled c. slept d. played
- Our trip to Luxor was really ; we will never forget it.
 - a. boring b. normal c. usual d. memorable

► SB & AB Exercises

Guessing the meaning

5. **SB** Three months ago, I set off the journey of a lifetime. The phrase "set off" here means
 a. finished b. forgot c. started d. ended
6. **SB** The first week was absolutely exhausting. "Exhausting" here means
 a. amazing b. comfortable c. tiring d. interesting

Collocations

7. **SB** Each governorate special attractions.
 a. plays b. sails c. offers d. sticks

Synonyms, Antonyms, Prefixes & Suffixes

8. **SB** The words "forgettable" and "memorable" are
 a. synonyms b. antonyms c. adverbs d. nouns
9. **SB** To form the adjective of the noun "person", we add the suffix ".....".
 a. -or b. -er c. -al d. -ment
10. **SB** When someone is very tired, he is
 a. healthy b. brave c. exhausted d. early

► El-Moasser Exercises

Guessing the meaning

11. I saw a/an sunset. I really enjoyed.
 a. silly b. boring c. incredible d. ancient
12. There were a lot of villages overlooking the Nile. "Overlooking" here means they are the Nile.
 a. away from b. along c. under d. far from
13. Can you an excellent street food place?
 a. suggest b. steal c. feed d. rock
14. He went on a solo trip to Aswan. "Solo" here means
 a. with friends b. together c. alone d. in a group
15. The Cairo Tower is one the most famous landmarks in Egypt. "Landmarks" here means tourists
 a. recipes b. attractions c. subjects d. toys

Collocations

16. He some problems during the journey, but he didn't give up.
 a. charged b. faced c. did d. taught

Synonyms, Antonyms, Prefixes & Suffixes

17. The opposite of "courage" is " ".
 a. kindness b. fear c. pride d. calmness
18. The prefix "un-" in the word "unforgettable" means " ".
 a. again b. before c. not d. much
19. The suffix "-ness" in kindness changes the adjective into a/an
 a. verb b. adjective c. noun d. adverb
20. The synonym of "attraction" is " ".
 a. landscape b. attractive place c. boring place d. landmark

احرص على اقتناء

كتاب EL-MOASSER

في اللغة الإنجليزية

املح ثقتك لمن يستحق



General Exercises



On Lesson 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I went on a trip to the Pyramids alone. The word "alone" means ".....".
a. puplic b. general c. sad d. solo
2. "Courage" and "fear" are
a. verbs b. adjectives c. synonyms d. antonyms
3. The suffix "-able" changes the word "memory" into a/an
a. verb b. adjective c. adverb d. verb
4. **AB** He inherited a large from his grandfather.
a. poverty b. wealth c. sadness d. failure

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

crazy - determined - struggled - landmarks - memorable

I set off a solo motorcycle ride from Cairo to Luxor. Many people thought I was (1), but I was determined, to prove them wrong. The first week was exhausting; I (2) alone and got lost several times. I visited many historic (3), in Minya. The most (4) moment was seeing the incredible sunset near Luxor.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Three months ago, I set off on the journey of a lifetime—a solo motorcycle ride across Egypt from Cairo to Luxor. Many people thought I was crazy to try such a long trip alone; but I was determined to prove them wrong. The first week was absolutely exhausting. I faced many problems and got lost several times. In small towns, friendly people helped me fix my motorcycle. Their kindness helped me not to give up. As I continued southward, the landscape changed from green fields to endless desert. The most memorable moment happened near Luxor when I saw an **incredible** sunset. In the end, I realized this journey had changed me. It made me discover inner strength I never knew I had.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The writer's journey was from
a. Minya to Qena b. Cairo to Luxor
c. A small town to the Nile d. Luxor to Cairo

2. The underlined word "incredible" is close in meaning to
 a. useless b. usual c. wonderful d. ordinary
3. The writer was helped by in small towns.
 a. other travelers b. police officers
 c. his family d. friendly people

b. Answer the following questions.

4. Give a suitable title for the passage.
-

5. What does the underlined pronoun "It" refer to ?
-

6. How do you think facing challenges can change us ?
-

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Last summer, I (plan) a perfect beach vacation to Sharm El-Sheikh.
 2. After I had (write) the lesson, I slept.
 3. Before (slept), I had finished my homework.

5 Complete the following dialogue :

Omar and Nader are talking about journeys.

Omar : Which type of journeys would you prefer ?

Nader: (1)

Omar : Solo adventures ! (2)

Nader: Because I think it would be challenging and help me discover my inner strength.

Omar : That's interesting. I'd prefer a family vacation.

Nader: (3)

Omar : Because I enjoy sharing memorable moments with my family.

Nader: (4) Family gathering is joyful.

Omar : (5)

Nader: I hope to go on a trip together, too.

6 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A journey you would like to take alone"

.....

.....



SB Pages 83 : 86

Lessons

5 & 6

► Let's Talk

► Writing a Travel Narrative

I

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

magical (adj)	ساحر / خلاب	monuments (n)	آثار / قطع أثرية	treasures (n)	كنوز
capture (d) (v)	يلتقط [بالكاميرا]	pharaohs (n)	الفراعنة	shot (n)	لقطة / صورة [بالكاميرا]
jealous (adj)	غير	glowing (adj)	متوهج / مشرق / لامع	powerful (adj)	قوى / فعّال



Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

• Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

treasures – capture – magical – open – glowing

1. The view of the sunset was absolutely
2. The museum has a lot of ancient
3. The jewels in the box were in the sunlight.
4. The photographer managed to some wonderful shots.

Lesson 5 ► SB Pages 83 & 84

guide (n)	مرشد	recommend (ed) (v)	يوصي بـ / يزكي	manage (d) (v)	يتمكن / يدير
interest (n)	اهتمام	experience (n)	تجربة حياتية / خبرة	tour (n)	جولة
boat ride (n)	جولة بالقارب	The Great Sphinx			أبو الهول العظيم

Lesson 6 ► SB Pages 85 & 86

sandcastle (n)	قلعة من الرمال	scene (n)	مشهد	transportation (n)	المواصلات
----------------	----------------	-----------	------	--------------------	-----------

Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

الكلمة Word	المرادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym / Opposite
incredible رائع / لا يُصدّق	amazing	ordinary / boring عادي / ممل
manage يدير / يسيطر	handle / control	fail / lose control يفشل / يفقد السيطرة
powerful قوي	strong	weak ضعيف
interest اهتمام	concern	disinterest عدم اهتمام
sudden مفاجئ	unexpected	expected متوقع
magical سحري / خلاب	wonderful	realistic واقعي

Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	أمثلة Examples
-ly	تكون الظرف من الصفة	absolutely تماماً
-ing	تكون الصفة من الفعل	exciting مثير/رائع
-ed	تكون الصفة من الفعل	amazed مندهش
-ful	تكون الصفة من الاسم / الفعل	colorful ملون

أحرص على اقتناء

كتاب EL-MOASSER

في اللغة الإنجليزية

امنح ثقتك لمن يستحق



Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

on Lesson 5 SB page 83

1. Jake visited Egypt and found it an **incredible**⁽¹⁾ experience full of history.
2. He was amazed when seeing the Pyramids and the Great Sphinx.
3. He was excited when he saw the **monuments**⁽²⁾ thousands of years ago.
4. The guide explained how ancient Egyptians built the monuments thousands of years ago.
5. Jake managed to **capture**⁽³⁾ the Pyramids glowing in the sunset.
6. Jake took a boat ride on the Nile and visited the Egyptian Museum in Cairo.
7. He saw many ancient **treasures**⁽⁴⁾ and admired the Egyptian culture and pride.
8. The whole trip opened Jake's eyes to how proud Egyptians are of their culture.
9. Emma felt **jealous**⁽⁵⁾ and wanted to plan an adventure like his.

(3) يلتقط	(2) آثار	(1) رائع / مذهل
	(5) غيور	(4) كنوز

on Lesson 6 SB page 85

An Unforgettable Trip

1. It was a **wonderful**⁽¹⁾ family trip to Sharm El-Sheikh.
2. They went on desert safari, rode camels and watched the **sunset**⁽²⁾ in the desert.
3. They enjoyed **snorkeling**⁽³⁾ in the Red Sea and seeing colorful fish and **coral reefs**⁽⁴⁾.
4. The trip guide helped the writer **enjoy**⁽⁵⁾ the natural beauty of Egypt.
5. The writer will never forget that **experience**⁽⁶⁾.

(3) الغطس بأنبوبة تنفس	(2) الغروب	(1) رائع
(6) خبرة	(5) يستمتع	(4) شعاب مرجانية

تنويه: الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات إنشائية أخرى:

* An incredible experience

* A visit to the Egyptian Museum

* An unforgettable trip

II

Skills

للمريد من إثنان
المهارات اللغوية
كراسة المعاصر
للمهارات اللغوية

1. Reading and Listening



Reading

• on Lesson 5 SB page 83

Emma : Hey Jake! How was your trip to Egypt? I want to hear everything!

Jake : Oh wow, it was absolutely incredible! I had never seen so much history in one place before.

Emma : Really? What was the most exciting part?

Jake : Well, on the third day, we were exploring the Pyramids when we suddenly saw the Great Sphinx right in front of us. It was breathtaking!

Emma : No way! Were you amazed?

Jake : Totally! Our guide explained how ancient Egyptians built these monuments thousands of years ago. I couldn't believe they are still standing

Emma : That sounds amazing! Did you get any photos?

Jake : I tried to, but there were so many tourists. Still, I managed to capture the pyramids glowing in the sunset.

Emma : That's such a cool experience! What else did you do?

Jake : We took a boat ride on the Nile and visited the Egyptian Museum in Cairo. I had never seen so many ancient treasures in one place! The whole trip opened my eyes to how proud Egyptians are of their culture.

Emma : I'm so jealous! I really need to plan an adventure like that.

• on Lesson 6 SB page 85

An Unforgettable Trip

Last summer, I traveled with my family to Sharm El-Sheikh. It was a wonderful holiday that I had always dreamed of. On the first day, we went snorkeling in the Red Sea. The colorful fish and coral reefs were really wonderful, and I felt amazed by the beauty under the water. The next day we joined a desert safari. Riding camels and watching the sunset in the desert was magical. We met tourists from different countries. We shared travel stories and became new friends.

This trip opened my eyes to the natural beauty of Egypt. I will never forget that experience.



General Notes on Reading & Listening

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

Expressions التعبيرات	
I want to hear everything ! أود سماع كل شيء!	It opened my eyes to جعلني ادرك
I was thrilled ! كنت منبهزًا / شديد الحماس!	No way ! مستحيل! [للتعجب]
I was terrified ! كنت خائفًا!	Tell me more ! أخبرني أكثر!
Prepositions حروف الجر	
in front of في مواجهة / أمام	all of a sudden فجأة
manage to + (inf.) ينجح في / يتمكن من	dream of يحلم بـ
amazed by مذهش بـ / منهبر بـ	glowing in the sunset يتوهج عند الغروب

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

- The scientist wants to a new planet in space.
a. invent b. explore c. expand d. expect
- The moon was brightly in the dark sky.
a. crying b. growing c. smiling d. glowing
- AB** Don't be of others; work hard for your own success.
a. jealous b. kind c. happy d. good
- The photographer tried to the bird before it flew away.
a. call b. fail c. meet d. capture
- Egypt is famous for its ancient , like the Pyramids and Great Sphinx.
a. mobiles b. rivers c. population d. monuments
- Ancient kings hid their inside secret tombs.
a. treasures b. tablets c. towers d. tickets

SB & AB Exercises

Guessing the meaning

- SB** What was the most exciting part of your trip? The word "exciting" here means
a. boring b. old c. new d. interesting

8. **SB** I managed to capture the Pyramids glowing in the sunset. "Capture" here is similar in meaning to
 a. delete b. build c. photograph d. catch
9. **SB** This is an unforgettable trip. This means I won't it.
 a. remember b. remind c. write down d. forget

Collocations

10. **SB** I amazed by the beauty under the water.
 a. failed b. filled c. felt d. fed
11. **SB** We snorkeling in the Red Sea.
 a. went b. played c. fed d. chopped

Synonyms, Antonyms, Prefixes & Suffixes

12. **SB** The word "incredible" is the synonym of ".....".
 a. amazing b. ordinary c. strong d. sudden
13. **SB** He isn't powerful; he's too
 a. strong b. rich c. weak d. brave
14. **SB** The suffix "....." forms the adjective of the word "color".
 a. -er b. -al c. -ful d. -en

► El-Moasser Exercises**Guessing the meaning**

15. We met at the Pyramids and the guide explained their history.
 a. audience b. tourists c. workers d. fans
16. They saw fish with different colors. This means the fish were
 a. dull b. silly c. colorless d. colorful
17. I managed to solve the problem. "Managed to" here is similar in meaning to
 a. failed b. succeeded in c. stopped d. ignored

Collocations

18. We camels and watched the sunset.
 a. made b. sailed c. drove d. rode
19. They a boat ride on the Nile.
 a. took b. built c. drew d. played

Synonyms, Antonyms, Prefixes & Suffixes

20. The word "manage" is the opposite of ".....".
 a. handle b. control c. fail d. lead

2. Speaking Skill

مهارة التحدث

Talking about a trip

Questions ?

1. How was your tour to Luxor and Aswan?

كيف كانت رحلتك إلى الأقصر وأسوان؟

2. What was the most exciting part?

ما كان الجزء الأكثر إثارة؟

3. How did you feel when you saw them?

كيف شعرت عندما رأيتهما؟

4. What else did you do?

ماذا فعلت أيضاً؟

5. Did you take any photos?

هل التقطت أي صور؟

Answers ✓

- It was absolutely unforgettable! I had never seen such amazing temples.

كانت لا تُنسى حقاً! لم أر من قبل معابد مذهلة كهذه.

- The most exciting part was visiting the Valley of the Kings. I was amazed by the ancient tombs.

الجزء الأكثر إثارة كان زيارة وادي الملوك. لقد أعجبت بالقبور القديمة.

- I was thrilled and amazed. It opened my eyes to how powerful the pharaohs were.

شعرت بالحماس والدهشة. لقد جعلتني أدرك مدى قوة الفراعنة.

- We took a boat trip on the Nile in Aswan. The sunset was breathtaking.

قمنا برحلة بالقارب في النيل بأسوان. كان غروب الشمس رائعاً للغاية.

- Yes, I took a few. There were many tourists, but I managed to capture some beautiful shots.

نعم، التقطت بعض الصور. كان هناك الكثير من السائحين، لكنني تمكنت من التقاط لقطات جميلة.



Pop Quiz on Speaking Skill

Complete the following dialogue :

Mazen and Asser are talking about Mazen's trip.

Asser : How was your trip to Sharm El-Sheikh and Dahab.

Mazen : (1) I enjoyed the beautiful beaches and the clear blue water.

Asser : (2) ?

Mazen : The most exciting part was snorkeling in the Red Sea.

Asser : (3) ?

Mazen : I saw a lot of colorful fish and amazing coral reefs underwater.

Asser : What did you do in Dahab ?

Mazen : (4)

Asser : Safari, wonderful ? Did you enjoy it ?

Mazen : (5) It really was an unforgettable trip.

3. Writing Skill

مهارة الكتابة

► Writing a travel narrative

كتابة سرد قصصي عن رحلة

► A travel narrative is a short story about a trip or a journey.

◀ السرد القصصي عن رحلة هو قصة قصيرة عن رحلة قصيرة او رحلة طويلة.

A travel narrative includes : السرد القصصي عن رحلة يشمل :

Introduction
مقدمة

Setting the scene
تحديد المشهد

Main Events
الأحداث الرئيسية

Conclusion
الخاتمة

- **Introduction :** Say when and where you traveled. المقدمة : اذكر متى وإلى أين سافرت.
- **Setting the scene :** Describe the place (what you saw, heard, and felt). تحديد المشهد : صف المكان [ماذا رأيت، سمعت وشعرت].
- **Main Events :** Write the activities and use past tense verbs. الأحداث الرئيسية : اكتب الأنشطة التي قمت بها واستخدم زمن الماضي.
- **Conclusion :** الخاتمة :
 - Summarize your experience. لخص تجربتك.
 - Say why the trip was special. اذكر لماذا كانت الرحلة مميزة.



Pop Quiz on Writing Skill

Now write your own short travel narrative of (100 – 110) words.

General Exercises



On Lessons 5 & 6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. It was a very view from the top, but it was worth the hike.
a. slippery b. challenging c. breathtaking d. forgettable
2. It was an incredible trip. The word "incredible" is the antonym of " ".
a. boring b. amazing c. weak d. wonderful
3. To form the adjective from the verb "excite", we add the suffix " ".
a. -er b. -ment c. -ness d. -ing
4. When it rained heavily, I was terrified ! The word "terrified" here means "I was ".
a. calm b. relaxed c. scared d. brave

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

treasures - monuments - adventure - visiting - plan

My trip to Egypt was an incredible adventure. I had never seen so much history. The most exciting part was (1) the Pyramids and seeing the Great Sphinx. It was breathtaking! Our guide explained how ancient Egyptians built these great (2) thousands of years ago. The whole (3) opened my eyes to how proud Egyptians are of their culture. I really need to (4) another journey like that.

3 Rewrite the following sentences :

1. **AB** By the time he phoned, I had worn my clothes. (After)
.....
2. After we had watched the movie, we went to bed. (before)
.....
3. First, I had a shower. Then, I had lunch. (By the time)
.....

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. She called a taxi after she (finish) packing.
2. By the time we reached the airport, the plane (take) off.
3. We (visit) Rome before we traveled to London.

5 Complete the following dialogue :

Hassan and Mohamed are talking about last week.

Hassan : What did you do last week?

Mohamed : (1)

Hassan : (2) ?

Mohamed : I went to the fair with my family.

Hassan : (3) ?

Mohamed : We played and spent a nice time.

Hassan : Next time I will go with you.

Mohamed : (4) When do you want to go there ?

Hassan : (5)

6 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A special trip to a historical place"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Vocabulary	Language	Speaking
Lessons 1 & 2 camping trip رحلة تخييم hiking التنزه سيرًا في الطبيعة unforgettable لا يُنسى adventure مغامرة shelter مأوى slippery زلق breathtaking ساحر/خلاب challenging مليئة بالتحديات camping trip رحلة تخييم	Past Simple Tense Subj. + التصريف الثاني للفعل - He played football yesterday. - I ate ice cream last night. - We didn't visit the museum last week. - Did you visit the Pyramids last week ? - Where did you spend your last holiday ? Past Perfect Tense Subj. + [had / hadn't] + p.p. - I had done my homework before I watched TV. - We didn't go out until we had finished the housework. - After he had reached the train station, he realized that he was late. - We got lost because we hadn't taken a map.	Talking about an unforgettable trip A: How was your trip to Luxor and Aswan ? B: It was absolutely amazing. A: What was the most exciting part of the trip ? B: It was the visit of the Valley of the Kings. I was amazed by the ancient tombs. A: Did you take photos ? B: Yes, I took a few. There were many tourists but I managed to capture some beautiful shots.
Lesson 3 lifetime مدى الحياة crazy متهور determined عازم exhausting مُرهق struggle يكافح landmarks معالم		
Lessons 5 & 6 incredible رائع Great Sphinx ابو الهول العظيم amazed مندهش glowing يتلأأ monuments آثار		

Skills

1

Reading
ComprehensionGuessing the meaning
of vocabulary in context

؟ **تختبر** أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية في النص.

◀ اقرأ و قم بالإجابة.

▶ Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Last summer, I traveled with my family to Sharm El-Sheikh. It was a wonderful holiday that I had always dreamed of. On the first day, we went snorkeling in the Red Sea. The colorful fish and coral reefs were really wonderful, and I felt amazed by the beauty under the water. The next day we joined a desert safari. Riding camels and watching the sunset in the desert was magical. We met tourists from different countries. We shared travel stories and became new friends. This trip opened my eyes to the natural beauty of Egypt. I will never forget that experience.

1. The underlined word "magical" can be the opposite of ".....".
a. ordinary b. marvelous c. good d. wonderful
2. The underlined word "amazed" can be replaced by
a. scared b. surprised c. bored d. afraid

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة في تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية في النص.

مفتاح الحل عند قراءة الفقرة تجد أنه يمكن تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية في النص.

2

Speaking

Unforgettable tour

؟ **يختبر** سؤال المحادثة (dialogue) قدراتك للتعبير عن مواقف معينة.

◀ اقرأ و قم بالإجابة.

▶ Complete the following dialogue :

Maha and Walaa are talking about Abu Simbel Temple.

Maha : Hey Walaa! How was your tour to Abu Simbel Temples?

Walaa : (1) ! I had never seen such amazing temples.

Maha : That sounds amazing ! (2) ?

Walaa : The most exciting part was watching the huge statues. I was amazed to watch the Sun Festival.

Maha : No way! How did you feel when you saw them?

Walaa : (3) It opened my eyes to how powerful the pharaohs were.

Maha : (4)

Walaa : Ok! I'll tell you more. During the festival, the sun lights up the inner of the temple.

Maha : Wonderful ! (5) ?

Walaa : Yes, I took a few shots.

التحدى تريد السؤال عن [زيارة إلى معبد أبو سمبل] وتجد صعوبة في تكوين أسئلة والرد عليها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من الأسئلة والردود عن الموضوع.

Test on unit 11

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. When something is very beautiful, impressive, or surprising, it's
a. slippery b. breathtaking c. unexpected d. hard
2. The suffix "....." changes the word "memory" into an adjective.
a. -er b. -or c. -ing d. -able
3. **AB** Museums provide a/an experience for students.
a. educational b. boring c. useless d. unnecessary
4. The word "incredible" is the antonym of ".....".
a. unremarkable b. amazing c. wonderful d. exciting

The Answers :

1. 2. 3. 4.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

lightweight - heavy - booked - unforgettable - storm

Last summer, my family planned a simple trip to Wadi El-Rayan in Fayoum. We had (1) a comfortable place and packed all necessary things. Our journey turned into (2) adventure that we still talk about today. Suddenly, dark clouds gathered and (3) rain started pouring down. Our (4) jackets became very wet. We took shelter under some large rocks. We had met another family who had been caught in the same situation. We had made new lifelong friends.

• The Answers :

1. 2. 3. 4.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Three months ago, I set off on the journey of a lifetime—a solo motorcycle ride across Egypt from Cairo to Luxor. Many people thought I was crazy, but I was determined. The first week was **exhausting**. I faced many problems, got lost, and struggled alone. In small towns along the Nile Valley, friendly people helped me fix my motorcycle and suggested excellent street food places. Their kindness helped me not to give up. As I continued southward, the landscape changed. Each governorate offered special attractions, from historic landmarks in Minya to temples near Qena. The most memorable moment was an incredible sunset near Luxor. I realized this journey had changed me forever, I had discovered inner strength I never knew I had.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- What is the text mainly about?
 a. The best street food in Egypt. b. A solo journey across Egypt.
 c. How to fix a motorcycle. d. The landmarks in Cairo.
- The underlined word "**exhausting**" is closest in meaning to very
 a. tiring b. exciting c. crazy d. friendly
- What helped the writer not to give up?
 a. The excellent street food. b. The historic landmarks.
 c. The kindness of friendly people. d. The incredible sunset.

b. Answer the following questions.

- Why did people think the writer was "crazy"?

- How did the landscape change as the writer traveled southward?

- What do you think the writer discovered about himself at the end of the journey?

The Answers :

- a. 1. 2. 3.
 b. 4. 5. 6.

4 Story :

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Captain Nemo kept his past
 a. hidden b. open c. written d. clear
- Aronnax saw Nemo as both brave and
 a. friendly b. loyal c. mysterious d. hesitant
- Who argued that Nemo had no right to keep them as prisoners?
 a. Aronnax b. Conseil c. Ned Land d. The crew
- Aronnax realized the captain saw himself as part of the world beneath the waves.
 a. living b. dead c. scientific d. free

b. Answer the following questions :

- Why was Aronnax "torn" and hesitant to escape with Ned Land?

- What did Nemo guide the submarine through that made Aronnax realize the captain's sorrow?

The Answers :

- a. 1. 2. 3. 4.
 b. 1. 2.

5 Rewrite the following sentences :

1. We arrived at the station. The train had already left. (By the time)

2. I washed the car and drove to the airport. (After)

3. I didn't enjoy the film. I saw it before. (because)

The Answers :

1. 2. 3.

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I (never see) such beautiful mountains before I visited Sinai.

2. **AB** After (read) the story, he took a rest.

3. When I phoned last night, (have) you already gone to bed ?

The Answers :

1. 2. 3.

7 Complete the following dialogue :

Eyad and Mohamed are talking about a visit to Alexandria.

Eyad : I'm thinking of going to Alexandria. (1) ?

Mohamed : You should definitely visit the library and the citadel.

Eyad : (2) ?

Mohamed : Yes, I went last year. It was amazing.

Eyad : What's the most important thing to pack?

Mohamed : (3)

Eyad : You're right, I'll pack my digital camera. What about the food?

Mohamed : (4)

Eyad : Seafood ! I really like it, thanks!

Mohamed : (5)

The Answers :

1. 2. 3.
4. 5.

8 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Visiting a landmark in Egypt"

.....
.....
.....

Test on unit 11

for Al-Azhar students

اختبار لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1. Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Ayman asks Ashraf about his last holiday.

Ayman: Where did you spend your last holiday?

Ashraf : (1)

Ayman: Who did you go to Aswan with?

Ashraf : (2)

Ayman: (3) ?

Ashraf : We went by plane.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. is warm and friendly treatment to guests and visitors.

- | | |
|------------|----------------|
| a. Truth | b. Hospitality |
| c. Honesty | d. Journey |

2. Nora was to finish her project on time so she worked hard.

- | | |
|-----------|---------------|
| a. boring | b. determined |
| c. famous | d. memorable |

3. After my homework, I played computer games.

- | | | | |
|-------------|-------|--------|----------|
| a. had done | b. do | c. did | d. doing |
|-------------|-------|--------|----------|

4. Before the email, I had checked it carefully.

- | | |
|-------------|--------------|
| a. sending | b. sends |
| c. had sent | d. have sent |

3. Read and complete the text :

proud – adventures – reach – miss - solo

Sometimes people take a small adventure. These

(1) help them to learn about themselves.

They may travel (2) and face new

challenges alone. On the journey, they set a goal to

(3) , like climbing a hill or finishing a long

walk. When they achieve it, they feel (4) , strong, and ready for the next adventure.

4. Rewrite the following sentences:

1. Hassan played a football match, then he had a shower. (After)

2. They never visited Luxor last year. (not)

3. I slept after I had written my lessons. (until)

4. After I had taken the keys, I went to the club. (Before)

5. Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Modern technology is very important. It has a lot of forms like computers, laptops, tablets and the internet. Technology makes our life easy. We can't stop using it, but we should use it in a good way. To stay safe online, you should follow some important instructions. First, keep your password secret. You shouldn't tell people your personal information (e.g. telephone number). Don't make friends with people you don't know online. Don't send photos to people you don't know. You shouldn't answer a phone call or video call from someone you don't know. If you are in trouble, tell a parent or a teacher.

a. Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title to the text.

2. What should you do when you are in trouble online?

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. You should keep your secret.

- | | |
|-------------|-------------|
| a. text | b. glasses |
| c. password | d. postcard |

4. Your telephone number is information.

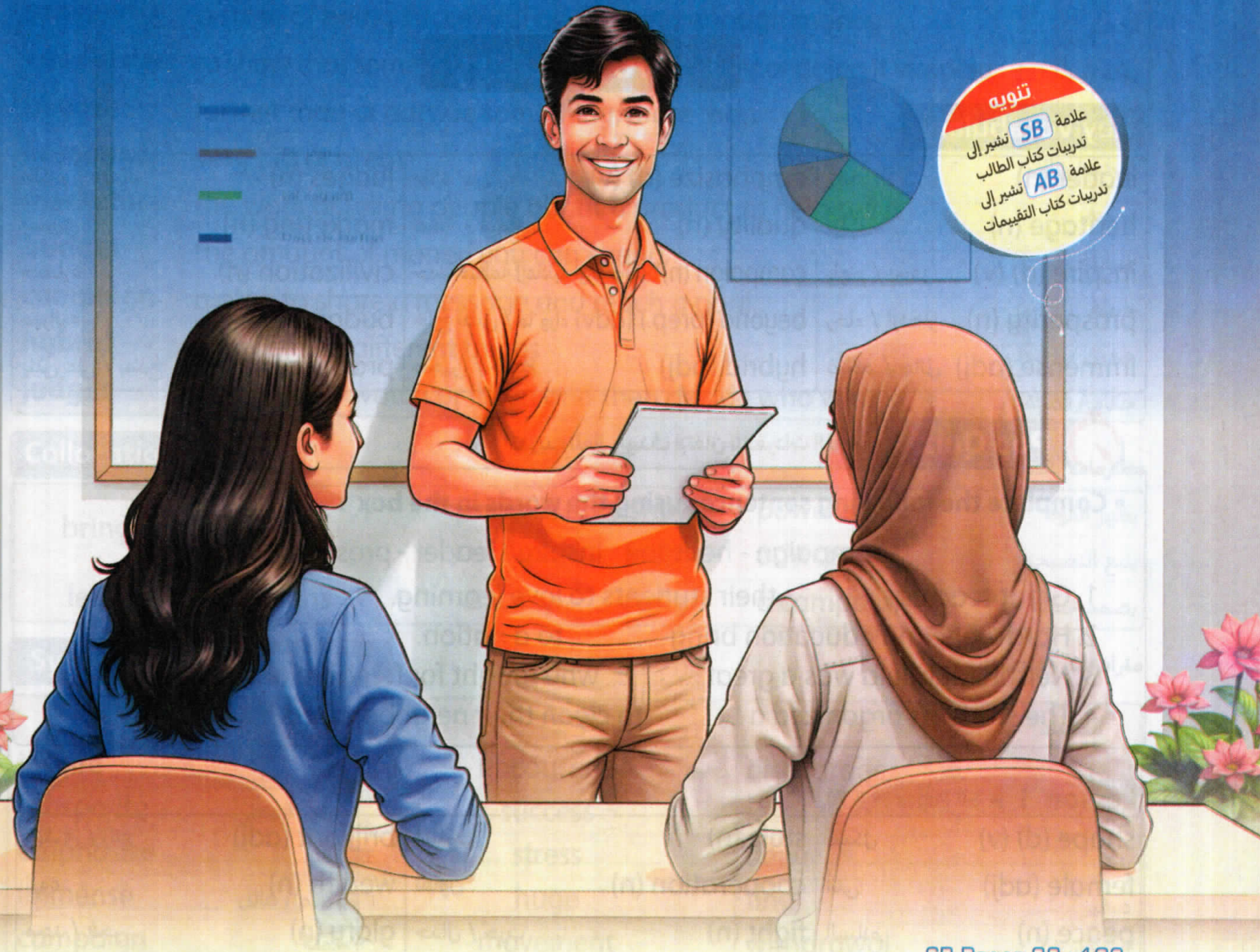
- | | | | |
|------------|-------------|------------|--------|
| a. general | b. personal | c. useless | d. bad |
|------------|-------------|------------|--------|

6. Write a short paragraph of SIX (6) sentences on:

"A visit to the zoo"

Unit TWELVE

Leadership and Teamwork



SB Pages 88 : 102

Learning outcomes :

• Reading

- list the key traits of an effective Egyptian leader
- identify synonyms for at least four key words related to leadership and teamwork.

• Listening

- identify the gist of stories about leadership and teamwork.
- recognize specific details of stories about leadership and teamwork.

• Speaking :

- discuss leadership styles in a debate format.

• Language :

- accurately transform direct orders and commands into reported speech

• Writing

- write a short text about your personal leadership goal.



SB Pages 89 : 93

Lessons

1 & 2

► Egyptian Leaders in History
► Teamwork Stories

I

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

leader (n)	قائد	emphasize (d) (v)	يؤكد على	judges (n)	حُكَّام / قضاة
heritage (n)	تراث	quality (n)	صفة - سمة	marketing (n)	تسويق
inspire (d) (v)	يلهم / يحفز	campaign (n)	حملة منظمة [إعلانية أو توعوية]	civilization (n)	حضارة
prosperity (n)	رخاء / ازدهار	beyond (prep.) (adv)	خارج نطاق / ما وراء	budget(n)	ميزانية
immense (adj)	ضخم / هائل	hybrid (adj)	هجين / خليط	praise (d) (v)	يثنى على / يمدح



Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

• Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

campaign - heritage - inspire - leader - prosperity

1. Great teachers their students to love learning.
2. Hard work and education bring to a nation.
3. Nelson Mandela was a great who fought for freedom and justice.
4. The students organized a to clean their neighborhood.

Lesson 1 ► SB Pages 89 & 90

shape (d) (v)	يُشكل	style (n)	أسلوب	brilliant (adj)	عبقري / رائع
female (adj)	أنثى	cooperation (n)	تعاون	wealth (n)	ثروة
peace (n)	السلام	fight (n)	جدال / حرب	glory (n)	مجد / فخر
concentrate (d) (v)	يركز	trade (d) (v), (n)	يتاجر - تجارة	trading routes (n)	طرق التجارة

Lesson 2 ► SB Pages 91 & 93

solar-powered (adj)	يعمل بالطاقة الشمسية	generate (d) (v)	يولد - ينتج	instruct (ed) (v)	يعطي تعليمات
		customers (n)	عملاء	updates (n)	تحديثات
water pump (n)	مضخة مياه	product (n)	منتج	pressure (n)	ضغط
mechanics (n)	علم الميكانيكا				

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

heritage	the history, traditions, and culture of a country or family	تراث
inspire	to make someone feel interested or want to do something good	يُلهم
prosperity	a state of being successful and having enough money	ازدهار
emphasize	to show that something is important by saying or doing it strongly	يؤكد / يَشدد على
beyond	farther than or outside something; more than	ما وراء / أبعد من
immense	very big or great	ضخم / هائل
marketing	the work of telling people about a product to help sell it	تسويق
budget	the amount of money you can spend	ميزانية
campaign	a plan to share a message and reach a goal	حملة
hybrid	a mix of two different things	هجين / خليط
judges	people who watch or listen and then decide who wins	حكام / قضاة

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

bring	peace	يجلب السلام	show	power	يظهر القوة
	prosperity	يجلب الازدهار	follow	advice	يتبع النصيحة
lead	campaigns	يقود حملات	design	a campaign	يصمم حملة

Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym /Opposite المضاد
inspire يُلهم	encourage	discourage يُحبط
prosperity رخاء / ازدهار	success	loss خسارة
emphasize يؤكد	stress	deny ينكر
immense ضخم / هائل	huge	tiny صغير
campaign حملة	movement	withdrawal انسحاب
hybrid مزيج - هجين	mixture	pure نقي

Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix بادئة / ناهية	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
-ity	تكون الاسم من الفعل	prosperity ازدهار
-able	تكون الصفة من الفعل	renewable متجدد
-ure	تكون الاسم من الفعل	pressure ضغط - جهد



Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

on Lesson 1 SB page 89

1. Egypt produced many great leaders who shaped its great **civilization**⁽¹⁾.
2. Queen Hatshepsut was a successful female pharaoh who focused on building and **trade**⁽²⁾.
3. She ruled Egypt wisely for twenty-two years and brought peace and **prosperity**⁽³⁾.
4. Pharaoh Thutmose III was a strong **military**⁽⁴⁾ leader who led many successful **campaigns**⁽⁵⁾.
5. Ramses II brought **immense**⁽⁶⁾ wealth and power to the country.
6. All these leaders showed the power and beauty of ancient Egypt's great civilization.

(1) حضارة (2) تجارة (3) رخاء (4) عسكري (5) حملات (6) هائل

on Lesson 2 SB page 91

Story - School Project Success

1. Dina's team won a national competition with a renewable - energy project.
2. They worked on a **solar - powered**⁽¹⁾ water pump for villages in Upper Egypt.
3. They faced problems at first, but they didn't give up.
4. The **judges**⁽²⁾ praised their creativity.

Story 2 - Workplace Challenge

1. Hassan's company was losing **customers**⁽³⁾.
2. The team had only six weeks to design a campaign for Egyptian cotton products.
3. They worked under great pressure.
4. They shared updates daily and finished two weeks early.
5. The campaign was a huge **success**⁽⁴⁾, and sales increased by 35%.

(1) تعمل بالطاقة الشمسية (2) حكام (3) عملاء (4) نجاح

تنويه : الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات إنشائية أخرى:

* Great leaders in Ancient Egypt

* Teamwork leads to success

1. Reading and Listening



Reading

• on Lesson 1 SB page 89

Great Leaders of Ancient Egypt

Egypt has **produced**⁽¹⁾ some of history's most amazing **leaders**⁽²⁾ who shaped one of the world's greatest **civilizations**⁽³⁾. They left **heritage**⁽⁴⁾ that continues to inspire people today.

Queen Hatshepsut was one of the most successful female pharaohs in Egyptian history. She ruled Egypt for twenty-two years and brought peace and **prosperity**⁽⁵⁾ to the country. Hatshepsut concentrated on building projects and trade relationships, great temples and important



trading routes. Her **leadership**⁽⁶⁾ style **emphasized**⁽⁷⁾ cooperation rather than fight.

Pharaoh Thutmose III, was a brilliant military leader. He led many successful **campaigns**⁽⁸⁾ and brought **immense**⁽⁹⁾ wealth and power to the country. Beyond his military skills, Thutmose III also built monuments and temples that celebrated Egypt's **glory**⁽¹⁰⁾.

Ramesses II, known as Ramesses the Great, was famous for his **military achievements**⁽¹¹⁾ and great projects. During his sixty-seven-year rule, he built incredible monuments, including the famous Abu Simbel temples.

All these leaders are still remembered as great kings who showed the power and beauty of ancient Egypt's great civilization.

- Extracting information.

استخراج معلومات

Answer
the following
questions.

Learn

1. Can you name two famous pharaohs from Egyptian history?

- Yes, Thutmose III and Ramesses II.

Practice

2. Why was Thutmose III a great leader ?

(6) قيادة	(5) ازدهار - رخاء	(4) تراث	(3) حضارات	(2) قادة	(1) انتجت / أخرجت
(11) إنجازات عسكرية	(10) مجد	(9) ضم / هائل	(8) حملات	(7) أكدت على	



Listening

on Lesson 2 SB page 91

Story 1 - School Project Success

Hi, I'm Dina. Our science team from Cairo won the national competition with our **renewable energy**⁽¹⁾ project. For three months, we worked on a **solar-powered**⁽²⁾ **water pump**⁽³⁾ for villages in **Upper Egypt**⁽⁴⁾. At first, our design wasn't working well under the hot sun. Instead of **giving up**⁽⁵⁾, Mona, our team leader, encouraged us and ordered us to find a better way together. Sandra, who knew about electricity and **mechanics**⁽⁶⁾, reminded us to do more research. We followed her advice, met every day after school, and finally built a solar-wind hybrid system. The judges **praised our creativity**⁽⁷⁾ and advised us not to stop developing such ideas. In the end, we **proudly**⁽⁸⁾ won first place!

Story 2 - Workplace Challenge

Hi, I'm Hassan. I work in **marketing**⁽⁹⁾ in Alexandria. Last year, our company was losing **customers**⁽¹⁰⁾, and we had only six weeks to design a campaign for a new line of Egyptian cotton products. We had never worked under such **pressure**⁽¹¹⁾. At first, we had too many ideas and no clear direction. Then our manager stepped in. He ordered one group to focus on research, another team to work on the design, and a third team to prepare the budget. He also **instructed**⁽¹²⁾ everyone to **share updates**⁽¹³⁾ online every day. By following his plan, we finished two weeks early. The campaign was a **huge success**⁽¹⁴⁾, and **sales**⁽¹⁵⁾ increased by 35%!

(1) طاقة متجددة	(2) تعمل بالطاقة الشمسية	(3) مضخة مياه	(4) صعيد مصر	(5) الاستسلام
(6) علم الميكانيكا	(7) يثنى على إبداعنا	(8) بكل فخر	(9) تسويق	(10) عملاء
(11) ضغط / توتر	(12) يعطي تعليمات	(13) يشارك التحديثات	(14) نجاح ضخم	(15) مبيعات



General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 rule - role

* rule

بحكم / قاعدة

- ▶ Hatshepsut **ruled** Egypt for twenty two years.
- ▶ We must follow the school **rules**.

* role

دور / وظيفة

- ▶ The teacher's **role** is to guide the students.

2 other than - rather than

* other than

▶ No one can do this **other than** you.

* rather than

▶ I will stay home **rather than** go out today.

بخلاف / باستثناء

بدلاً من

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

Expressions التعبيرات			
rather than	بدلاً من / عوضاً عن	decision - making	اتخاذ القرار / صناعة القرار
work under pressure	يعمل تحت ضغط	do their best	يبدلون قصارى جهدهم
increase sales	يزيد المبيعات	solar-wind hybrid system	نظام يعمل بالطاقة الشمسية والرياح
emphasized cooperation	أكدت على التعاون		
Prepositions حروف الجر			
concentrate on / focus on	يركز على	born with special qualities	مولود بصفات خاصة
thanks to	بفضل / بسبب	instead of	بدلاً من
step in	يخطو للداخل - يدخل	give up	يستسلم

Exercise on Vocabulary

◉ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

► Key vocabulary

- Heroes often people to be more helpful.
a. leave b. inspire c. cross d. slow
- New projects can bring to the country.
a. danger b. pollution c. prosperity d. illness
- The coach the team for their teamwork.
a. warned b. praised c. fought d. failed
- Posters and advertisements are part of
a. marketing b. sleeping c. cooking d. traveling

► SB & AB Exercises

Definitions

5. **SB** is to make someone feel interested or want to do something good.
a. Inspire b. Discourage c. Fail d. Leave

6. **SB** means very big or great.
 a. Tiny b. Useless c. Immense d. Silly
7. **SB** is the history, traditions, and culture of a country or family.
 a. Heritage b. Pollution c. Failure d. Sadness
8. **SB** means farther than or outside something; more than.
 a. Near b. Close c. Beyond d. Funny

Guessing the meaning

9. **SB** Queen Hatshepsut was one of the most successful female pharaohs. The word "female" means a
 a. man b. friend c. woman d. king
10. **SB** Ramesses the Great was famous for his military achievements. The word "military" refers to
 a. tourism b. army c. sport d. education
11. **AB** The team has a problem with their solar-powered water pump. The word "solar" means coming from the
 a. sun b. moon c. water d. rock

Synonyms, Antonyms, Prefixes & Suffixes

12. **SB** The opposite of "inspire" is ".....".
 a. improve b. respect c. discourage d. develop
13. **SB** The word "prosperity" has a similar meaning to ".....".
 a. poverty b. success c. laziness d. sadness
14. **SB** The suffix "-ity" in prosperity forms a/an ".....".
 a. verb b. noun c. adjective d. adverb

► El-Moasser Exercises

Definitions

15. People who watch or listen and then decide who wins are called
 a. losers b. sellers c. customers d. judges
16. is a mix of two different things.
 a. Alone b. Solo c. Hybrid d. Strange
17. The amount of money you can spend is
 a. budget b. sailing c. bank d. fees
18. is the work of telling people about a product to help sell it.
 a. Swimming b. Drought c. Marketing d. Tourism

Guessing the meaning

19. The leader brought immense wealth and power to the country. The word "wealth" is related to
- a. money b. health c. crops d. farming
20. Decision - making can be improved through experience. The word "improved" means
- a. decreased b. developed c. bullied d. drawn

Collocations

21. Everyone hoped that the meeting would peace after the long conflict.
- a. wait b. fight c. shout d. bring
22. The ancient king built a huge temple to his power.
- a. show b. hide c. lose d. forget

Synonyms, Antonyms, Prefixes & Suffixes

23. The opposite of "emphasize" is ".....".
- a. repeat b. deny c. copy d. follow
24. The word "immense" is a synonym of ".....".
- a. narrow b. weak c. huge d. soft
25. The word "campaign" is similar to ".....".
- a. courage b. success c. movement d. withdrawal

2. Speaking Skill

مهارات التحدث

Leadership styles :

أساليب القيادة :

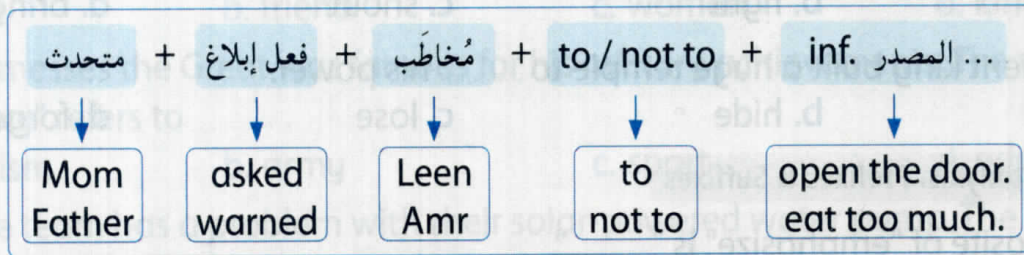
Question	Answers
1. What makes a good leader ? - ما الذي يجعل القائد جيدًا ؟	- A good leader is confident, fair, and inspires others to do their best. - القائد الجيد واثق، عادل، ويلهم الآخرين ليبذلوا أفضل ما لديهم.
2. Do you think leaders are born or made ? - هل تعتقد أن القادة يولدون أم يُصنعون ؟	- I think leaders can be made through practice and experience. - أعتقد أن القادة يمكن تكوينهم من خلال الممارسة والخبرة.
3. What skills are important for leadership ? - ما المهارات المهمة للقيادة ؟	- Communication, decision-making, and teamwork skills are very important. - مهارات التواصل واتخاذ القرار والعمل الجماعي مهمة جدًا.

III Language in use

Reported orders

جمل الأمر في الكلام الغير مباشر

- ١ تبدأ جملة الأمر المثبت في الكلام المباشر بالفعل في المصدر (inf.) :
- "Open the door, Leen", said mom. = Mom said, "Open the door, Leen".
- ٢ تبدأ جملة الأمر المنفي في الكلام المباشر بـ (Don't / Never + inf.) :
- "Don't / Never eat too many sweets, Amr", said father.
= Father said, "Don't / Never eat too much, Amr".
- ٣ تتكون جملة الأمر / النهي في الكلام غير المباشر من :



- ٤ يُستخدم فعل إبلاغ مناسب ويستخدم بعده المخاطب [اسم أو ضمير مفعول]:

ذكر - reminded - أمر - commanded - أمر - ordered - طلب - asked - أخبر / قال - told -
- اعطى تعليمات - instructed - شجّع - encouraged - نصح - advised - حذّر - warned -
..... المُخَاطَب obj. + تهدد - threatened - دعي - invited

- I told Sama to help her mother.
- Grandpa advised me to work hard at school.

- ٥ لا تُستخدم علامات التنصيص ["....."] في الأمر أو النهي في صيغة غير المباشر:

- "Never play with matches", said my mother. [مباشر]
- My mother warned me not to play with matches. [غير مباشر]

- ٦ تُستخدم (to + inf.) بمعنى [أن ...] في الإثبات:

- I told him to do more exercise.

- ٧ تُستخدم (not to + inf.) بمعنى [ألا ...] في النفي:

- The officer ordered the soldiers not to leave their places.

- ٨ تتحول الضمائر حسب المتكلم والمُخَاطَب.

- Amira said, "Lend me your camera, Ali". [مباشر]
- Amira asked Ali to lend her his camera. [غير مباشر]

- ٩ تتحول بعض ظروف الزمان والمكان.

- "Bring this book with you tomorrow", said Miss Mona. [مباشر]
- Miss Mona asked me to bring that book with me the following day. [غير مباشر]



1. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

► SB & AB Exercises

1. **SB** She commanded me (**stopping**) talking.
2. **SB** He ordered the soldiers (**stand**) at attention.
3. **SB** The teacher told the students (**handed**) in their assignments.
4. **SB** The doctor (**advise**) the patient to rest for a few days.
5. **SB** They requested us (**not**) use our phones during the meeting.

► El-Moasser Exercises

6. The manager (**said**) us to finish the report by 5 p.m.
7. The policeman ordered me to (**stopped**) right there.
8. The coach ordered the players (**run**) faster.
9. She told me (**don't**) talk during the meeting.
10. The teacher told me (**sitting**) down.
11. The officer ordered us not (**parking**) there.
12. The nurse told the patient (**take**) the medicine on time.
13. He requested me (**wait**) for him outside.
14. The guide advised the tourists (**wear**) hats in the sun.
15. Mother told the children (**go**) to bed early.

2. Rewrite the following sentences:

► SB & AB Exercises

1. **SB** The teacher said, "Close your books". (The teacher told us)
.....
2. **SB** My mother said, "Help your brother with his homework". (My mother asked me)
.....
3. **SB** The coach said to the players, "Do your best at the match". (ordered)
.....

4. **SB** Zainab said to me, "Take this medicine twice a day." (advised)

5. **SB** Our manager said, "Send the report by Monday". (told us)

► El-Moasser Exercises

6. The teacher told us to open our books. (said)

7. Mother said to Mona, "Wash the dishes". (ordered)

8. Mum said to me, "Clean your room". (told)

9. Dad said to me, "Finish your homework". (ordered)

10. The doctor said to me, "Take some rest". (advised)

11. The policeman said to the driver, "Stop the car". (ordered)

12. My friend said to me, "Help me with this project." (asked)

13. The teacher said to the students, "Don't talk in class." (told)

14. Mum said to us, "Don't play near the fire." (warned)

15. Fares said to his son, "Be careful." (told)

16. The guide said to them, "Follow me". (asked)

Grammar in points

تدرب على القاعدة اللغوية في شكل نقاط طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية
(أهم الأفكار التي وردت في كتاب الطالب والتقييمات)

Reported Orders

1. Rewrite Notes

Sentence	Answer	Explanation
1. SB The teacher said, "Close your books." (told)	The teacher told the students to close their books.	هذه جملة أمرية مثبتة. نستخدم (مفعول + told) ثم to + inf. يتم تحويل ضمير الملكية your إلى their .
2. SB My mother said, "Help your brother with his homework." (asked)	My mother asked me to help my brother with his homework.	في جملة طلب/أمر نستخدم (مفعول + asked) ثم to + inf. الضمير your يتحول إلى my .
3. AB Ziad said to Ibrahim, "Do your exercises." (advised)	Ziad advised Ibrahim to do his exercises.	في جملة النصيحة. نستخدم (مفعول + advised) ثم to + inf. تتحول your إلى his .
4. SB The teacher said, "Don't be late tomorrow." (told)	The teacher told the students not to be late the next day/the following day.	في الجملة الأمرية المنفية. نستخدم (مفعول + told) ثم not to + inf. tomorrow → the next day
5. AB My mother said, "Clean the room." (ordered)	My mother ordered me to clean the room.	في جملة الأمر. نستخدم to + inf. (مفعول + ordered).

2. Correction Notes

Sentence	Correction	Explanation
1. SB She asked me (stopping) talking.	to stop	الفعل asked (طلب) يتبع بالقاعدة: command + to + inf.
2. SB He ordered the soldiers..... (stand) at attention.	to stand	الفعل ordered (طلب/أمر) يتبع بنفس القاعدة: order + to + inf.
3. SB The teacher told the students (handed) in their assignments.	to hand	الفعل told (أخبر/طلب) يتبع أيضاً بنفس القاعدة: tell + to + inf.
4. SB The doctor (advise) the patient to rest for a few days.	advised	يُطلب تصريف الفعل advise [نصح] في زمن الماضي ليناسب سياق الجملة، وهو advised .
5. SB They requested us (not) use our phones during the meeting.	not to	عند النفي، يتم وضع not قبل to .

General Exercises



On Lessons 1 & 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A is a plan to share a message and reach a goal.
a. budget b. heritage c. campaign d. judge
2. **AB** The company announced a huge to clear out old stock.
a. sale b. purchase c. loan d. budget
3. Factories produce a lot of smoke and waste. The word "produce" here means
a. recycle b. take c. make d. shape
4. The antonym of the word "immense" is ".....".
a. tiny b. huge c. average d. amount

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

pressure – campaign – designer – success – plan

I work in marketing in Alexandria. Last year, our company was losing customers, and we had only six weeks to design a (1) for a new line of Egyptian cotton products. We had never worked under such (2) At first, we had too many ideas and no clear direction. Then our manager stepped in. By following his (3), we finished two weeks early. The campaign was a huge (4), and sales increased by 35%!

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Egypt has produced some of history's most amazing leaders who shaped one of the world's greatest civilizations. Queen Hatshepsut was one of the most successful female pharaohs. She ruled for twenty-two years and brought peace and prosperity to the country. Hatshepsut concentrated on building projects and trade relationships. Pharaoh Thutmose III was a brilliant military leader. He led many successful campaigns and brought immense wealth to the country. Ramesses II, known as Ramesses the Great, was famous for his military achievements and great projects, including the Abu Simbel temples. These leaders are remembered for showing the power and beauty of ancient Egypt.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Which leader focused on peace and trade?
a. Ramesses I b. Thutmose III
c. Queen Hatshepsut d. Ramesses II
2. The underlined word "immense" is close in meaning to ".....".
a. small b. great c. unsuccessful d. peaceful

- 
- their
 ievements
 onships

- 4

5

6

7

Lessons 1 & 2 233



SB Pages 94 & 95

Lesson

3

► Leadership Lessons

⚠ تنويه: الدرس الرابع القصة المقررة في نهاية الكتاب

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

qualities (n)	صفات / سمات	adjust (ed) (v)	يضبط / يعدل
effective (adj)	فعال / مؤثر	conflicts (n)	صراعات / نزاعات
empathy (n)	تعاطف	trust (ed) (v) , (n)	يثق / ثقة
guide (d) (v), (n)	يرشد / مرشد	motivated (adj)	متحمس / متحفز
adaptable (adj)	قابل للتكيف	modesty (n)	تواضع



Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

effective - Empathy - motivated - qualities - Guide

1. The students were very to finish their project on time.
2. Honesty and patience are important of a good person.
3. helps us understand other's feelings.
4. A good leader must be in solving problems.

Lesson 3 ► SB Pages 94 & 95

communicate (d)(v)	يتواصل	earn (ed) (v)	يكسب - يكتسب
viewpoints (n)	وجهات نظر	purpose (n)	غرض / سبب
peacefully (adv)	بهدوء / بسلام	willingness (n)	رغبة / استعداد
emotional intelligence (n)	الذكاء العاطفي	confidence (n)	ثقة بالنفس
respectful (adj)	يتسم بالاحترام	vision (n)	رؤية
admit (ted) (V)	يعترف	progress (n)	تقدم

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

build	trust	يبني ثقة	achieve	success	يحقق نجاح
	relationships	يكون علاقات		goals	يحقق أهداف
earn	respect	يحظى باحترام	set	goals	يضع أهداف

Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

الكلمة Word	المترادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym / Opposite
effective فعال	powerful/successful	useless عديم الفائدة
adapt يتأقلم / يتكيف	adjust	refuse يرفض
encourage يشجع	motivate/inspire	discourage يثبط
guide يوجه / يرشد	lead / direct	neglect يهمل
trust يثق	believe	doubt يشك / يشكبه
pride فخر / عزة	self / respect	modesty تواضع

Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

بادئة / نهاية Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	أمثلة Examples
-ive	تكون الصفة من الاسم	effective فعال / مؤثر
-ful	تكون الصفة من الاسم	respectful يتسم بالاحترام
-ly	تكون الظرف من الصفة	clearly بوضوح importantly بشكل هام
-y	تكون الاسم من الصفة	modesty تواضع honesty أمانة
-ence	تكون الاسم من الصفة	intelligence الذكاء confidence الثقة بالنفس
-able	تكون الصفة من الفعل	adaptable قابل للتكيف
-ness	تكون الاسم من الصفة	willingness استعداد
-ability	تكون الاسم من الصفة تعني القدرة على فعل شيء	adaptability التكيف / الملائمة

II Skills

Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz

تدرب على ٩ من
قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع



Reading

on Lesson 3 SB page 94

What Makes an Effective Leader?

Modern **leadership**⁽¹⁾ research shows that the most **effective**⁽²⁾ leaders share key qualities that help them inspire teams, solve problems, and achieve goals. These qualities are about how leaders connect with and guide others.



Great leaders communicate clearly and listen carefully. They understand others' feelings and viewpoints, which build trust and help solve **conflicts**⁽³⁾ peacefully. Emotional intelligence allows them to build respectful, strong team relationships. They also stay **adaptable**⁽⁴⁾, ready to adjust plans, welcome new ideas, and trust their teams.

Successful leaders also have **a clear vision**⁽⁵⁾. They **set goals**⁽⁶⁾, break them into steps, and celebrate progress to keep teams **motivated**⁽⁷⁾. Importantly, the best leaders never stop learning. They admit mistakes, ask for feedback, and work to improve. This **modesty**⁽⁸⁾ earns respect and encourages their teams to grow, too. Leadership isn't about having all the answers, but about guiding others with honesty, purpose, and a **willingness**⁽⁹⁾ to develop. In today's world, the most successful leaders are those who lead with both confidence and **empathy**⁽¹⁰⁾, supporting their teams to achieve shared success.

(5) رؤية واضحة	(4) قابل للتكيف	(3) نزاعات	(2) فعال	(1) قيادة
(10) تعاطف	(9) استعداد	(8) تواضع	(7) متحمس / متحفز	(6) يحدد أهداف



General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 effective - efficient

* **effective** (adj)

فقال [تستخدم لوصف شيء يحقق النتيجة المطلوبة أو ينجح في أحداث تأثير]

▶ The new medicine is very **effective**.

* **efficient** (adj)

كفاء - ذو كفاءة [تستخدم لوصف شخص يؤدي عمله بشكل جيد]

▶ She is an **efficient** worker who finishes her tasks quickly.

2 viewpoint - vision

* **viewpoint** (n) = point of view

وجهة نظر [رأي شخص حول موضوع معين]

▶ Everyone has a different **viewpoint** on this issue.

* **vision** (n)

رؤية / بصيرة [القدرة على التخطيط أو تخيل المستقبل]

▶ The leader had a clear **vision** for the future.

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

Expressions التعابير

share key qualities

يشارك الصفات الأساسية

stay adaptable

يبقى مرناً / قادراً على التكيف

have a clear vision

يملك رؤية واضحة

welcome new ideas

يرحب بالأفكار الجديدة

understand others' feelings

يفهم مشاعر الآخرين

keep teams motivated

يحفز الفرق باستمرار

solve conflicts peacefully

يحل النزاعات بطريقة سلمية

keep learning

يواصل التعلم

Prepositions حروف الجر

connect **with**

يتواصل مع

ask **for** feedback

يطلب ملاحظات / تغذية راجعة

ready **to**

مستعد لـ

listen **with** empathy

يستمع بتعاطف

break **into** steps

يقسم إلى خطوات

important **for**

هام لـ

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

- The new program was very because it improved students' grades.
a. empathy b. effective c. modesty d. motivated
- When you understand how others feel, you show
a. guide b. trust c. empathy d. conflict
- People feel more when someone praises their work.
a. conflict b. empathy c. motivated d. guide

SB & AB Exercises

Guessing the meaning

- SB** The most effective leaders share key qualities. The word "effective" here means ".....".
a. weak b. successful c. lazy d. old
- AB** They understand others' feelings and viewpoints. The word "viewpoints" here means ".....".
a. opinions b. nationalities c. hobbies d. meals
- SB** Emotional intelligence allows them to build respectful relationships. The word "allows" means ".....".
a. discourages b. decreases c. helps d. forgets

Collocations

- SB** Successful leaders goals and break them into steps.
a. set b. build c. make d. take
- SB** The most successful leaders support their teams to shared success.
a. encourage b. stay c. solve d. achieve

Synonyms, Antonyms, Prefixes & Suffixes

- SB** The word "effective" is closest in meaning to
a. weak b. successful c. lazy d. poor
- SB** The opposite of "encourage" is ".....".
a. inspire b. advise c. discourage d. suggest

11. **SB** The suffix "-ly" in "clearly" changes the adjective into a/an
a. adverb b. verb c. noun d. pronoun

► El-Moasser Exercises

Guessing the meaning

12. There are some key qualities to be a good leader. The word "key" here means ".....".
a. unimportant b. useless c. main d. tiny
13. You should try to achieve your goals. The word "achieve" is similar in meaning to ".....".
a. reach b. fail c. miss d. delete
14. They are clever, they never stop learning. "Stop" here means ".....".
a. continue b. go on c. celebrate d. give up
15. A good leader should motivate his team. The word "motivate" is similar in meaning to ".....".
a. encourage b. discourage c. forget d. fail

Collocations

16. He respect when he helped the old man.
a. lost b. earned c. missed d. failed
17. It takes time to trust with new people.
a. make b. pay c. build d. fill

Synonyms, Antonyms, Prefixes & Suffixes

18. The antonym of "modesty" is ".....".
a. respect b. trust c. pride d. belief
19. The synonym of the word "motivate" is ".....".
a. inspire b. refuse c. confuse d. delay
20. The opposite of "trust" is ".....".
a. sure b. doubt c. pride d. clarity

General Exercises



On Lesson 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A leader needs a clear to guide the team.
a. conflict b. modesty c. vision d. empathy
2. **AB** Electric cars often use a engine combining fuel and electricity.
a. hybrid b. single c. weak d. slow
3. "Guide" and "....." have the same meaning.
a. reflect b. direct c. affect d. adapt
4. The suffix "....." forms the adjective of the verb "adapt".
a. -ly b. -ive c. -ment d. -able

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

confident - goal - set - easier - share

Setting smart goals helps students improve their skills and stay organized. A smart (1) should be specific, measurable, achievable, relevant and time bound. Smart goals make the progress (2) When we (3) smart goals, we can build healthy habits and feel more (4) about our lifestyle choices.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Modern leadership research shows that the most effective leaders share key qualities. Great leaders communicate clearly and listen carefully. They understand others' feelings and viewpoints, which is called empathy. This builds trust and helps solve conflicts peacefully. Emotional intelligence allows them to build strong team relationships. They also stay adaptable, ready to adjust plans and welcome new ideas. Successful leaders also have a clear vision and set goals. Importantly, the best leaders never stop learning. They admit mistakes, ask for feedback, and work to improve. This modesty earns respect and encourages their teams to grow, too.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. According to the text, empathy helps leaders
a. set goals b. build trust and solve conflicts
c. adjust plans d. admit mistakes

2. The underlined word "modesty" is the antonym ".....".

- a. pride b. empathy c. vision d. trust
3. Leaders who are are ready to welcome new ideas.
- a. stylish b. old c. adaptable d. emotional

B. Answer the following questions :

4. What is the main idea of the text ?

5. What two things do the best leaders do to keep learning?

6. Why do you think it is important for a leader to listen carefully?

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. The teacher asked pupils (stopping) arguing and listen to each other.
2. Father told us (don't) waste our time.
3. My friend advised me (try) a new hobby.

5 Complete the following dialogue:

Hana and Radwa are discussing about a good leader's qualities.

Hana : Who do you think can be a leader in our group ?

Radwa: (1)

Hana : (2)

Radwa: Because Tahani has the qualities of a good leader.

Hana : (3)

Radwa: A good leader must be a good listener and have emotional intelligence.

Hana : Why do leaders need emotional intelligence ?

Radwa: (4) Building trust isn't easy !

Hana : Do you think leaders must admit mistakes ?

Radwa: (5) They should also ask for feedback.

6 Write a social media post of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on :

محتاج عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"What makes an effective leader ?"



SB Pages 99 : 101

Lessons

5 & 6

- ▶ Let's Talk
- ▶ Writing a short text

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

presentation (n)	عرض تقديمي	disagreement (n)	جدال / خلاف
role (n)	دور	complement (ed) (v) , (n)	يتمم - يكمل / تكملة
schedule (n)	جدول مواعيد ثابتة	semester (n)	فصل دراسي
deadline (n)	موعد نهائي	official (adj)	رسمي



Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

presentation - disagreement - deadline - complement - official

1. There was a small between Leen and Rokaya about the tablet.
2. Good friends each other in the teamwork.
3. Ahmed finished his project before the
4. Rodayna gave a wonderful about her favorite animal.

Lesson 5 ▶ SB Pages 99 & 100

detailed (adj)	مفصل	resolve (d) (v)	يحل [مشكلة / خلاف]
track (n)	مسار / تتبع	organizer (n)	منظم
coordinator (n)	منسق	smoothly (adv)	بسهولة
slides (n)	شرائح لعرض المعلومات	check-ins	متابعات أو اجتماعات دورية
handle (d) (v)	يتعامل مع / يتناول		

Lesson 6 ▶ SB Page 101

improve (d) (v)	يحسن	encourage (d) (v)	يشجع
face (d) (v)	يواجه	choices (n)	اختيارات

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

make	sure	يتأكد	play	a role	يلعب دور
	a difference	يحدث فارق	get	better	يتحسن
find	information	يجد معلومات			

Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

الكلمة Word	المترادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym / Opposite
main رئيسي / أساسي	major	minor ثانوي / غير هام
detailed مفصل	specific	simple بسيط
perfect كامل / مثالي	excellent	bad سيئ
disagreement خلاف / عدم اتفاق	conflict	agreement موافقة

Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	أمثلة Examples
-ed	تكون الصفة من الاسم	detailed مفصل
-ly	تكون الظرف من الصفة	naturally طبيعياً
-er	تكون الاسم من الفعل	supporter مؤيد / باحث
-ing	تكون الاسم من الفعل	planning تخطيط
-tion	تكون الاسم من الفعل	presentation عرض
dis-	تكون عكس المعنى	disagreement خلاف



Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

on Lesson 5 SB page 99

Discussing Team Roles

1. The students discuss organizing their group presentation and team roles.
2. Ramy chooses to be the main **researcher**⁽¹⁾.
3. Hazem offers to be the project **coordinator**⁽²⁾ as he is good at organizing **schedules**⁽³⁾ and keeping deadlines.
4. Maher is a creative person who enjoys preparing slides.
5. Ahmed prefers the role of team supporter, ensuring everyone's ideas are heard and disagreements are resolved.
6. Each member has different strengths, and successful teamwork means that everyone plays to those **strengths**⁽⁴⁾.

(1) باحث (2) منسق (3) جداول مواعيد ثابتة (4) نقاط قوة

on Lesson 6 SB page 101

My Leadership Goal

1. A student wants to become a better leader by improving communication **skills**⁽¹⁾.
2. The writer will focus on team **cooperation**⁽²⁾ and solve any **disagreement**⁽³⁾.
3. The writer wants to inspire others by encouraging them.
4. The writer will practice making **choices**⁽⁴⁾ that help the group.

(1) مهارات (2) تعاون (3) خلاف (4) اختيارات

تنويه: الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة بريد الكتروني أو فقرة إنشائية:

* Preparing a group presentation

* My leadership goal

1. Reading and Listening



Reading

للمزيد من إتقان
المهارات اللغوية
كراسة المعاصر
للمهارات اللغوية

on Lesson 5 SB page 99

Discussing Team Roles

Maher : We need to organize our group presentation for next week. What role does everyone want to take?

Ramy : I'd like to be the main **researcher**⁽¹⁾. I've been reading a lot about our topic, and I enjoy finding detailed information.

Hazem : That's perfect! I'm good at organizing schedules and keeping track of deadlines. I can be our project **coordinator**⁽²⁾.

Maher : Great! I think I work best as a creative person. I've been practicing with presentation **software**⁽³⁾, and I have some ideas for making our slides more interesting.

Ramy : What about you, Ahmed? You're always so good at helping people work together.

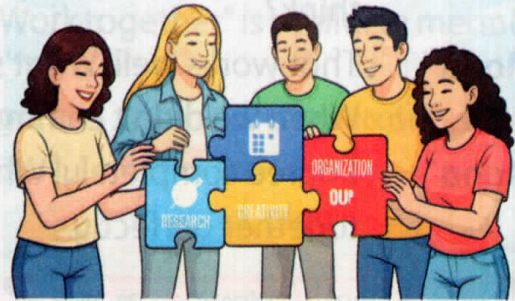
Ahmed : Thanks! I guess I'm naturally a team supporter. I like making sure everyone's ideas are heard and helping resolve any **disagreements**⁽⁴⁾.

Hazem : This is working out well. We all have different **strengths**⁽⁵⁾, and they **complement**⁽⁶⁾ each other perfectly.

Maher : Exactly! I've noticed that our best group projects happen when everyone plays to their strengths.

Ahmed : And we've been getting better at teamwork each semester. Practice really makes a difference.

Ramy : So, when should we have our first **official**⁽⁷⁾ planning meeting?



• on Lesson 5 SB page 100

Mona : Hey, Rodayna! What's your preferred role in group work? Why?

Rodayna : Hi Mona ! I'd like to be the organizer. I'm good at **keeping track**⁽¹⁾ of tasks and making sure everything runs **smoothly**⁽²⁾.

Mona : That sounds great! What makes a team successful?

Rodayna : A team is successful when everyone plays to their strengths. We complement each other and work well together.

Mona : I agree! How do you **handle**⁽³⁾ disagreements in teams?

Rodayna : I listen to everyone's views and suggest regular **check-ins**⁽⁴⁾. What do you think?

Mona : That works well! What's the worst team **experience**⁽⁵⁾ you've had?

Rodayna : When we didn't communicate well and some felt **left out**⁽⁶⁾?

Mona : I agree completely! When we communicate well, everything comes together perfectly.

(1) متابعة (2) بسهولة (3) يتعامل مع (4) فحوصات (5) تجربة (6) مستبعد / مهممل

• on Lesson 6 SB page 101

My Leadership Goal

I want to become a better leader. To do this, I will improve my communication skills by working with my team and listening to everyone's ideas. I will focus on team cooperation and help solve any problem we face together. I also want to inspire others by encouraging them to do their best. Decision making is important, so I will practice making choices that help the group. In the future, I hope to be a leader who helps others achieve their goals.



Exercise

on Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

► Key vocabulary

1. Karim used pictures and charts to make his clear and interesting.

a. presentation b. semester c. complemented d. disagreement

2. Omar's in the football team is to be the goalkeeper.

a. presentation b. role c. official d. schedule

16. Aya knows her strengths, like teamwork and quick thinking. "Strengths" mean ".....".
 a. mistakes b. weak points c. talents d. tools
17. The event went smoothly because everyone helped. The word "Smoothly" means ".....".
 a. easily b. loudly c. slowly d. badly

Collocations

18. As a researcher, I enjoy detailed information.
 a. losing b. stealing c. sailing d. finding
19. I agree that practice really a difference.
 a. plants b. makes c. stops d. flies

Synonyms, Antonyms, Prefixes & Suffixes

20. The prefix "dis-" in the word "disagreement" means ".....".
 a. not b. able c. again d. more
21. The synonym of the word "detailed" is ".....".
 a. difficult b. easy c. specific d. usual
22. The word "perfect" and "excellent" are
 a. antonyms b. adverbs c. nouns d. synonyms

2. Speaking Skill

مهارة التحدث

Useful Expressions :

تعابير مفيدة :

الفئة Category	التعبير Expression
Talking About Roles التحدث عن الأدوار	I'd like to be... أود أن أكون ...
	I'm good at... أنا جيد في ...
	I work best as... أعمل بشكل أفضل ك ...
	I'm naturally a... أنا بطبيعتي ...
	My strength is ... نقطتي القوية هي ...
	I enjoy... أستمتع ب ...
Describing Team Dynamics وصف ديناميكية الفريق	We complement each other نحن نكمل بعضنا البعض
	Everyone plays to their strengths نستغل نقاط قوتنا
	We work well together نعمل معًا بشكل جيد
	Our skills balance each other out مهارتنا توازن بعضها البعض

Making Suggestions تقديم اقتراحات	How about if...?	ما رأيك لو...؟
	What if we...?	ماذا لو قمنا ب...؟
	I think it would be good if...	أعتقد أنه سيكون من الجيد لو ...
	Maybe we should...	ربما يجب علينا أن ...
	We could try...	يمكننا أن نجرب ...
Expressing Agreement التعبير عن الموافقة	That's perfect!	هذا رائع!
	Great idea!	فكرة رائعة!
	That works well.	هذا يجدي نفعًا.
	That makes sense	هذا منطقي
	I agree completely.	أوافق تمامًا.
	Absolutely!	بالتأكيد!

3. Writing Skill

مهارة الكتابة

► Writing a short text :

كتابة نص قصير :

When writing a short text :

عند كتابة نص قصير :

1. Focus on one idea.	ركز على فكرة واحدة.
2. Keep sentences simple.	اجعل الجمل بسيطة.
3. Use clear vocabulary.	استخدم مفردات لغوية واضحة.
4. Start with an introduction.	ابدأ بمقدمة.
5. Follow with the main point.	تابع بالنقطة الأساسية.
6. End with a conclusion.	انهي النص بخاتمة.

General Exercises



On Lessons 5 & 6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Our skills each other well; I'm good at writing, and she is good at design.
a. resolve b. organize c. complement d. support
- The word "disagreement" and "conflict" are
a. antonyms b. adverbs c. nouns d. synonyms
- We add the prefix "....." to get the antonym of the word "agreement".
a. un- b. ir- c. dis- d. mis-
- It's important to disagreements peacefully in a team.
a. resolve b. complement c. support d. create

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

coordinator - strengths - researcher - perfect - communication

For our group presentation, we all took different roles. Ramy was the main (1) finding detailed information. Hazem was the project (2) who organizes schedules. I was the team supporter making sure everyone's ideas were heard. Good (3) was key to our success. We all played to our (4) and worked well together.

3 Rewrite the following sentences:

- Mother ordered her daughter not to waste her time. (Don't)
.....
- "Hand in your assignments", the teacher said. (ordered)
.....
- "Don't use your phones in the class", Ahmed said. (not to)
.....

4 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Your personal leadership goal"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Vocabulary	Language	Speaking
Lessons 1 & 2 leadership القيادة teamwork العمل الجماعي inspire يُلهِم motivate يُحفِز feedback تغذية راجعة effective فعّال qualities صفات / سمات empathy تعاطف adaptable قادر على التكيف communicate يتواصل confidence ثقة بالنفس	Reported orders ► To report "command" or "order" We use verbs like told ordered asked advised • Affirmative order → (to + inf.) • Negative order → (not to + inf.) ex. - The teacher said to Ali "clean the board". = The teacher ordered Ali to clean the board. ex. - Mother said to Mona, "Don't waste your time". = Mother advised Mona not to waste her time.	Discussing Team Roles التحدث عن الأدوار داخل الفريق I'd like to be/I'm good at... Describing Team Dynamics We complement each other. Making Suggestions تقديم اقتراحات I think it would be good if... Maybe we should... Expressing Agreement التعبير عن الموافقة • That works well. هذا يجدي نفعًا. • That makes sense. هذا منطقي. • I agree completely. أوافق تمامًا. • Absolutely! بالتأكيد! • That sounds great. / That works well. / I agree completely. • That's perfect!
Lesson 3 coordinator منسق organizer منظم choices اختيارات assignments واجبات / تكليفات tasks مهام roles أدوار deadlines مواعيد نهائية strengths نقاط قوة		
Lessons 5&6 cooperation تعاون communication تواصل decisions قرارات achieve ينجز/يحقق organize ينظم plan خطة / يخطط support يدعم resolve يحل/يصلح		

SKILLS

1

Reading
Comprehension

Giving the main idea

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة [تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية للنص].

اقرأ و قم بالإجابة.

Read and answer the questions :

Omar and his classmates were preparing a group project. They wanted to make a plan that shows good leadership and teamwork. Omar noticed that some students didn't share their ideas, so he suggested a "Team Talk" meeting. During the meeting, everyone shared their thoughts and helped each other. By the end, they felt more confident and motivated.

- The general idea of the text is about ".....".
- a. A group project b. Different ideas
- c. A business meeting d. Classrooms

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة في تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية بسبب وجود عدة أفكار تم عرضها في الفقرة.

مفتاح الحل عند قراءة الفقرة تجد أن كل الأفكار تدور حول موضوع واحد محدد هو [الفكرة الرئيسية] أو [العنوان المناسب] للفقرة.

2

Speaking

The power of teamwork

تختبر سؤال المحادثة [dialogue] قدرتك للتعبير عن مواقف معينة.

اقرأ و قم بالإجابة.

Complete the following dialogue :

Layla and Khalid are talking about teamwork.

Layla : Do you think teamwork is important?

Khalid : (1)! It helps us share ideas and finish tasks faster.

Layla : What makes a good leader in your opinion?

Khalid : A good leader listens to others and supports the team.

Layla : (2) Working together makes success possible.

Khalid : You're right ! (3) ?

Layla : I'm working on an art project.

Khalid : Marvelous! (4) ?

Layla : It's about clay sculptures.

Khalid : I wish you best of luck.

Layla : (5)

التحدى تريد السؤال عن [قوة العمل الجماعي] وتجد صعوبة في تكوين أسئلة والرد عليها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من الأسئلة والردود عن الموضوع.

Test on unit 12

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. To means to make someone feel interested or want to do something good.
a. describe b. inspire c. replace d. generate
2. **AB** It's important to the main points when giving a presentation.
a. ignore b. forget c. emphasize d. postpone
3. The suffix "....." forms the noun from the word "lead".
a. -ment b. -ed c. -ly d. -er
4. The antonym of the word "pride" is
a. success b. modesty c. adaptation d. purpose

The Answers :

1. 2. 3. 4.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

pump - encouraged - competition - Instead - team

I'm Dina. Our science team won the national (1) with our renewable energy project. For three months, we worked on a solar-powered water (2) for villages in Upper Egypt. At first, our design wasn't working well. (3) of giving up, Mona, our team leader, (4) us and ordered us to find a better way together.

The Answers :

1. 2. 3. 4.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Egypt has produced some of history's most amazing leaders. Queen Hatshepsut was one of the most successful female pharaohs. She ruled for twenty-two years and brought peace and **prosperity**. She concentrated on building projects and trade. Pharaoh Thutmose III was a brilliant military leader. He led many successful campaigns and brought immense wealth and power to the country. Beyond his military skills, he also built monuments. Ramesses II, known as Ramesses the Great, was famous for his military achievements and his great projects. During his sixty-seven-year rule, he built incredible monuments, including the famous Abu Simbel temples.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. What is the main idea of the text?

a. Temples

b. Trade

c. Great Leaders

d. Modern Egypt

2. The underlined word "**prosperity**" means ".....".

a. success and wealth

b. military skills

c. building projects

d. history

3. What did Hatshepsut focus on ?

a. War

b. Peace

c. Temples

d. Wealth

b. Answer the following questions :

4. How long did Ramesses II rule?

5. What two things was Ramesses II famous for?

6. Why do you think these leaders are still remembered today?

The Answers :

a. 1.

2.

3.

b. 4.

5.

6.

4

Story

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The three companions decided to during a strong storm.

a. explore

b. attack

c. escape

d. hide

2. At dawn, the companions reached the safety of a

a. shore

b. warship

c. new submarine

d. craft

3. Who wrote down their incredible adventures after they escaped?

a. Captain Nemo

b. Ned Land

c. Consell

d. Aronnax

4. Aronnax never discovered the full truth about Nemo's past or what became of the

a. shore

b. storm

c. Nautilus

d. treasure

b. Answer the following questions.

1. **AB** Why do you think Captain Nemo didn't tell others about his past ?

2. What final lesson did Aronnax learn about ambition and sorrow?

The Answers :

a. 1.

2.

3.

4.

b. 1.

2.

5 Rewrite the following sentences:

1. The teacher said, "Do the exam." (The teacher told us)
.....
2. My mother said, "Don't annoy your brother." (My mother asked me)
.....
3. **AB** Ziad said to Ibrahim, "Do your exercises." (advised)
.....

The Answers :

1.
2.
3.

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. The doctor advised me (**take**) this medicine.
2. The coach ordered the players (**eat**) healthy food.
3. The teacher told the students (**not be**) late.

The Answers :

1.
2.
3.

7 Complete the following dialogue:

Mo'men is meeting a tourist.

Mo'men : Are you visiting Egypt on business or on holiday ?

Tourist : (1)

Mo'men : (2) ?

Tourist : I come from London.

Mo'men : (3) ?

Tourist : Big Ben and the Queen's Place are the most famous places in London.

Mo'men : What interests do you like most in Egypt ?

Tourist : (4)

Mo'men : I hope you will enjoy your tour in our country.

Tourist : (5)

The Answers :

1.
2.
3.
4.
5.

8 Write a review of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on :

مجاوب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Ancient Egyptian leaders"

.....

.....

.....

Test on unit 12

for Al-Azhar students

اختبار لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1. Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Sara and Hala are talking about leaders.

Sara : What is this book about?

Hala : (1)

Sara : (2) ?

Hala : My favorite leader was Queen Hatshepsut.

Sara : Why do you admire her?

Hala : (3)

Sara : Successful! I admire her, too.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Thutmose III was a brilliant military

- a. reader b. leader
c. astronaut d. farmer

2. are people who watch or listen and then decide who wins.

- a. Judges b. Craftsmen
c. Players d. Engineers

3. My mom ordered me my room.

- a. tidy b. tidying c. to tidy d. tidies

4. He said, " your time."

- a. Not b. Not to c. To d. Don't

3. Read and complete the text:

history – math – achievements – responsible – leader

A great leader guides people with wisdom and kindness. Their (1) help improve life for everyone. When a (2) works hard, they become a strong example for the future. Many leaders are remembered in (3) for their ideas and actions. Their stories teach us how to be brave and (4)

4. Rewrite the following sentences:

- The teacher told the students not to come late again. (said to)
- The captain said to the players "Train well". (told)
- "Don't waste your time". Ahmed said to Ali. (not to)
- "Don't stay up late" Dad told me. (advised)

5. Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The British Museum in London is the oldest public museum in the world. It opened in 1759. It has more than 13 million objects. About six million visitors go there every year. The museum has the largest collection of Egyptian objects outside Egypt. One of its biggest objects is the Rosetta Stone. This arrived at the museum in 1802. The writing on the stone is in three different languages. This allowed people to understand ancient Egyptian hieroglyphics. The most important part of the museum is the Great Court. Its big glass room makes it the most beautiful covered square in Europe. It opened in 2000.

a. Answer the following questions:

- What is the passage about?
.....
- Why would you like to visit the museum?
.....

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined pronoun "This" refers to the
a. square b. objects c. stone d. museum
- "Hieroglyphics" is a form of
a. sport b. adventure c. writing d. color

6. Write a short paragraph of SIX (6) sentences on: "Your goal"

.....

Review 4



SB Pages 103 : 106

Vocabulary

Lesson 1 ► SB Pages 103 & 104

tape (n)	شريط لاصق	blend (ed) (v)	يندمج
ignore (d) (v)	يتجاهل	fur (n)	فراء
bridge (n)	كوبري	release (d) (v)	يطلق / يحرر

Lesson 2 ► SB Pages 104 & 106

landmark(n)	علامة بارزة	hunt (ed) (v)	يصطاد
wonders (n)	عجائب	smooth (adj)	أملس
creativity (n)	إبداع		

Listening

• on Lesson 1 SB page 103

Last week, our class had to build a bridge using only paper and tape. At first, everyone wanted to do things their own way, and it didn't work well. Then, we decided to listen to each other's ideas and divide the tasks. Some students worked on the design, while others focused on testing the strength. By the end of the day, our bridge held ten books without breaking! We realized that teamwork isn't just about working together-it's about respecting each person's skills and ideas.

• on Lesson 2 SB page 104

Egypt is famous for its ancient landmarks that attract visitors from all over the world. The Great Pyramid of Giza is one of the Seven Wonders of the Ancient World and still stands today. Nearby, the Sphinx guards the desert with its lion's body and human head. In Cairo, the Egyptian Museum holds thousands of treasures from ancient times, including the mask of King Tutankhamun. Farther south, the temples of Abu Simbel were built by Pharaoh Ramses II and later moved to higher ground to protect them from the rising waters of the Nile. These landmarks remind everyone of Egypt's rich history and creativity.

General Exercises



On Review 4

Lesson 1

1 Listen to the following text, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The class project was to build a using paper and tape.
a. bridge b. car c. tower d. robot
2. The group succeeded after they started each other's ideas.
a. ignoring b. copying
c. listening to d. disagreeing with
3. The bridge was strong enough to hold books.
a. five b. ten c. seven d. twelve

2 Complete the following dialog:

Two classmates are talking about animal adaptation.

Amany : Why do polar bears have white fur?

Gamila : Their white fur helps them blend in with the snow so

(1)

Amany : (2)?

Gamila : They store fat in their humps, which their bodies can turn into water and energy when needed.

Amany : (3)?

Gamila : Their large ears help them hear tiny sounds and also release heat to stay cool in the hot desert.

Amany : How do emperor penguins stay warm in freezing temperatures?

Gamila : (4)

Amany : Why do some animals change color with the seasons?

Gamila : (5) like the Arctic fox, which turns white in winter and brown in summer.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions

One cold winter morning, a young boy named Omar was walking to school when he saw smoke coming from a small house nearby. Without thinking twice, he ran to the door and heard a child crying inside. Omar quickly called for help and then crawled through the open window to rescue the frightened boy. Just as he got out, firefighters arrived and put out the fire. Everyone praised Omar for his bravery. He said he didn't feel like a hero—he just wanted to help. His quick thinking and courage saved the child's life and inspired others to act bravely in difficult situations. Sometimes, true bravery comes from caring about others more than yourself.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Omar saw coming from a small house.
a. water b. light c. smoke d. a dog
- Omar's brave action helped save a
a. dog b. child c. firefighter d. hero

B. Answer the following questions:

- What would you have done if you were in Omar's place?
- Why do you think Omar didn't see himself as a hero?
- What makes a person truly brave?

4 Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets to give the same meaning:

- The police came to the crime scene, but the criminal escaped. (before)
- "Where did you buy this book?" (She asked me..)
- "Don't be late for class." (The teacher ordered us)

Lesson 2

1 Listen to the following text, then put (T) True or (F) False:

- The Great Pyramid of Giza is one of the Seven Wonders of the Ancient World. ()
- The Sphinx has the body of a human and the head of a lion. ()
- The Egyptian Museum is located in Cairo. ()
- The temples of Abu Simbel were moved to lower ground to protect them from floods. ()
- These landmarks show Egypt's long and creative history. ()

2 Match the words with their correct meanings.

A

1. solo
2. predator
3. slippery
4. demonstrate
5. immense

B

- ☐ to show or explain how something works
- ☐ very big or great
- ☐ done alone, without anyone's help
- ☐ an animal that hunts and eats other animals
- ☐ smooth or wet, making it easy to fall or slide

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. She asked me where I (go) the previous night.
2. The teacher told us (turn off) our phones before the exam.
3. After we (arrive) home, it started to rain.

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Animals like chameleons use to blend in with their surroundings and hide from predators.
a. decoration b. camouflage c. color d. shadow
2. The scientist felt an sense of pride when her team discovered a new species.
a. small b. tiny c. immense d. weak
3. The polar bear's thick fur is an that helps it survive in the cold Arctic.
a. invention b. decoration c. adaptation d. attraction
4. Life in the desert can be very because of the extreme heat and lack of water.
a. gentle b. easy c. harsh d. soft
5. The view from the top of the mountain was absolutely
a. boring b. breathtaking c. ordinary d. ugly
6. Be careful when walking on the wet floor; it's very
a. rough b. dry c. sticky d. slippery
7. The Eiffel Tower and the Pyramids are famous that attract millions of tourists.
a. landmarks b. streets c. restaurants d. mountains

8. He asked me where I the day before.
 a. go b. went c. am going d. had gone
9. Before we at the station, the train had already left.
 a. arrive b. arrived c. arriving d. arrives
10. The teacher told the students talking during the test.
 a. not to start b. not start c. don't start d. to not start

5 The Story

A. Answer the following questions.

1. How does the submarine get its power?
2. What happens when the submarine is attacked by a giant squid?
3. Do the characters ever return to land at the end of the story?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The men see a huge that attacks the submarine.
 a. shark b. whale c. squid d. crab
5. The three fellows escaped from the submarine through a
 a. small boat b. warship c. steel box d. sunken ship
6. The story is full of adventure and
 a. magic b. mystery c. sadness d. comedy

6 Write from ONE HUNDRED (100) to ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"Your school trip to Cairo"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

The Story

Twenty Thousand Leagues Under The Sea

By : Jules Verne



Story Map

تنويه
ترجمة القصة
في نهاية الكتاب

خريطة القصة

The main characters الشفصيات الرئيسية



Professor Pierre Aronnax

A French marine biologist and narrator.

عالم أحياء بحرية فرنسي
وراوي القصة.



Captain Nemo

Mysterious captain of the Nautilus submarine.

قائد غامض للغواصة
[Nautilus]



Ned Land

A skilled Canadian harpooner.

صياد حيتان ماهر من
كندا.



Conseil

Aronnax's loyal servant.

خادم البروفيسور
الوفى.

Places الأماكن

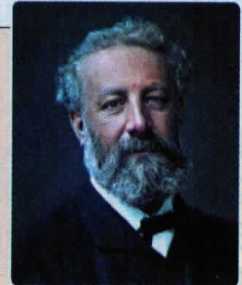
- On board the Nautilus submarine. على متن الغواصة (Nautilus).
- Under the world's oceans: Pacific, Atlantic and Indian Oceans. تحت محيطات العالم: الهادي، الأطلسي والهندي.
- Mysterious underwater locations such as the lost city of Atlantis. أماكن غامضة تحت الماء مثل مدينة أطلانطس المفقودة.

Time الوقت

- The mid to late 19th century. من منتصف إلى أواخر القرن التاسع عشر.
- Adventures taking place over months under the sea. أحداث المغامرة على مدى أشهر تحت سطح البحر.

Introduction about the Author مقدمة عن المؤلف

Jules Verne (1828 – 1905) was a French novelist and is often called the "Father of Science Fiction." He wrote imaginative adventure tales that combined scientific ideas with vivid storytelling. His most famous works include Journey to the Center of the Earth (1864), Around the World in Eighty Days (1873), and Twenty Thousand Leagues Under the Sea (1870). Verne's writings inspired both readers and scientists.



Jules Verne

(Jules Verne) (1828 – 1905) هو روائي فرنسي، ويُلقَّب غالبًا بـ "أبو أدب الخيال العلمي". كتب مغامرات خيالية تجمع بين الأفكار العلمية والسرديات المشوقة. من أشهر أعماله: «رحلة إلى مركز الأرض» (١٨٦٤) و «حول العالم في ثمانين يومًا» (١٨٧٣)، و «عشرون ألف فرسخ تحت سطح البحر» (١٨٧٠). لقد ألهمت كتاباته القراء والعلماء على حدٍّ سواء.



SB Pages 18 & 19

Chapter

1

The Mystery of the Sea Monster

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

beast	وحش	companions	رفقاء / زملاء	desperately	بشكل يائس
crew	طاقم السفينة	survive	ينجو/ يبقى علي قيد الحياة	mysterious	غامض
capture	بمسك / يقبض على	astonishment	دهشة	submarine	غواصة
harpooner	صيّاد بالزّمح	commander	قائد	voyage	رحلة بحرية
creature	مخلوق [بحري]	marine	بحري	existence	وجود
harpoon	رمح / حربة	warship	سفينة حربية	monster	وحش بحري

Extra Vocabulary

smash	يحطم بقوة	debate	جدال / نقاش	intense	شديد / قوي
terrifying	مخيف جدًا	glowing	متوهج / مضيء	loyal	وفّي
launch	يطلق / يبدأ	impatient	غير صبور / قلق	board	يصعد إلى السفينة
servant	خادم	claim	يدّعي / يزعم	the Pacific	المحيط الهادئ
set sail	يبحر / ينطلق بالسفينة	force	قوة / عنف	marvelous	رائع / مدهش
doubt	يشك / شك	steel - like body	جسم يشبه الفولاذ	fire	يطلق النار / يقذف
cannon	مدفع	chase	يطارد	beneath	تحت / أسفل

II

Main Points on chapter 1

1. Sailors **claimed**⁽¹⁾ to have seen a huge sea **monster**⁽²⁾ smashing ships.
2. A **voyage**⁽³⁾ was launched to **capture**⁽⁴⁾ or kill the beast.
3. Professor Pierre Aronnax joined the voyage with his servant.
4. A Canadian **harpooner**⁽⁵⁾ was a part of the **crew**⁽⁶⁾.
5. They boarded a warship and sailed for months without success.
6. A long glowing shape appeared and the crew **chased**⁽⁷⁾ it.
7. The monster hit their ship and the crew were thrown into the sea.
8. They discovered that the monster was a man-made **submarine**⁽⁸⁾.

(1) يدعي

(2) وحش

(3) رحلة بحرية

(4) يمسك / يأسر

(5) صائد بالرمح

(6) طاقم السفينة

(7) طارد

(8) غواصة



Text of chapter 1

• The Mystery of the Sea Monster

In the mid-nineteenth century, sailors across the oceans reported a strange creature. Ships claimed to have seen a huge "sea monster"⁽¹⁾, moving faster than whales and smashing ships with terrible force. Newspapers described it as both marvelous and terrifying **1**. Public debate⁽²⁾ grew so intense that a voyage was launched to capture or kill the beast.

Professor Pierre Aronnax, a French marine scientist⁽³⁾ **2**, was invited to join the voyage. His loyal servant Conseil and a Canadian harpooner⁽⁴⁾ named Ned Land also became part of the crew⁽⁵⁾. They boarded a warship and set sail across the Pacific. For months, they searched without success⁽⁶⁾.

Some sailors doubted the monster's existence⁽⁷⁾, while others became impatient.

At last, one evening, a long glowing shape appeared in the waves. The crew chased it desperately⁽⁸⁾. Cannon fire and harpoons were launched. Suddenly, the "monster" turned and hit the ship with its steel-like⁽⁹⁾ body. Aronnax and his companions⁽¹⁰⁾ were thrown into the sea.

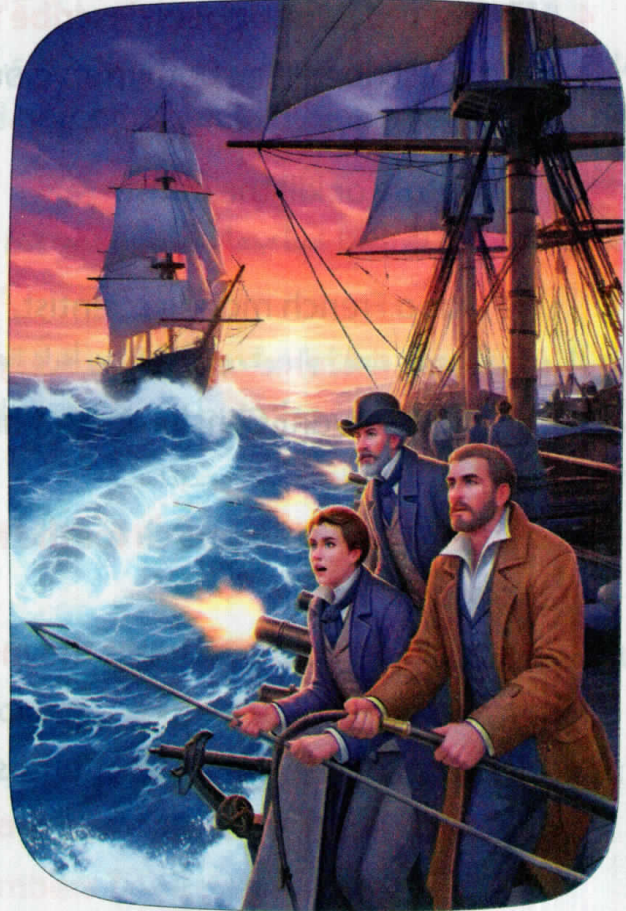
Struggling to survive, they swam toward the mysterious creature. To their astonishment, they discovered it was not an animal at all but a man-made submarine⁽¹¹⁾ of special design. Their adventure beneath the oceans was about to begin.

• Suggested Questions •

- 1** What two words did newspapers use to describe the sea monster ?

• Suggested Questions •

- 2** What was Professor Pierre Aronnax's profession ?



(6) نجاح	(5) طاقم السفينة	(4) صياد بالرمح	(3) عالم	(2) جدل / مناقشة	(1) وحش
(11) غواصة	(10) رفقاء / زملاء الرحلة	(9) شبيه بالفولاذ	(8) بشكل يائس	(7) وجود	



Questions and answers

on Chapter One

أسئلة مقابلة بإجاباتها

1 Open-ended Questions and their answers

1. Who wrote the story "Twenty Thousand Leagues under the Sea" ?

١. من الذي كتب قصة "عشرون ألف فرسخ تحت سطح البحر" ؟
 - Jules Verne هو كاتب القصة.
 - Jules Verne wrote the story.

2. What did the sailors report seeing in the mid-nineteenth century ?

٢. ماذا أبلغ البحارة عن رؤيته في منتصف القرن التاسع عشر ؟
 - أبلغوا عن رؤية وحش بحري ضخم.
 - They reported seeing a huge sea monster.

3. What did the ships claim?

٣. ماذا ادعت السفن ؟
 - ادعت السفن أنها شاهدت الوحش وهو يحطم السفن بقوة رهبة.
 - They claimed to have seen the monster smashing ships with terrible force.

4. AB How did newspapers describe the creature ?

٤. كيف وصفت الصحف المخلوق ؟
 - وصفته بأنه مدهش ومخيف.
 - They described it as both marvelous and terrifying.

5. AB Why was a voyage launched ?

٥. لماذا تم إطلاق رحلة بحرية ؟
 - للإمساك بالوحش أو قتله.
 - To capture or kill the beast.

6. Who was Professor Aronnax ?

٦. من هو البروفيسور أرونأكس ؟
 - كان عالم أحياء بحرية فرنسي.
 - He was a French marine scientist.

7. Who joined Aronnax on the voyage ?

٧. من الذي رافق "Aronnax" في الرحلة ؟
 - خادمه الوفي "Conseil" وصياد حراب كندي يُدعى "Ned Land".
 - His loyal servant Conseil and a Canadian harpooner named Ned Land.

8. Where did the ship search for the monster ?

٨. أين بحثت السفينة عن الوحش ؟
 - عبر المحيط الهادئ.
 - Across the Pacific.

9. Why did some sailors doubt the monster's existence ?

٩. لماذا شك بعض البحارة في وجود الوحش ؟
 - لأنهم بحثوا لأشهر دون نجاح.
 - Because they searched for months without success.

10. How did the crew react when the glowing shape appeared ?

١٠. كيف تفاعل الطاقم عندما ظهر الشكل اللامع ؟
 - طاردوه بشكل يائس وأطلقوا المدافع والحراب.
 - They chased it desperately and fired cannons and harpoons.

11. What happened when the "monster" hit the ship ? ماذا حدث عندما صدم الوحش السفينة ؟

- Aronnax and his companions were thrown into the sea. سقط "Aronnax" ورفاقه في البحر.

12. What did they discover about the monster ? ماذا اكتشفوا عن الوحش ؟

- It was not an animal at all but a man-made submarine of special design.

- لم يكن مخلوقًا حيًا على الإطلاق، بل كان غواصةً من صنع الإنسان بتصميم خاص.

2 Critical thinking questions and suggested answers أسئلة التفكير النقدي وإجاباتها المقترحة

1. **SB** Why do you think the sailors were so fascinated with the idea of a sea monster ?

١. لماذا تعتقد أن البحارة كانوا منبهرين لفكرة الوحش البحري ؟

- Because it moved faster than whales and smashed ships with terrible force.

- لأن الوحش كان يتحرك أسرع من الحيتان ويحطم السفن بقوة رهيبة.

2. **SB** Why do you think some sailors doubted the existence of the sea monster while others were determined to capture it ?

٢. لماذا تعتقد أن بعض البحارة شكّوا في وجود الوحش البحري بينما كان آخرون مصّرين على اسره ؟

- Some doubted because they didn't find anything, while others were determined to capture it.

- بعضهم شك لأنهم لم يجدوا شيئًا بينما كان آخرون مصممين على الإمساك به.

3. **SB** How did the description of the monster create a sense of fear and wonder among the crew ?

٣. كيف أثار وصف الوحش شعورًا بالخوف والدهشة بين أفراد الطاقم ؟

- Because the monster was powerful and dangerous but also amazing and new.

- لأنه كان قويًا وخطيرًا لكنه كان مدهشًا وجديدًا عليهم.

4. **SB** What do you think the importance of the "public debate" over the sea monster's existence was ?

٤. ماذا تعتقد عن أهمية الجدل العام عن وحش البحر ؟

- It was important because it led to launching a voyage to find the monster.

- كانت مهمة لأنها تسببت في إطلاق رحلة بحرية للعثور على الوحش.

5. **SB** In your opinion, how might the voyage to capture the sea monster affect the relationships between the crew members ?

٥. في رأيك، كيف يمكن أن تؤثر الرحلة البحرية للقبض على المخلوق في العلاقات بين أفراد الطاقم ؟

- It made them work together to find the monster. جعلتهم يعملون معًا للعثور على الوحش.

3 MCQs Questions and answers

تدريبات وإجاباتها النموذجية

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :	Answers
1 Newspapers described the monster as marvelous and a. bright b. friendly c. terrifying d. hard	c. terrifying
2 A voyage was launched to capture or kill the a. submarine b. beast c. killers d. sail	b. beast
3 Professor Aronnax was a French marine a. officer b. servant c. sailor d. scientist	d. scientist
4 They swam toward the creature struggling to survive. a. impatient b. mysterious c. loyal d. glowing	b. mysterious
5 They discovered the glowing shape was a a. ship b. whale c. beast d. submarine	d. submarine
6 Ned Land was a Canadian a. marine scientist b. sailor c. harpooner d. beast	c. harpooner

احرص على اقتناء



اللغة الإنجليزية

امنح ثقتك لمن يستحق



General Exercises



On Chapter 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. **SB** In the mid-nineteenth century, sailors claimed to have seen a huge
a. whale b. sea monster c. shark d. squid
2. The sea creature was described as
a. marvelous b. slow c. friendly d. tiny
3. **SB** Professor Aronnax was invited to join the
a. party b. voyage c. army d. flight
4. Conseil and Ned Land became part of the
a. army b. debate c. invention d. crew
5. The crew searched for the monster for
a. days b. weeks c. hours d. months
6. **SB** The sea monster was described as having a body.
a. fish-like b. long, tentacled c. steel-like d. staff
7. One evening, a shape appeared in the waves.
a. dark b. glowing c. tiny d. sharp
8. The crew attacked the creature with cannon fire and
a. harpoons b. arrows c. nets d. axes
9. Aronnax and his companions were thrown into the
a. sea b. ship c. beach d. island
10. The monster was actually a
a. whale b. submarine c. boat d. machine
11. Some sailors doubted the monster's
a. existence b. name c. color d. power

2 Answer the following questions :

1. In what century did sailors report the strange creature?

.....

2. **AB** How was the monster moving?

.....

3. What did Aronnax and his companions discover after falling into the sea?

.....

4. What two things did the crew use to chase the "monster" at first?

.....

5. What kind of body did the monster have when it struck the ship ?

.....

6. **SB** What role did Professor Aronnax play in the voyage ?

.....

7. What happened when the "monster" hit the ship?

.....

8. What do you think the crew felt while searching for months?

.....

9. How did newspapers affect people's opinions about the sea monster?

.....

10. How did the crew react when the glowing shape appeared?

.....

11. How do you think Aronnax felt when he discovered the "monster" was a submarine?

.....



SB Pages 32 & 33

Chapter

2

► Captives of Captain Nemo

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

captives	أسرى / محتجزون	homeland	وطن	astonishing	مذهل / مذهش
entirely	بالكامل / تمامًا	half-guests	نصف ضيوف	pearls	لآلئ
aboard	على متن السفينة	artifacts	قطع أثرية	half-prisoners	نصف سجناء
master	سيد / قائد	commander	قائد	professor	أستاذ جامعي
freedom	حرية	surfacing	الصعود إلى السطح	value	يقدر - يثمن
floating palace	قصر عائم	curiosity	فضول / حب الاستطلاع	loyal	وفّي

Extra Vocabulary

knowledge	معرفة	gather	يجمع	distances	مسافات
power by	يدار / يعمل بـ	escape	يهرب	insist	يُصرّ
wonders	عجائب	will	إرادة	dangers	مخاطر

II Main Points on chapter 2

Captives of Captain Nemo

1. Aronnax, Conseil, and Ned Land were taken inside the submarine to meet the **commander**⁽¹⁾.
2. Captain Nemo was a mysterious man of strong will and deep knowledge.
3. He said the Nautilus was built to live **entirely**⁽²⁾ under the sea.
4. Nautilus could travel long distances without **surfacing**⁽³⁾.
5. They had to stay **aboard**⁽⁴⁾ the submarine forever.
6. Professor Aronnax, filled with scientific **curiosity**⁽⁵⁾, accepted as he wanted to learn about the ocean.
7. Conseil stayed **loyal**⁽⁶⁾ to his master, but Ned Land loved **freedom**⁽⁷⁾.
8. Ned Land began to make plan to **escape**⁽⁸⁾ from Nautilus.
9. Nemo showed them **treasures**⁽⁹⁾ collected from the sea.
10. He said the sea was his **homeland**⁽¹⁰⁾.
11. They realized their new life under the sea had wonders and dangers.

(1) قائد

(2) بالكامل

(3) الصعود إلى السطح

(4) على متن السفينة

(5) فضول

(6) وفّي - مخلص

(7) حرية

(8) يهرب

(9) كنوز

(10) وطن



Text of chapter 2

Captives of Captain Nemo

Aronnax, Conseil, and Ned Land were brought inside through an iron door. There, they met the **commander**⁽¹⁾: Captain Nemo, a mysterious man of strong will and deep knowledge **1**. Nemo explained that his ship, the Nautilus, was built **entirely**⁽²⁾ for life beneath the sea. Powered by electricity **2**, it could travel very long distances without **surfacing**⁽³⁾.

Suggested Questions

1 Who was Captain Nemo ?

Suggested Questions

2 What powered the Nautilus ?

Nemo welcomed them politely, but made it clear: once **aboard**⁽⁴⁾, they could never return to land. They were to remain with him as long as they lived. Professor Aronnax, filled with scientific **curiosity**⁽⁵⁾. He accepted that, as he wanted to learn about the ocean and its secrets. Conseil stayed **loyal**⁽⁶⁾ to his master. But Ned Land, who valued **freedom**⁽⁷⁾ above all, was angry. He began making a plan to escape from the Nautilus.

Life on the Nautilus was **astounding**⁽⁸⁾. The ship looked like a floating palace under water with a library, a museum, and big windows to see the deep ocean. Nemo showed them treasures gathered from the sea: pearls, gold, and ancient **artifacts**⁽⁹⁾. He told them that he kept himself away from land. The sea, he insisted, was his only homeland.

Thus, they began to feel, half-prisoners and half-guests. They were kept on a journey that was full of **wonders**⁽¹⁰⁾ and dangers.



(5) فضول	(4) على متن السفينة	(3) الصعود إلى السطح	(2) بالكامل	(1) قائد
(10) عجائب	(9) قطع أثرية	(8) مدهش	(7) حرية	(6) وفّي



Questions and answers

on Chapter Two

1 Open-ended Questions and their answers

أسئلة مقالية بإجاباتها

1. Who did Aronnax, Conseil, and Ned Land meet when they entered the submarine ?

١. من قابل "Aronnax, Conseil, Ned Land" عندما دخلوا الغواصة ؟
- قابلوا القائد: الكابتن "Nemo".

2. **AB** What was Captain Nemo's ship called ?

٢. ما هو اسم سفينة الكابتن "Nemo" ؟
- كان اسم سفينة الكابتن "Nemo" هو "Nautilus".

3. How did Captain Nemo describe his ship the Nautilus ?

٣. كيف وصف الكابتن نيمو سفينته "Nautilus" ؟
- قال إنها بُنيت بالكامل للحياة تحت البحر. - He said it was built entirely for life beneath the sea.

4. Why could the Nautilus travel long distances without surfacing ?

٤. لماذا كان بإمكان "Nautilus" السفر لمسافات طويلة دون الصعود للسطح ؟
- لأنها كانت تعمل بالطاقة الكهربائية.

5. Why couldn't the three men return to land after boarding the submarine ?

٥. لماذا لا يستطيع الرجال الثلاثة العودة إلى البر بعد صعودهم للسفينة ؟
- Nemo told them they must remain with him as long as they lived.
- أخبرهم "Nemo" أنهم يجب أن يبقوا معه طوال حياتهم.

6. **SB** How did Professor Aronnax react to the situation on the Nautilus? Why ?

٦. كيف كان رد فعل "Aronnax" تجاه الوضع على الغواصة؟ ولماذا ؟
- He accepted it because he wanted to learn about the ocean and its secrets.
- تقبل الأمر لأنه أراد أن يتعلم عن المحيط وأسراره.

7. **SB** Why was Ned Land so restless and angry about being aboard the ship ?

٧. لماذا كان "Ned Land" غاضبًا وقلقًا بشأن وجوده على متن السفينة ؟
- Because he valued freedom above all and wanted to escape.
- لأنه كان يقدر الحرية فوق كل شيء ويريد الهرب.

8. **SB** How was life on the Nautilus ?

٨. كيف كانت الحياة على متن "Nautilus" ؟
- It was astonishing, like a floating palace under water. كانت مذهشة، كقصر عائِم تحت الماء.

9. What can they see through the big windows ?

٩. ماذا يمكنهم رؤيته من خلال النوافذ الكبيرة ؟
- They can see the deep ocean. يمكنهم رؤية أعماق المحيط.

10. What treasures did Nemo show them from the sea ?

١٠. ما الكنوز التي أراهم نيمو إياها من البحر ؟
- Pearls, gold and ancient artifacts. - لآلئ وذهب وقطع أثرية قديمة.

11. **SB** How did Captain Nemo compare the sea to the land ?

١١. كيف قارن الكابتن "Nemo" بين البحر واليابسة ؟

- He said the sea was his only homeland.
- قال إن البحر هو وطنه الوحيد.

12. How did the captives feel at the end of the chapter ?

١٢. كيف شعر الأسرى في نهاية الفصل ؟

- They began to feel half-prisoners and half-guests.
- بدأوا يشعرون بأنهم نصف سجناء ونصف ضيوف.

2 Critical thinking questions and suggested answers أسئلة التفكير النقدي وإجاباتها المقترحة

1. **SB** Why do you think Captain Nemo chose to keep Aronnax and his friends on the Nautilus instead of sending them back to land ?

١. لماذا تعتقد أن الكابتن "Nemo" اختار إبقاء "Aronnax" ورفاقه على متن "Nautilus" بدلاً من إعادتهم إلى اليابسة ؟

- Because he didn't want anyone to reveal the secrets of the Nautilus.
- لأنه لم يرد أن يكشف أسرار "Nautilus".

2. Why did Ned Land dislike the situation while Aronnax was fascinated ?

٢. لماذا لم يُعجب "Ned Land" بالموقف بينما انبهر "Aronnax" ؟

- Aronnax loved science and discovery, while Ned Land loved freedom and adventure on land.
- كان "Aronnax" يحب العلم والاكتشاف، بينما كان "Ned Land" يحب الحرية والمغامرة على اليابسة.

3. Do you think it was fair for Captain Nemo to keep the men on the Nautilus forever? Why or why not ?

٣. هل تعتقد أنه كان من العادل أن يُبقي "Nemo" الرجال على "Nautilus" إلى الأبد؟ لماذا أو لماذا لا ؟

- It was not fair because they didn't choose to stay and they lost their freedom.
- لم يكن عادلاً لأنهم لم يختاروا البقاء وفقدوا حريتهم.

4. **SB** In what way could life on the Nautilus be better or worse than life on land?

٤. كيف يمكن أن تكون الحياة على "Nautilus" أفضل أو أسوأ من الحياة على اليابسة؟ اذكر أمثلة.

- Better because they can explore the deep sea, but worse because they lost freedom.
- أفضل لأنهم يستطيعون استكشاف أعماق البحر، لكنها أسوأ لأنهم فقدوا حريتهم.

5. How might life under the sea change the behavior and feelings of the captives over time ?

٥. كيف يمكن أن تتغير الحياة تحت البحر سلوك ومشاعر الأسرى مع مرور الوقت ؟

- They might feel curious at first, but later become stressed or desperate to return home.
- قد يشعرون بالفضول في البداية، ولكن لاحقاً قد يصبحون متوترين أو يائسين للعودة إلى الوطن.

General Exercises



On Chapter 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The men met the when they entered the submarine.
a. sailor b. fisherman c. commander d. diver
2. Captain Nemo's ship, called, was built for life beneath the sea.
a. Nautilus b. Atlantis c. Sea King d. Odyssey
3. The Nautilus could travel long distances because it was powered by
a. steam b. wind c. oil d. electricity
4. Once the men were the submarine, they could never return to land.
a. outside b. near c. aboard d. beside
5. Professor Aronnax accepted to be on the Nautilus because of his
a. honesty b. curiosity c. fear d. desire
6. **SB** Ned Land was angry because he valued above all.
a. the sea b. freedom c. treasure d. knowledge
7. Aronnax stayed because he wanted to learn about the sea's
a. dangers b. games c. secrets d. weather
8. Life on the Nautilus seemed It looked like a floating palace.
a. boring b. noisy c. risky d. astonishing
9. Nemo showed them valuable collected from the sea.
a. plants b. treasures c. bottles d. letters
10. Nemo declared that the was his only homeland.
a. land b. sea c. island d. wind

2 Answer the following questions :

1. Who were the commander of Nautilus?

.....

2. How was Nautilus different from a ship ?

.....

3. What was Captain Nemo's character like?

.....

4. Why didn't Conseil complain about staying on the Nautilus?

.....

5. What made Ned Land believe that they were prisoners, not guests?

.....

6. What did the men feel when they first looked through the big underwater windows?

.....

7. What special things did Captain Nemo collect from the deep sea?

.....

8. Who made a plan to escape from Nautilus?

.....

9. **AB** Do you think life on the Nautilus be better or worse than life on land?

.....

10. In your opinion, what is the most dangerous thing about staying on the Nautilus?
Give a reason.

.....



SB Pages 46 & 47

Chapter

3

Wonders of the Deep

I

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

sea bed	قاع البحر	motives	دوافع	coral reefs	شعاب مرجانية
civilizations	حضارات	record	يسجل	chance	فرصة
swallow	يبتلع	shipwrecks	خُطام السفن	mastery	براعة / إتقان
brilliant	عبقري	sunken	غارق / مغمور		

Extra Vocabulary

provide	يزوّد / يقدّم	accurately	بدقّة	hint	يلمّح / إشارة
samples	عينات	suit	بدلة	beauty	جمال

II

Main Points on chapter 3

Wonders of the Deep

1. Aronnax saw the **wonders**⁽¹⁾ of the underwater world through the big windows.
2. He saw colorful **coral reefs**⁽²⁾ and **shipwrecks**⁽³⁾ on the **sea bed**⁽⁴⁾.
3. Captain Nemo invited them on diving **voyages**⁽⁵⁾.
4. They walked and explored an underwater city that was **sunken**⁽⁶⁾.
5. Nemo hinted that lost **civilizations**⁽⁷⁾ were **swallowed**⁽⁸⁾ by the waves.
6. Professor Aronnax recorded everything carefully for science.
7. Conseil helped him in studying marine life.
8. Ned Land became **impatient**⁽⁹⁾ because he missed freedom.
9. The Nautilus moved deeper into the ocean.
10. It traveled far from any **familiar**⁽¹⁰⁾ shore.

- (1) عجائب / روائع
- (2) شعاب مرجانية
- (3) خُطام سفن
- (4) قاع البحر
- (5) رحلات بحرية
- (6) غارقة
- (7) حضارات
- (8) ابتلعت
- (9) فاقد الصبر
- (10) مألوف



Text of chapter 3

Wonders of the Deep

The days that followed showed Aronnax the wonders of the underwater world. He looked through the big windows and saw **coral reefs**⁽¹⁾ glowing with color, fish of every shape, and **shipwrecks**⁽²⁾ resting silently on the ocean floor. Nemo invited his guests on diving **voyages**⁽³⁾ providing them with special suits that allowed them to walk over the **sea bed**⁽⁴⁾.

One such journey took them through an underwater forest of **strange**⁽⁵⁾ plants, where they hunted and collected **samples**⁽⁶⁾. Another led them to the remains of a **sunken**⁽⁷⁾ city, where Nemo hinted at forgotten civilizations⁽⁸⁾ swallowed by the waves **1**.

Professor Aronnax recorded everything carefully, making use of the **chance**⁽⁹⁾ to study marine life in ways no scientist had ever done before. Conseil supported him, naming each creature accurately. But Ned Land grew impatient. Although he was excited at first, he missed freedom. To him, the beauty of the sea could not replace the freedom of land **2**.

Despite their differences, the companions agreed on one thing: Captain Nemo was both brilliant and mysterious. His mastery of science was clear, yet his silence about his past and **motives**⁽¹⁰⁾ filled them with curiosity and worry.

The Nautilus kept moving, deeper and deeper into the blue mystery of the ocean and far from any familiar shore.



Suggested Questions

- 1 What did Nemo hint at regarding the sunken city?

Suggested Questions

- 2 What was the one thing the beauty of the sea could not replace for Ned Land?

(5) غريب	(4) قاع البحر	(3) رحلات بحرية	(2) حطام السفن	(1) الشعاب المرجانية
(10) دوافع	(9) فرصة	(8) حضارات	(7) غارق	(6) عينات



Questions and answers

on Chapter Three

1 Open-ended Questions and their answers

أسئلة مقالية بإجاباتها

1. What did Aronnax see through the big windows of the Nautilus ?

١. ماذا رأى "Aronnax" من خلال نوافذ "Nautilus" ؟

- He saw coral reefs glowing with color, fish of every shape and shipwrecks.

- رأى شعابًا مرجانية تتلألأ وأسماء بأشكال مختلفة وحطام سفن.

2. What did Aronnax see resting on the ocean floor ?

٢. ماذا رأى "Aronnax" في قاع المحيط ؟

- He saw shipwrecks.

- رأى حطام سفن.

3. AB What did Nemo invite his guests to do ?

٣. ماذا دعا "Nemo" ضيوفه ليفعلوا ؟

- He invited them on diving voyages.

- دعاهم إلى رحلات غوص.

4. How did Nemo help his guests to explore underwater ?

٤. كيف ساعد "Nemo" ضيوفه باستكشاف البحر ؟

- He gave them special diving suits.

- أعطاهم بدلات غوص خاصة.

5. Where did one of the diving journeys take them ?

٥. إلى أين أخذتهم إحدى رحلات الغوص ؟

- To an underwater forest full of strange plants.

- إلى غابة تحت الماء مليئة بالنباتات الغريبة.

6. What did the men collect underwater ?

٦. ماذا جمع الرجال تحت الماء ؟

- They collected samples of sea plants.

- جمعوا عينات من النباتات البحرية.

7. SB What was the purpose of the diving voyages with Captain Nemo ?

٧. ما الغرض من رحلات الغوص مع الكابتن "Nemo" ؟

- To explore marine life closely and learn more about the deep sea.

- لاكتشاف الحياة البحرية عن قرب والتعرف أكثر على أعماق البحر.

8. What did Aronnax do during the journey ?

٨. ماذا فعل "Aronnax" أثناء الرحلة ؟

- He recorded everything carefully for scientific study.

- سجّل كل شيء بعناية للدراسة العلمية.

9. How did Conseil support Aronnax underwater ?

٩. كيف دعم "Conseil" سيده "Aronnax" تحت الماء ؟

- He named each sea creature accurately.

- كان يسمي كل كائن بحري بدقة.

10. Why did Ned Land become impatient ?

١٠. لماذا أصبح "Ned Land" غير صبور ؟

- He missed freedom.

- لأنه افتقد الحرية.

11. SB Why did professor Aronnax find the chance to study marine life so exciting, and how did he take this opportunity ?

١١. لماذا وجد "Aronnax" فرصة دراسة الحياة البحرية مثيرة جدًا؟ وكيف استغل هذه الفرصة ؟

- Because no scientist had ever had that chance, so he observed and wrote

down every detail. - لأن لم يحصل عالم على تلك الفرصة من قبل، لذلك كان يراقب ويدوّن كل التفاصيل.

12. How did the journey end in this chapter ?

١٢ . كيف انتهت الرحلة في هذا الفصل ؟

- The Nautilus continued deeper into the unknown sea.

- واصلت "Nautilus" التقدم أعمق نحو البحر المجهول.

2 Critical thinking questions and suggested answers أسئلة التفكير النقدي وإجاباتها المقترحة

1. **SB** Why do you think Captain Nemo's past was kept a secret?

١ . لماذا تعتقد أن ماضي الكابتن «Nemo» كان سراً ؟

- Because he didn't want anyone to know about his life on land.

- لأنه لم يرد لأحد أن يعرف عن حياته على اليابسة.

2. What do you think Aronnax felt when he first saw the underwater wonders ?

٢ . برأيك، ماذا شعر "Aronnax" عندما رأى عجائب عالم تحت الماء لأول مرة ؟

- He felt great amazement and excitement while watching coral reefs, fish, and shipwrecks.

- شعر باندعاش وحماس شديد وهو يشاهد الشعاب المرجانية والأسماك وحطام السفن.

3. Why do you think Nemo wanted them to join the diving voyages using special suits ?

٣ . لماذا تعتقد أن "Nemo" أراد منهم المشاركة في رحلات الغوص بالبدلات الخاصة ؟

- He wanted them to explore the deep sea themselves, not just watch from the windows.

- أراد منهم استكشاف أعماق البحر بأنفسهم وليس فقط المشاهدة من النوافذ.

4. How might visiting the ruins of a sunken city change their understanding of forgotten civilizations ?

٤ . كيف يمكن أن تغير زيارة أطلال مدينة غارقة فهمهم للحضارات المنسية ؟

- It showed them that great civilizations could disappear and be swallowed by the sea.

- أظهرت لهم أن حضارات عظيمة يمكن أن تختفي ويبتلعها البحر.

5. **SB** How do you think Conseil's calmness and accuracy helped during their underwater exploration, compared to Ned Land's impatience ?

٥ . برأيك، كيف ساعد هدوء "Conseil" أثناء استكشاف عالم تحت البحار مقارنةً بعدم صبر "Ned Land" ؟

- Conseil supported Aronnax calmly, while Ned Land wanted freedom and became impatient.

- كان "Conseil" يدعم "Aronnax" بهدوء، بينما كان "Ned Land" يريد الحرية وأصبح غير صبور.

6. Why did Aronnax record everything carefully and Conseil name each creature accurately ?

٦ . لماذا سجل "Aronnax" كل شيء بعناية وكان "Conseil" يسمي كل مخلوق بدقة ؟

- Because Aronnax wanted scientific knowledge and Conseil was helpful and exact.

- لأن "Aronnax" أراد المعرفة العلمية و "Conseil" كان مساعدًا ودقيقًا.

7. Why did Ned Land miss freedom and fresh air even though he was excited at first ?

٧ . لماذا افتقد "Ned Land" الحرية والهواء النقي رغم حماسه في البداية ؟

- Because he realized the sea couldn't replace life and freedom on land.

- لأنه أدرك أن البحر لا يمكن أن يعوّض الحياة والحرية على اليابسة.

8. **SB** What do you think Captain Nemo's silence about his past tells about his character ?

٨ . ماذا يدل صمت "Nemo" عن ماضيه على شخصيته ؟

- It showed that he was mysterious and didn't want to reveal his secrets.

- يدل على أنه شخصية غامضة ولا يريد كشف أسرارته.

٩. كيف رأى الرفاق شخصية "Nemo" ؟ **9. SB How did the companions see Nemo's character ?**

- They agreed that he was brilliant but mysterious, making them curious and worried.
- اتفقوا على أنه عبثي ولكن غامض مما جعلهم فضوليين وقلقين.

10. What did the men feel when the Nautilus went deeper and far from any familiar shore ? ماذا شعر الرجال عندما ابتعدت "Nautilus" أعمق وأبعد عن أي شاطئ مألوف ؟

- They felt fear and worry because they were moving into the unknown.
- شعروا بالخوف والقلق لأنهم كانوا يتجهون نحو المجهول.

3 MCQs Questions and answers

تدريبات وإجاباتها النموذجية

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :	Answers
1 Nemo invited his guests on a. luxury dinners b. diving voyages c. science experiments d. picnics	b. diving voyages
2 They wore special to allow them to walk over the sea bed. a. boots b. jackets c. masks d. suits	d. suits
3 They hunted and collected samples from the underwater a. shipwrecks b. ocean c. forest d. submarine	c. forest
4 Nemo hinted that some forgotten civilizations swallowed by the a. waves b. science c. forest d. whales	a. waves
5 recorded everything making use of the chance to study marine life. a. Conseil b. Professor Aronnax c. Captain Nemo d. Ned Land	b. Professor Aronnax
6 Ned Land was at first but he missed freedom. a. careful b. worried c. nervous d. excited	d. excited

General Exercises



On Chapter 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. **SB** The companions saw glowing with color through the great observation windows.
a. fish b. coral reefs c. shipwrecks d. sharks
2. Aronnax saw resting silently on the ocean floor.
a. rocks b. cities c. shipwrecks d. boats
3. **SB** Ned Land became impatient because he longed for
a. the sea b. freedom and fresh air
c. freedom beneath the ocean d. the treasures of the sea
4. The men collected from strange underwater plants.
a. samples b. metals c. shells d. bones
5. **SB** Conseil named each creature
a. excitement b. accurately c. confusion d. curiosity
6. Visiting a city amazed the men under the sea.
a. modern b. small c. sunken d. noisy
7. **SB** Captain Nemo hinted at forgotten civilizations swallowed by the
a. earth b. storms c. waves d. mountains
8. Aronnax recorded everything carefully about marine
a. treasures b. creatures c. ships d. shells
9. **SB** The Nautilus moved forward into deeper mysteries, carrying them far from
a. land b. war c. safety d. their home
10. Captain Nemo's silence about his past and motives filled them with
a. love b. curiosity c. fear d. anger

2 Answer the following questions :

1. What did they see during the diving voyages?

.....

2. **AB** What did the companions agree on ?

.....

3. How did wearing the diving suits change the men's experience in exploring the sea?

.....

4. What dangers might the men face while walking on the sea bed?

.....

5. Why do you think Nemo wanted them to collect samples during the underwater journeys?

.....

6. How do you think discovering a sunken city changed their thoughts about what is lost under the ocean?

.....

7. Why did Ned Land's excitement disappear after more time underwater?

.....

8. How did Conseil's knowledge help Aronnax during these adventures?

.....

9. Who supported professor Aronnax with this study of marine life?

.....

10. **AB** What was the aim of the driving Voyages with Captain Nemo?

.....



SB Pages 65 & 66

Chapter

4

► Battles and Dangers

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

battles	معارك	fearless	شجاع / لا يعرف الخوف	remarkable	مذهل / رائع
risk	خطر	effort	جهد	leadership	قيادة
squid	حبار عملاق	trapped	محتجز / عالق	indifference	لامبالاة
desperate	يائس / بشدة	mercy	رحمة	threats	تهديدات
struggle	صراع / معاناة	depth	عمق	battlefield	ساحة معركة
deck	سطح السفينة	passenger	راكب	tension	توتر

Extra Vocabulary

giant	عملاق	fear	يخاف	courage	شجاعة
bravely	بشجاعة	the South Pole	القطب الجنوبي	prison	سجن
axes	فؤوس	path	ممر / طريق	admire	يعجب - يقدر

II Main Points on chapter 4

Battles and Dangers

1. Life on Nautilus wasn't without **risk**⁽¹⁾.
2. Once, a giant squid attacked the submarine.
3. Nemo and his crew fought bravely with axes and harpoons.
4. Ned Land **fearless**⁽²⁾ as always killed the monster.
5. The submarine became **trapped**⁽³⁾ beneath thick ice at the South Pole.
6. Nemo attacked any warships that appeared on the surface without **mercy**⁽⁴⁾.
7. Captain Nemo showed calm and **remarkable**⁽⁵⁾ leadership, help to all the **passengers**⁽⁶⁾.
8. Aronnax began to admire Nemo and fear him.
9. The ocean was a school of wonder for Aronnax and a **battlefield**⁽⁷⁾ for Nemo.

(1) خطر

(2) شجاع

(3) محتجز

(4) رحمة

(5) مدهش

(6) راكب

(7) ساحة معركة



Text of chapter 4

Battles and Dangers

Life on the Nautilus was not without risk. Once, the submarine was attacked by a giant **squid**⁽¹⁾ in a desperate struggle on deck **1**. Nemo and his crew fought bravely with axes and harpoons. Ned Land, **fearless**⁽²⁾ as always, killed the monster. Only by great **effort**⁽³⁾ did they escape the danger.

Another time, the submarine became trapped **beneath**⁽⁴⁾ thick ice at the South Pole. With oxygen running low, the crew worked hard to break a path to the surface. At the last moment, the Nautilus forced its way free, and the men breathed fresh air again.

When warships appeared on the surface, Nemo attacked them without **mercy**⁽⁵⁾, sending them to the depths.

Through such dangers, the passengers learned more about Nemo's character. He showed calm courage and **remarkable**⁽⁶⁾ leadership, yet also a cold **indifference**⁽⁷⁾ to human life.

Aronnax began to admire Nemo but at the same time fear him.

The ocean, though beautiful, was also full of threats⁽⁸⁾ and dangers **2**. For Aronnax it was a school of wonder; for Nemo it was a battlefield; for Ned Land it remained a prison. The tension among them grew as the voyage continued.

Suggested Questions

- 1 What was the first major danger the Nautilus faced ?



Suggested Questions

- 2 What was the ocean also full of, besides being beautiful ?

(1) حبار	(2) شجاع / لا يخاف	(3) جهد	(4) تحت / أسفل
(5) رحمة	(6) مدهش	(7) لا مبالاة / عدم اهتمام	(8) تهديدات



Questions and answers

on Chapter Four

1 Open-ended Questions and their answers

أسئلة مقالية بإجاباتها

1. What dangers did the Nautilus face during its journey ?

١. ما الأخطار التي واجهتها غواصة «Nautilus» أثناء رحلتها ؟

- It was attacked by a giant squid and trapped beneath thick ice.

- هاجمها حبار عملاق، وعلقت تحت جليد سميك.

2. **AB** How did the crew manage to survive the attacks from the giant squid ?

٢. كيف نجا الطاقم من هجوم الحبار العملاق ؟

- By fighting bravely with axes and harpoons.

- بالقتال بشجاعة مستخدمين الفؤوس والرماح.

3. Who finally killed the monster ?

٣. من الذي قتل الوحش في النهاية ؟

- Ned Land killed it with his harpoon.

- «Ned Land» قتله برمح.

4. **SB** What was Captain Nemo's role in facing the dangers on the submarine ?

٤. ما دور القبطان «Nemo» في مواجهة الأخطار على الغواصة ؟

- He showed courage and calm leadership, guiding his crew through danger.

- أظهر شجاعة وقيادة هادئة، في قيادة طاقمه خلال الخطر.

5. What happened when the submarine was trapped under the ice ?

٥. ماذا حدث عندما علقت الغواصة تحت الجليد ؟

- The crew worked hard to break a path to the surface.

- عمل الطاقم بجهد لفتح طريق إلى السطح.

6. Why did the crew feel desperate in the ice ?

٦. لماذا شعر الطاقم باليأس أثناء وجودهم تحت الجليد ؟

- Because oxygen was running low and they feared death.

- لأن الأكسجين كان ينفذ وخافوا من الموت.

7. What did Nemo do when warships appeared on the surface ?

٧. ماذا فعل «Nemo» عندما ظهرت السفن الحربية على السطح ؟

- He attacked them without mercy and sank them.

- هاجمها بلا رحمة وأغرقها.

8. What did the passengers learn about Nemo's character ?

٨. ماذا تعلّم الركّاب عن شخصية «Nemo» ؟

- He was a great leader but indifferent to human life.

- كان قائداً عظيماً لكنه غير مبالٍ بحياة البشر.

9. Why did Aronnax both admire and fear Nemo ?

٩. لماذا كان «Aronnax» معجباً بـ «Nemo» ويخافه في الوقت نفسه ؟

- He admired his intelligence and bravery but feared his coldness.

- لأنه أعجب بذكائه وشجاعته، لكنه خاف من قسوته.

10. **SB** What can we learn from Captain Nemo's leadership in dangerous situations ?

١٠. ما الذي يمكن أن نتعلمه من قيادة القبطان «Nemo» في المواقف الخطرة ؟

- We learn to stay calm, work together, and face danger with courage.

- نتعلم أن نتحلّى بالهدوء ونعمل معًا ونواجه الخطر بشجاعة.

11. How did each man view the ocean differently ?

١١. كيف رأى كل رجل المحيط بطريقة مختلفة ؟
For Aronnax it was, a school of wonder but for Nemo it was a battlefield and for Ned Land it was a prison.

- كانت مدرسة للدهشة بالنسبة لـ «Aronnax» - نيمو: ساحة معركة - نيد لاند: سجن.

12. What was the final feeling among the men as the voyage continued ?

١٢. ما الشعور النهائي بين الرجال مع استمرار الرحلة ؟

- The tension grew between them, mixing admiration with fear.

- ازداد التوتر بينهم، ممزوجًا بالإعجاب والخوف.

2 Critical thinking questions and suggested answers أسئلة التفكير النقدي وإجاباتها المقترحة

1. **SB** If you were a crew member, how would you have reacted to the dangers described in the text ?

١. إذا كنت أحد أفراد الطاقم، كيف كنت ستتفاعل مع الأخطار المذكورة في النص ؟

- I would feel scared but try to stay calm and help the crew.

- سأشعر بالخوف، لكنني سأحاول أن أبقي هادئًا وأساعد بقية الطاقم.

2. Why do you think Captain Nemo was able to stay calm during such difficult situation ?

٢. لماذا تعتقد أن القبطان «Nemo» استطاع أن يبقى هادئًا في موقف صعب كهذا ؟

- Because he trusted his ship and his crew.

- لأنه كان يثق في سفينته وطاقمه.

3. **SB** Do you think Captain Nemo's calmness was a key factor in their survival? Why/Why not ?

٣. هل تعتقد أن هدوء القبطان «Nemo» كان عامل مهمًا في نجاتهم؟ ولماذا ؟

- Yes, because it helped everyone stay focused and act wisely.

- نعم، لأنه ساعد الجميع على التركيز والتصرف بحكمة.

4. **SB** If Captain Nemo had panicked, how might the crew's chances of survival have changed ?

٤. إذا كان القبطان «Nemo» قد أصيب بالذعر، كيف كانت ستتغير فرص نجاة الطاقم ؟

- The crew might have made mistakes and failed to escape.

- ربما كان سيرتكب الطاقم أخطاءً ويفشل في الهروب.

5. Do you think it was right for Nemo to risk the crew's lives when fighting the squid? Why ?

٥. هل كان من الصواب أن يعرض «Nemo» حياة الطاقم للخطر عندما قاتل الحبار؟ ولماذا ؟

- No, because they could have killed them.

- لا، لأنهم ربما سيتعرضون للقتل.

3 MCQs Questions and answers

تدريبات وإجاباتها النموذجية

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :	Answers
1 The submarine was attacked by a giant a. whale b. shark c. squid d. octopus	c. squid
2 killed the monster bravely. a. Nemo b. Conseil c. Aronnax d. Ned Land	d. Ned Land
3 The crew worked hard to break a in the ice to the surface. a. bridge b. path c. land d. hole	b. path
4 When warships appeared on the surface, Nemo a. ran away b. felt comfortable c. attacked them d. helped them	c. attacked them
5 Nemo showed calm and courage yet also a cold indifference to a. the crew b. dangers c. scientific research d. human life	d. human life
6 The ocean was a for Nemo. a. battlefield b. school c. path d. prison	a. battlefield



احرص على اقتناء

كتاب EL-MOASSER

في اللغة الإنجليزية

امح ثقتك لمن يستحق

General Exercises



On Chapter 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The Nautilus was attacked by a
a. shark b. squid c. whale d. turtle
2. What did the passengers learn about Captain Nemo?
a. He is lazy b. He is always happy
c. He is brave and calm d. He depends on others
3. The submarine got stuck under
a. rocks b. ice c. sand d. seaweed
4. How did Ned Land feel under the sea?
a. Free b. Happy
c. Trapped like a prisoner d. Excited
5. The crew feared losing
a. fuel b. oxygen c. food d. light
6. How did Aronnax feel about the ocean?
a. Boring b. Useless
c. A school of wonder d. Dark and scary
7. What did Nemo do when warships appeared?
a. Escaped quickly b. Attacked without mercy
c. Asked for help d. Hid underwater
8. Captain Nemo showed
a. fear b. calmness c. confusion d. anger
9. The learned much about Nemo's character.
a. harpoons b. passengers c. pearls d. monsters
10. began to admire Nemo, but at the same time he feared him.
a. Jules b. Ned Land c. Aronnax d. Conseil

2 Answer the following questions :

1. **SB** What was the main risk faced by Captain Nemo and his crew?

.....

2. Why did the crew feel desperate while the submarine was trapped under the ice?

.....

3. How did the Nautilus finally escape from the ice?

.....

4. **SB** Do you think Captain Nemo's calmness was a key factor in their survival? Why or why not?

.....

5. **AB** How would you describe the relationship between Captain Nemo and his crew ?

.....

6. Why do you think Aronnax enjoyed living on the Nautilus although it was full of threats?

.....

7. What did Captain Nemo do when warships appeared above them?

.....

8. Why did Aronnax admire Nemo but also fear him at the same time?

.....

9. In your opinion, what was the biggest danger of staying on the Nautilus?

.....

10. **SB** How did Captain Nemo react to the situation ?

.....



SB Pages 81 & 82

Chapter

5

► Secrets of Captain Nemo

I

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

determined	مُصمَّم / عازم	hesitation	تردُّد	graveyard	مقبرة
wealth	ثروة	cruelty	قسوة	determination	إصرار / عزيمة
sorrow	حزن	hesitate	يتردد	escape	هروب

Extra Vocabulary

argue	يجادل	attack	يهاجم / هجوم	deepen	بتعمَّق
confirm	يؤكد	torn	مُمزَّق / حائر بين أمرين	hidden	مخفى

II

Main Points on chapter 5

Escape to Freedom

1. Aronnax became **determined**⁽¹⁾ to learn the truth about Nemo.
2. Nemo was a man of **wealth**⁽²⁾, education, and sorrow.
3. Nemo kept his past **hidden**⁽³⁾ from everyone.
4. He attacked warships to fight against **cruelty**⁽⁴⁾.
5. To Aronnax, Nemo was **brave**⁽⁵⁾ and **mysterious**⁽⁶⁾.
6. Ned Land planned **escape**⁽⁷⁾.
7. Aronnax was **torn**⁽⁸⁾ between scientific discovery and freedom.
8. Conseil remained calm and **loyal**⁽⁹⁾ to Aronnax.
9. The **graveyard**⁽¹⁰⁾ of sunken ships increased the mystery of Nemo.

(1) عازم

(2) ثروة

(3) مخفى

(4) قسوة

(5) شجاع

(6) غامض

(7) هروب

(8) مُمزَّق / حائر

(9) وفى / مخلص

(10) مقبرة



Text of chapter 5

Secrets of Captain Nemo

As the Nautilus traveled across the world's oceans, Aronnax became more **determined**⁽¹⁾ to learn the truth about Nemo **1**. The captain was clearly a man of **wealth**⁽²⁾, education, and **sorrow**⁽³⁾, but he kept his past **hidden**⁽⁴⁾.

Nemo's actions sometimes confirmed that. He attacked warships without **hesitation**⁽⁵⁾, claiming to fight against **cruelty**⁽⁶⁾.

Yet he never told the **details**⁽⁷⁾ of his personal story. To Aronnax, Nemo was both brave and **mysterious**⁽⁸⁾.

Meanwhile, Ned Land planned escape. He **argued**⁽⁹⁾ that no man had the right to keep them prisoners, no matter how wonderful the submarine. Aronnax **hesitated**⁽¹⁰⁾, **torn**⁽¹¹⁾ between scientific discovery and freedom. Conseil remained calm and **loyal**⁽¹²⁾ to his master.

One evening, as Nemo guided the submarine through a **graveyard**⁽¹³⁾ of sunken ships, Aronnax realized the captain saw himself as part of the dead world **beneath the waves** **2**. The mystery of Nemo deepened, but so did the companions' **determination**⁽¹⁴⁾ to find a way home.

Suggested Questions

- 1 What did Aronnax become more determined to learn ?



Suggested Questions

- 2 What did Aronnax realize about the captain in the sunken ship graveyard ?

(7) تفاصيل	(6) قسوة	(5) تردّد	(4) مخفي	(3) حزن	(2) ثروة	(1) مُصمّم / عازم
(14) عزيمة	(13) مقبرة	(12) وفي / مخلص	(11) حائر	(10) يتردد	(9) يجادل	(8) غامض



Questions and answers

on Chapter Five

أسئلة مقالية بإجاباتها

1 Open-ended Questions and their answers

1. Who became more determined to learn the truth about Captain Nemo ?

١. من أصبح أكثر إصرارًا لمعرفة الحقيقة عن القبطان «Nemo» ؟
 - Aronnax became more determined.
 - أصبح «Aronnax» أكثر إصرارًا.

2. **SB** How did Nemo's actions confirm people's thoughts about him ?

٢. كيف أكدت أفعال «Nemo» أفكار الناس عنه ؟
 - He attacked warships without hesitation, which confirmed he was brave but also cruel.
 - هاجم السفن الحربية بلا تردد، مما أكد أنه كان شجاعًا لكنه أيضًا قاسٍ.

3. **AB** What did Ned Land decide to do while living on the Nautilus ?

٣. ماذا قرر «Ned Land» أن يفعل أثناء حياته على «Nautilus» ؟
 - He planned to escape because he thought they were prisoners.
 - خطط للهروب لأنه اعتقد أنهم سجناء.

4. Why did Ned Land believe they were prisoners, not guests ?

٤. لماذا اعتقد «Ned Land» أنهم سجناء وليسوا ضيوفًا ؟
 - Because Nemo didn't allow them to go back to land.
 - لأن «Nemo» لم يسمح لهم بالعودة إلى اليابسة.

5. **SB** How did Aronnax feel when he saw the graveyard of sunken ships ?

٥. كيف شعر «Aronnax» عندما رأى مقبرة السفن الغارقة ؟
 - He felt sad and more curious about Nemo's secrets.

6. What did Aronnax feel torn between ?

٦. ماذا كان «Aronnax» يشعر أنه ممزق بين ؟
 - Between scientific discovery and freedom.
 - بين الاكتشاف العلمي والحرية.

7. How did Conseil behave during the difficulties ?

٧. كيف تصرف «Conseil» أثناء الصعوبات ؟
 - He stayed calm and loyal to Aronnax.
 - ظل هادئًا ومخلصًا لـ «Aronnax».

8. **SB** What mystery about Nemo deepened as the story went on ?

٨. ما السر الذي ازداد غموضًا حول «Nemo» مع تقدم الأحداث ؟
 - His past and his reason for living underwater remained unknown.

9. Why did Aronnax admire Nemo despite his cruelty ?

٩. لماذا أعجب «Aronnax» بـ «Nemo» رغم قسوته ؟
 - Because Nemo was brave and mysterious.
 - لأن «Nemo» كان شجاعًا وغموضًا.

10. What did Nemo fight against in the world ?

- He fought against cruelty.

١٠. ضد ماذا كان «Nemo» يقاتل في العالم ؟

- كان يقاتل ضد القسوة.

11. How did the graveyard affect Aronnax's thoughts ?

- It increased his curiosity about Nemo.

١١. كيف أثرت مقبرة السفن على أفكار «Aronnax» ؟

- زادت فضوله حول «Nemo».

2 Critical thinking questions and suggested answers أسئلة التفكير النقدي وإجاباتها المقترحة

1. **SB** Why do you think Captain Nemo kept his past hidden ?

١. لماذا تعتقد أن القبطان «Nemo» قام بإخفاء ماضيه ؟

- Because it was full of pain and he didn't want to remember it.

- لأنه كان مليء بالألم ولا يريد تذكره.

2. **SB** Why do you think Captain Nemo chose to fight against cruelty ?

٢. لماذا تعتقد أن القبطان «Nemo» اختار القتال ضد القسوة ؟

- Because humans treated him cruelly before.

- لأن البشر عاملوه بقسوة من قبل.

3. **SB** Nemo attacked warships without hesitation. Do you think this makes him a hero or a dangerous man? Why ?

٣. هاجم «Nemo» السفن الحربية بلا تردد. هل تعتقد أن ذلك جعله بطلاً أم شخص خطير ؟ ولماذا ؟

- A hero to the sea, but dangerous to men on land.

- كان بطلاً تجاه البحر ولكن خطير على البشر على اليابسة.

- I think it makes him a dangerous man because they didn't attack him.

- اعتقد ستجعله شخص خطر لأن السفن لم تهاجمه.

4. **SB** Conseil was torn between discovery and freedom. If you were in his place, which would you choose, and Why ?

٤. كان «Conseil» ممزقاً بين الاكتشاف والحرية. ماذا ستختار إذا كنت مكانه ؟ ولماذا ؟

- I would choose freedom because it is more important.

- سأختار الحرية لأنها أكثر أهمية.

5. Why do you think Nemo saw the graveyard of ships as part of his world ?

٥. لماذا تعتقد أن «Nemo» رأى مقبرة السفن كجزء من عالمه ؟

- Because he felt connected to those who suffered like him.

- لأنه يشعر بأنه مرتبط بمن عانوا مثله.

6. What does Ned Land's attitude tell you about his character ?

٦. ماذا يخبرك موقف «Ned Land» عن شخصيته ؟

- He loves freedom and refuses to give up.

- يحب الحرية ويرفض الاستسلام.

7. **SB** How does the graveyard of ships increase the mystery of Captain Nemo ?

٧. كيف تزيد مقبرة السفن من غموض القبطان «Nemo» ؟

- It shows that he has painful memories he doesn't share.

- أنها تدل على أنه يحمل ذكريات مؤلمة لا يبوح بها.

3 MCQs Questions and answers

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :	Answers
1 was determined to learn the truth about Nemo. a. Conseil c. Verne b. Ned Land d. Aronnax	d. Aronnax
2 Captain Nemo was a man of wealth, education, and a. determination c. hesitation b. sorrow d. humor	b. sorrow
3 Nemo attacked without hesitation. a. submarines c. warships b. towers d. waves	c. warships
4 Ned planned to a. lead c. escape b. discover underworld d. kill Nemo	c. escape
5 Aronnax was torn between scientific discovery and a. Nemo c. his family b. wealth d. freedom	d. freedom
6 Nemo guided the submarine through a of sunken ships. a. graveyard c. home b. museum d. world	a. graveyard

احرص على اقتناء

EL-MOASSER كتر

اللغة الإنجليزية

امنح ثقتك لمن يستحق



General Exercises



On Chapter 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. **SB** Captain Nemo spoke passionately against
a. wealth b. injustice c. education d. discovery
2. Aronnax became more to learn the truth about Nemo.
a. angry b. determined c. careless d. weak
3. **SB** To Aronnax, Nemo seemed both brave and
a. boring b. loyal c. mysterious d. supportive
4. Ned Land believed they were on the Nautilus.
a. guests b. prisoners c. workers d. visitors
5. **SB** Nemo attacked without hesitation.
a. warships b. submarines c. islands d. whales
6. Conseil remained to Aronnax.
a. lazy b. loyal c. confused d. afraid
7. Aronnax felt between science and freedom.
a. torn b. calm c. excited d. bored
8. The Nautilus passed a of sunken ships.
a. city b. beach c. graveyard d. cave
9. Nemo kept his past completely
a. open b. hidden c. funny d. beautiful
10. Aronnax realized that Nemo saw himself as part of the
a. underground b. prison
c. dead world d. scientific research

2 Answer the following questions :

1. Why did Aronnax become more determined to learn about Captain Nemo?

.....

2. How did Aronnax describe Captain Nemo in this chapter?

.....

3. **AB** Why do you think Nemo didn't tell others about his past?

.....

4. Why did Ned Land believe they were prisoners on the Nautilus?

.....

5. How did Aronnax feel about staying underwater ?

.....

6. What did the graveyard of sunken ships make Aronnax think about Nemo?

.....

7. Why did Aronnax feel confused?

.....

8. What does Nemo's fight against warships tell us about his view of the world?

.....

9. Do you think Captain Nemo is a good leader? Why / Why not?

.....

10. If you were on the Nautilus, would you try to escape like Ned Land? Why / Why not?

.....



SB Pages 96 & 98

Chapter

6

► Escape to Freedom

I

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

craft	مركب صغير	brilliance	تألّق / عبقرية	isolation	عزلة
exhausted	مُجهد / مرهق	mankind	البشريّة	vast	واسع / شاسع
half-conscious	شبه فاقد للوعي	ambition	طموح	companion	رفيق

Extra Vocabulary

lower	يخفض / ينزل	threaten	يهدّد	solid	صلب / قوي
drift	ينجرف / ينزلق مع التيار	near	يقترّب	incredible	لا يُصدق / مذهل
crash	يصطدم / يتحطم	dawn	فجر		

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

weak	delicate and easily damaged	ضعيف
exhausted	feeling extremely tired or loss of energy	مرهق
explore	to journey or travel over or through	يستكشف
wonders	amazing things	عجائب

II

Main Points on chapter 6

Escape to Freedom

1. The Nautilus neared the **coasts**⁽¹⁾ of Europe after many months.
2. The three companions used a small **craft**⁽²⁾ to escape during a strong storm.
3. They drifted away while waves **threatened**⁽³⁾ to break their boat.
4. At dawn, they reached the **shore**⁽⁴⁾, exhausted and **half-conscious**⁽⁵⁾.
5. Aronnax wrote about the **brilliance**⁽⁶⁾ of Captain Nemo and their adventures.
6. Aronnax never learned the full truth about Nemo's past.
7. The lesson of the story is : human curiosity and knowledge can achieve wonders.
8. It also tells us that **ambition**⁽⁷⁾ mixed with sorrow may lead to **isolation**⁽⁸⁾.

(1) السواحل

(2) قارب صغير

(3) هدد

(4) الشاطئ

(5) شبه واعي

(6) براعة / عبقرية

(7) الطموح

(8) عزلة



Text of chapter 6

Escape to Freedom

At last, after many months, the Nautilus neared the **coasts**⁽¹⁾ of Europe. Ned Land saw this as a chance to escape. During a strong **storm**⁽²⁾, the three companions secretly lowered a small boat into the sea. **1**

They drifted away, because of the storm, yet driven by the hope of freedom.

The night was long and dangerous. Waves **crashed**⁽³⁾ over them, and the wind threatened to damage their weak **craft**⁽⁴⁾.

But at dawn, **exhausted**⁽⁵⁾ and **half-conscious**⁽⁶⁾ **2**, they reached the safety of a **shore**⁽⁷⁾. For the first time in many months, they felt solid ground under their feet.

Aronnax later wrote down their incredible adventures: the wonders of the sea, the dangers they had faced, and the strange **brilliance**⁽⁸⁾ of Captain Nemo. He never discovered the full truth about Nemo's past, nor what became of the Nautilus. Did it still explore the depths, hidden from **mankind**⁽⁹⁾, or had it crashed in the storm?

The story closed not with final answers but with a lesson: Human curiosity and knowledge are powerful and can achieve wonders. Yet ambition mixed with **sorrow**⁽¹⁰⁾ may lead to isolation. The ocean remains vast and mysterious, holding secrets beyond our reach.

Suggested Questions

- 1 How did the companions manage to leave the submarine?

Suggested Questions

- 2 What was their physical condition when they reached the shore?



(5) مرهق	(4) قارب صغير	(3) تحطم/اصطدم	(2) عاصفة	(1) السواحل
(10) حزن	(9) البشرية / الإنسانية	(8) براعة/عبقرية	(7) شاطئ	(6) شبه واعى



Questions and answers

on Chapter Six

1 Open-ended Questions and their answers

أسئلة مقالية بإجاباتها

1. Why did Ned Land think it was the right time to escape ?

١. لماذا اعتقد "Ned Land" أن الوقت مناسب للهروب ؟

- Because the Nautilus neared the coasts of Europe.

- لأن "Nautilus" اقتربت من سواحل أوروبا.

2. **SB** Why did Aronnax and his companions choose to escape despite the dangers they faced ?

٢. لماذا اختار "Aronnax" ورفاقه الهروب رغم الأخطار التي واجهوها ؟

- Because they wanted freedom more than anything else.

- لأنهم أرادوا الحرية أكثر من أي شيء آخر.

3. How did the storm make their escape more difficult ?

٣. كيف جعلت العاصفة هروبهم أكثر صعوبة ؟

- Waves crashed over them, and the wind threatened to damage their boat.

- صدمتهم الأمواج الضخمة والرياح كانت تهددهم بتدمير القارب.

4. **SB** How did the storm affect the companions' journey and what challenges did it present ?

٤. كيف أثرت العاصفة على رحلة الرفقاء وما التحديات التي سببتها ؟

- It made it dangerous.

- جعلت الرحلة خطيرة.

5. **SB** How did the three companions feel when they finally reached the shore ?

٥. كيف شعر الرفاق الثلاثة عندما وصلوا للشاطئ ؟

- They felt safe and happy to touch solid ground again.

- شعروا بالأمان والسعادة لملامسة الأرض الصلبة مجددًا.

6. **SB** What did Aronnax write about ?

٦. ماذا كتب "Aronnax" عن ؟

- He wrote about the wonders and dangers of the sea and Nemo's brilliance.

- كتب عن عجائب البحر ومخاطره وعبقريّة «Nemo».

7. Why didn't Aronnax know the full truth about Nemo ?

٧. لماذا لم يعرف "Aronnax" الحقيقة الكاملة عن "Nemo" ؟

- Because Nemo always kept his past hidden.

- لأن "Nemo" أخفى ماضيه دائمًا.

8. What question worried Aronnax about the Nautilus ?

٨. ما السؤال الذي حير "Aronnax" بشأن "Nautilus" ؟

- Whether it was still exploring the depths or crashed in the storm.

- هل ما زالت تستكشف الأعماق أم تحطمت في العاصفة.

2 Critical thinking questions and suggested answers أسئلة التفكير النقدي وإجاباتها المقترحة

1. **SB** What do you think Aronnax meant by "the ocean remains vast and mysterious" ?

١. ماذا قصد "Aronnax" بعبارة "المحيط شاسع وغامض" ؟
- That the sea is full of unknown secrets humans cannot reach.
- إن البحر مليء بالأسرار المجهولة التي لا نصل إليها.

2. **SB** Why do you think Captain Nemo chose to isolation instead of interacting with the world ?

٢. لماذا تعتقد أن القبطان "Nemo" اختار العزلة بدلاً من التفاعل مع العالم ؟
- I think he believed humans on land were cruel, and isolation protected him from pain.
- أعتقد لأنه اعتقد أن البشر على اليابسة قساة، وأن العزلة تحميه من الألم.

3. Why did Aronnax agree to escape even though the plan was risky ?

٣. لماذا وافق "Aronnax" على الهروب رغم أن الخطة كانت خطيرة ؟
- Because he felt trapped for months and wanted his freedom back.
- لأنه شعر بأنه سجين لعدة أشهر وأراد استعادة حريته.

4. How did the storm make escaping both dangerous and possible at the same time ?

٤. كيف جعلت العاصفة الهروب خطيرًا وممكن في الوقت نفسه ؟
- It was about to damage their boat, but it also pushed them far away from the Nautilus.
- لأنها كادت تدمر مركبهم لكنها ساعدتهم على الابتعاد عن "Nautilus".

5. Why do you think the companions felt an emotional relief when they stepped on solid land ?

٥. لماذا شعر الرفاق براحة عاطفية عند وصولهم إلى اليابسة ؟
- Because they finally felt safe and free after struggling for so long at sea.
- لأنهم شعروا بالأمان والحرية بعد معاناة طويلة في البحر.

6. What did Aronnax hope to achieve by writing about their adventures ?

٦. ماذا أراد "Aronnax" أن يحقق عندما كتب عن مغامراتهم ؟
- He wanted people to learn from the wonders and dangers they had seen.
- أراد أن يتعلم الناس من عجائب ومخاطر البحر التي شاهدها.

7. How did the experience change Aronnax's view of the ocean ?

٧. كيف غيّرت التجربة نظرة "Aronnax" للبحر ؟
- He saw the sea as beautiful but also full of danger and mystery.
- أصبح يرى البحر جميلًا لكنه مليء بالخطر والغموض.

8. **SB** What do you think Aronnax meant by "the ocean remains vast and mysterious" ?

٨. ماذا قصد "Aronnax" بقوله "المحيط شاسع وغامض" ؟
- He believed many secrets under the sea are still unknown to humans.
- قصد أن هناك أسرارًا كثيرة تحت البحر ما زالت مجهولة للبشر.

9. How might the ending have been different if Nemo trusted the companions more ?

٩. كيف كان يمكن أن تكون النهاية مختلفة لو وثق "Nemo" بالرفاق أكثر ؟
- They might have stayed with him or helped him instead of escaping.
- ربما كانوا سيبقون معه أو يساعدونه بدلاً من الهروب.

10. What lesson can we learn from Nemo's life and choices ?

١٠. ما الدرس الذي نتعلمه من حياة "Nemo" وقراراته ؟

- That isolation, even with great knowledge and power, can lead to sadness and losing the people we care about.

- أن العزلة، حتى مع القوة والمعرفة العظيمة، قد تؤدي إلى الحزن وفقدان من نهتم بهم.

3 MCQs Questions and answers

تدريبات وإجاباتها النموذجية

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :	Answers
1 What was the main motivation of the characters when they secretly lowered a small boat into sea ? a. To escape their enemies. b. To find treasure. c. To seek freedom. d. To explore new lands.	c. To seek freedom
2 How was the weather described during their escape attempt ? a. Dangerous stormy. b. Calm and peaceful. c. Clear and sunny. d. Foggy and cloudy.	a. Dangerous and stormy
3 What happened at dawn after the storm ? a. They reached the shore. b. The boat sank. c. They were captured. d. They turned back to the submarine.	a. They reached the shore
4 What was the final lesson learned by Aronnax about human knowledge ? a. It can solve all problems. b. It cannot achieve true freedom. c. It can achieve great things but is limited. d. It is useless in the ocean.	c. It can achieve great things but is limited
5 wrote down their incredible adventures. a. Ned Land b. Captain Nemo c. Conseil d. Aronnax	d. Aronnax
6 The three companions drifted away because of the a. earthquake b. storm c. flood d. mankind	b. storm

General Exercises



On Chapter 6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. They secretly left the Nautilus in a small
a. boat b. submarine c. river d. rocket
2. **SB** What was the main motivation of the characters when they secretly lowered a small boat into the sea?
a. To escape their enemies b. To find treasure
c. To seek freedom d. To explore new lands
3. The weather during the escape was very
a. stormy b. calm c. sunny d. quiet
4. At dawn, they finally reached the
a. mountain b. road c. shore d. ship
5. Aronnax wrote about the sea's wonders and they had faced.
a. dangers b. games c. storms d. inventions
6. When Nautilus, Ned saw it as a chance to escape.
a. arrived home b. neared the coasts c. was damaged d. hit rocks
7. They reached the shore exhausted and
a. safe b. hopeful c. half-conscious d. wet
8. Ambition mixed with sorrow may lead to according to the story.
a. freedom b. peace c. wonder d. isolation
9. The managed to escape from Nautilus secretly.
a. crew b. captain c. three companions d. professors
10. Who do you think was the inventor of the Nautilus?
a. Aronnax b. Conseil c. Captain Nemo d. Ned Land

2 Answer the following questions :

1. Why did Ned Land decide that escaping during the storm was the best chance for freedom?
.....
2. **AB** How did the storm affect the companions' journey and what challenges did it present ?
.....
3. Why do you think the companions continued rowing التجديف even when they were exhausted?
.....
4. **AB** What dangers can people face in the ocean ?
.....
5. Why do you think Aronnax decided to write about the wonders and dangers they faced?
.....
6. What does Captain Nemo's silence about his past tell us about his personality and choices?
.....
7. How does the story show the power of human curiosity and ambition?
.....
8. What lesson do you think the companions learned after their escape?
.....
9. What do you think happened to Captain Nemo and the Nautilus after the storm?
.....
10. **AB** Does the sea symbolize freedom or danger in the story ? Why ?
.....

General Exercises



On story "Twenty Thousand Leagues Under The Sea"

Model 1

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The sailors claimed they had seen a huge
a. whale b. sea monster c. shark d. fish
- Ned Land valued more than anything.
a. freedom b. gold c. power d. fame
- The companions escaped during a violent
a. war b. attack c. night d. storm
- Professor Aronnax joined the Nautilus because of his
a. fear b. anger c. duty d. curiosity

B Answer the following questions :

- Why did the sailors believe the monster was dangerous ?
.....
- Why do you think the sailors wanted to prove the monster was real ?
.....

Model 2

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Conseil named every sea creature
a. slowly b. noisily c. randomly d. accurately
- During the attack, Captain Nemo stayed
a. angry b. calm c. afraid d. silent
- After the storm, the companions reached the
a. shore b. island c. ship d. harbor
- The passengers learned more about Nemo's through dangers.
a. family b. fear c. character d. hobby

B Answer the following questions :

- What did the crew see through the observation windows ?
.....
- What can we learn from Captain Nemo's calmness in danger ?
.....

Model 3

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Captain Nemo spoke passionately against
a. greed b. war c. injustice d. slavery
2. The three companions secretly lowered a small into the sea.
a. net b. rope c. anchor d. boat
3. A was launched to capture or kill the beast .
a. design b. voyage c. submarine d. harpooner
4. Nautilus was powered by so it could travel long distances.
a. wind b. water c. electricity d. money

B Answer the following questions :

1. Why did Captain Nemo attack warships ?
.....
2. Why do you think Nemo kept Aronnax and his friends on the Nautilus ?
.....

Model 4

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Professor Aronnax was a French invited to join the voyage.
a. captain b. harpooner c. marine scientist d. ruler
2. When warships appeared on the surface, Nemo
a. ran away b. joined them c. went down d. attacked them
3. After many months, the three companions
a. had a chance to escape b. used to diving
c. got sick d. died
4. Ned Land became because he missed the open air.
a. hopeful b. calm c. curious d. impatient

B Answer the following questions :

1. How did the storm affect their escape ?
.....
2. What can we learn from Ned Land's wish for freedom ?
.....

Model 5

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The companions saw bright under the sea.
a. fish b. coral c. rocks d. ships
2. Nemo attacked without hesitation.
a. warships b. whales c. islands d. submarines
3. The ocean was a for Ned Land.
a. prison b. wonder c. battlefield d. trip
4. When they fired their cannon and harpoons, the monster
a. attacked them b. ran away
c. hit their ship d. jumped out of water

B Answer the following questions :

1. Who killed the giant squid ?
.....
2. If you were Ned, would you try to escape like him ? Why ?
.....

Model 6

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Although Ned was excited at first, he missed
a. his family b. nature c. land animals d. freedom
2. They discovered that the mysterious creature was a
a. cannon b. bird c. submarine d. shark
3. Professor Aronnax accepted to live on Nautilus because of
a. loyalty b. freedom c. scientific discovery d. dangers
4. A journey took them through a/an of strange plants.
a. underwater forest b. magic land c. modern world d. high tower

B Answer the following questions :

1. What happened during the squid attack ?
.....
2. Why do you think Nemo hid his past ?
.....

Model 7

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The monster had a body.
a. thin b. soft c. steel-like d. wide
- Ned Land valued most.
a. freedom b. gold c. science d. comfort
- was a loyal servant to his master.
a. Aronnax b. Jules c. Conseil d. Nemo
- Nemo invited his on diving voyages.
a. family b. soldiers c. crew d. guests

B Answer the following questions :

1. Why did Captain Nemo attack warships ?

.....

2. Why do you think Nemo stayed calm in danger ?

.....

Model 8

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The crew faced a giant in the deep sea
a. whale b. squid c. shark d. fish
- Nemo stayed while giving orders during danger.
a. angry b. silent c. worried d. calm
- Nautilus was built for life
a. on land b. in wars c. beneath the sea d. after death
- Nemo told them forgotten swallowed by the waves.
a. countries b. civilizations c. languages d. submarines

B Answer the following questions :

1. How did Captain Nemo help his men survive the squid attack ?

.....

2. Why do you think Nemo chose to live under the sea ?

.....

Model 9

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Nemo showed his guests from the sea.
a. creatures b. prisoners c. treasures d. journeys
2. Ned Land was a Canadian
a. harpooner b. scientist c. pilot d. servant
3. helped Aronnax record creatures accurately.
a. Ned Land b. Nemo c. Nautilus d. Conseil
4. Nemo was a brave and wise
a. harpooner b. scientist c. leader d. teacher

B Answer the following questions :

1. How was life on the Nautilus ?

.....

2. What does the story teach us about human knowledge ?

.....

Model 10

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Professor Aronnax described the sea as full of
a. peace b. enemies c. secrets d. storms
2. Nemo's leadership during danger was
a. angry b. weak c. fearful d. calm
3. Captain Nemo was the of the Nautilus.
a. guard b. commander c. harpooner d. servant
4. Nemo's silence about his filled the companions with curiosity and worry.
a. ship b. friends c. mission d. motives

B Answer the following questions :

1. When did sailors report seeing a strange creature ?

.....

2. Why do you think some sailors doubted the monster existence ?

.....

Unit 7

General Exercises on Lessons 1&2

"Your favorite sport"

Sport is an important part of life because regular exercise builds strength, skill, and good health. Among many activities, my favorite sport is football because the game gives energy, fun, and real teamwork. Playing football improves speed, physical fitness, and mental focus. The sport also brings communities together, just like ancient games that connected people for thousands of years. Football matches create excitement, friendships, and moments that stay in memory. Watching football is a social activity that fills time with joy. Modern football has become a global event where athletes compete in peace. My favorite sport continues to inspire new generations and teaches fair play, respect, and honesty.

General Exercises on Lesson 3

"The role of sports in our life"

Sport plays a powerful role in life because regular activity builds strength, skill, and confidence. Many sports make daily routines more active and enjoyable. My view of sport focuses on how games bring people together and create real teamwork. Playing different sports improves physical fitness, supports mental health, and teaches fair play and respect. Modern sports events, such as the Olympic Games, show how athletes from many nations can unite in peace and friendship. Sport also encourages excellence and allows communities to celebrate great achievements. Watching sports gives families and friends shared moments of excitement. The role of sport continues to inspire new generations and supports healthy, positive lifestyles.

General Exercises on Lessons 5&6

"An important football match you watched"

Last month, I watched a very important football match that was full of excitement and energy. I felt the atmosphere become stronger every minute as both teams showed great skills and real teamwork. I watched the

players stay focused and try hard to score points in a fair and honest way. The match looked like a high-level competition where respect and the spirit of competition were clear. I enjoyed every moment because the game was fast, active, and full of strong ideas. Although one team lost, I saw great sportsmanship from all players. The match became a real inspiration for me and made me believe in teamwork and effort.

Test on Unit 7

"A sports event you attended with your friends"

Last week, I attended a great sports event with my friends, and the day was full of excitement and energy. I saw many teams from different places show their best skills and strong teamwork. The matches were fast and active, and I watched every player stay focused and play with respect and honesty. The spirit of competition made the event even more enjoyable. My friends and I cheered loudly and enjoyed the friendly atmosphere around us. The coach encouraged the players to believe in themselves and do their best. This event was a real inspiration for me because I learned that sport is not only about winning, but also about friendship and fun.

Unit 8

General Exercises on Lessons 1&2

"Your favorite festival"

Among all the celebrations in my culture, my favorite festival is the one that brings the most joy and meaning to my life. During this festival, people wear colorful clothes, prepare traditional food, and enjoy music that fills the place with happiness. My family usually has a big gathering where everyone feels connected and excited. The festival teaches important cultural values such as respect, kindness, and harmony. My favorite part is watching the beautiful decorations and the creativity people show every year. The atmosphere feels like a wonderful seasonal transformation full of positive energy. This celebration also helps younger generations learn more about our traditions. My favorite festival always reminds me how important family and culture are.

General Exercises on Lesson 3

"A custom in your family"

In my family, there is a special custom that shows our culture and brings everyone together. My family follows this tradition during important days, and it always creates a warm and friendly atmosphere. The custom honors older relatives and shows respect and care for them. My family prepares special food and offers tea or juice to guests as a sign of hospitality and generosity. This offering is not just polite; it strengthens friendship and makes everyone feel welcome. My favorite moment is when all generations sit together, share stories, and laugh. This custom keeps our traditions alive and helps my family stay connected with love, unity, and a strong community spirit.

General Exercises on Lessons 5 & 6

"Traditions in two different countries"

Traditions in different countries show how communities express their culture and values. In Egypt, families gather in Ramadan to share meals, which strengthens friendship and teaches hospitality and respect. Streets are decorated with lights, and people enjoy warm celebrations that connect generations. This tradition is a strong part of cultural identity and keeps history alive. In India, people celebrate Diwali, the Festival of Lights. Homes are decorated with candles, and families wear colorful clothes. Music and joy fill the streets, and the celebration brings happiness to children and adults. Although these traditions are different, both bring people together, create harmony, and remind everyone of the importance of love, sharing, and community.

Test on Unit 8

"A family tradition you celebrate"

One family tradition I celebrate every year is a special gathering that brings love and happiness to my home. During this tradition, I help my family prepare delicious food and welcome relatives with warm hospitality. We decorate the house with colorful lights, which creates a joyful atmosphere. I enjoy sitting with older generations and listening to their stories because this tradition teaches respect, kindness, and strong family values. We share meals together, laugh, and take photos to keep beautiful memories alive. This celebration also helps my family stay connected and reminds me how important culture and traditions are. Every year, this family tradition makes me feel proud and thankful.

Unit 9

General Exercises on Lessons 1&2

"Treasure hunts"

Treasure hunts are fun adventures where players search for a hidden prize by following clever clues. Each clue leads to another place, making the activity feel like a real journey. Some clues are written as riddles, while others are placed in secret spots that need careful thinking to find. Treasure hunts build important skills such as teamwork, creative problem-solving, and quick thinking. In history, treasure hunts were linked to explorers, pirates, and sailors who searched for gold, old coins, and artifacts from sunken ships. Today, treasure hunts are used in schools and parks to make learning enjoyable. The excitement of discovering the final treasure makes the whole experience unforgettable for everyone.

General Exercises on Lesson 3

"A famous person you admire"

A famous person I admire is Abu Zayd Al-Hilali, a well-known hero in Arab folk stories. I admire him because his legend shows great strength, wisdom, and courage. His adventures tell how he led his tribe with loyalty and protected people during difficult times. I like how he used brave strategies to defeat stronger enemies and how he inspired others to act with honor. His story also teaches important values such as leadership, unity, and giving hope. Even today, storytellers continue to share his tale at cultural festivals, keeping his memory alive. I admire him because his actions show that a true hero can inspire generations.

General Exercises on Lessons 5&6

"A great explorer"

One great explorer from history is Ibn Battuta, a traveler whose journey continues to inspire people today. He was born in Morocco and began his travels at the age of twenty-one, with the goal of visiting Mecca. His journey did not stop there; it continued for almost thirty years. He traveled across Africa, Asia, and parts of Europe, meeting kings and learning about different cultures. Many parts of his travels were dangerous, including storms at sea, crossing deserts, and avoiding attacks, but his curiosity kept him moving. Ibn Battuta wrote about everything he saw, sharing valuable knowledge with the world. His story inspires travelers and students to explore, learn, and follow their dreams.

Test on Unit 9

"An adventure"

Last year, I had an unforgettable adventure during a trip to a large forest. At first, the journey was exciting, and I wanted to explore new plants, animals, and hidden paths. Suddenly, a heavy storm started, and the rain made the ground slippery. I realized the situation was dangerous, so I used quick thinking to find a safe place. I built a small shelter from branches and leaves and waited until the storm passed. The next morning, I followed the sun to find a way out. This adventure taught me courage, patience, and the importance of staying calm. It also made me discover how curiosity and knowledge can help anyone survive difficult moments.

Unit 10

General Exercises on Lessons 1&2

"How animals adapt to survive in their environments"

Animals use amazing adaptations to survive in their environments, even when conditions are harsh and dangerous. In the desert, some creatures have developed incredible skills to live with extreme heat and freezing nights. The fennec fox is adapted to desert life with large ears that help it lose heat and excellent hearing to find prey underground. Desert tortoises are masters of water conservation and can store water in their bodies for long periods. Camels also show strong survival skills; they drink large amounts of water, store fat in their humps, and walk easily on hot sand during sandstorms. In colder regions, animals change their behavior, feeding habits, or migration patterns to face climate change. These adaptations help animals stay safe and alive.

General Exercises on Lesson 3

"Arctic animals"

Arctic animals live in one of the most extreme environments on Earth, where temperatures drop below -40°C and months of total darkness make survival difficult. Despite these harsh conditions, many remarkable animals have special adaptations that help them stay alive. Polar bears survive the cold with thick, white fur that gives warmth and perfect camouflage against snow. Their large paws act like snowshoes, helping them walk on thin ice

and hunt seals from miles away. Arctic foxes change their fur color each season, turning white in winter and brown in summer for protection. Male emperor penguins stand in freezing winds to keep their eggs warm. Their thick feathers create natural heat and help them survive the icy world.

Test on unit 10

"Desert animals"

Desert animals live in a place that is very hot during the day and very cold at night. The desert is a harsh area, but many animals have special ways to survive. The fennec fox has large ears that help it hear well and lose heat. It also has thick fur to protect it from the hot sand. Desert tortoises can save water in their bodies and stay underground to escape the heat. Camels have great survival skills; they drink a lot of water at once, store fat in their humps, and walk easily during sandstorms. These amazing adaptations help desert animals stay safe and live in their tough environment.

Unit 11

General Exercises on Lessons 1&2

"An unforgettable trip you have taken"

Last summer, I went on an unforgettable trip that I still remember clearly. I traveled with my family to a beautiful place with tall green trees, fresh air, and breathtaking scenery. At first, the trip was a bit challenging, but I felt excited. We set up our camping tent, cooked simple food, and enjoyed the relaxing atmosphere. While I was eating, something unexpected happened—a monkey suddenly appeared and tried to take my fruit, which made everyone laugh. Later, we met another family who shared warm blankets and stories with us. We talked for hours and became lifelong friends. This unforgettable trip taught me to enjoy nature, stay calm, and appreciate simple moments.

General Exercises on Lesson 3

"A journey you would like to take alone"

One journey I would like to take alone is a solo trip across southern Egypt. I have always dreamed of riding through the desert roads and visiting the amazing landmarks found in each governorate. The trip might be long and sometimes exhausting, but I would be determined to enjoy every moment. I want to see

wonderful sights, meet friendly people, and try local food along the way. The most memorable part for me would be watching an incredible sunset over the golden cliffs, just like the ones travelers describe in their journals. This journey would help I discover new places and find inner strength that I never knew I had.

General Exercises on Lessons 5&6

"A special trip to a historical place"

Last year, I took a special trip to one of the most famous historical places in Egypt: the Pyramids of Giza. From the moment I arrived, I felt amazed by the incredible size of the monuments and the long history behind them. While I was exploring the area, I suddenly saw the Great Sphinx, and the view was truly breathtaking. Our guide explained how ancient Egyptians built these structures thousands of years ago, which made me admire their skills even more. Later, I took photos of the pyramids glowing in the sunset. The whole trip taught me a lot about Egyptian culture and made me appreciate the treasures of the past. It was an unforgettable experience.

Test on Unit 11

"Visiting a landmark in Egypt"

Last month, I visited one of the most famous landmarks in Egypt: the Citadel of Salah El-Din in Cairo. From the moment I arrived, I felt amazed by the incredible walls and towers that have stood for hundreds of years. While I was exploring the area, I walked through old gates, beautiful mosques, and long corridors filled with history. The view of Cairo from the top was absolutely breathtaking. I learned many interesting facts about Egyptian culture and how this landmark protected the city in the past. Before leaving, I took photos of the buildings glowing in the afternoon sun. Visiting this landmark was an unforgettable experience that made me proud of Egypt's great history.

Unit 12

General Exercises on Lessons 1&2

"The qualities of a good leader"

A good leader is someone who has strong qualities that help a team succeed. A good leader is confident, which allows them to make decisions without fear. They are also fair, treating everyone with respect and giving each person a chance to share ideas. A good leader inspires others to do their best and encourages teamwork,

even during difficult moments or under pressure. Leaders use creativity to solve problems and guide the team with clear instructions. They take responsibility for their actions and support others when challenges appear. With practice and experience, leaders become stronger and more skilled. These qualities help a good leader bring success, unity, and positive change to any group.

General Exercises on Lesson 3

"What makes an effective leader?"

An effective leader is someone who helps a team work well and reach goals. A good leader communicates clearly and listens to others. They have a clear vision and know what steps to take. An effective leader keeps the team motivated and solves problems calmly. They are adaptable, ready to change plans when things get difficult. A good leader also shows kindness and respect, which helps build trust. They admit mistakes and try to learn from them. With confidence and empathy, an effective leader supports everyone and encourages teamwork. These qualities make a leader strong and help the whole team succeed.

General Exercises on Lessons 5&6

"Your personal leadership goal"

My personal leadership goal is to improve my communication skills so I can share my ideas clearly with my team. I want to focus on cooperation and help my classmates solve problems in a calm and fair way. I also hope to inspire others and encourage them to do their best. Good decision-making is important, so I will practice making choices that help the whole group. In the future, I want to be a leader who supports everyone and helps the team achieve their goals.

Test on Unit 12

"Ancient Egyptian leaders"

One great ancient Egyptian leader was Queen Hatshepsut. She was a strong and wise leader who helped Egypt grow in prosperity and peace. She built beautiful temples and important projects that became part of Egypt's great heritage. Her leadership style showed cooperation, not fighting. Another famous leader is Thutmose III, who was known for his military achievements and for bringing glory to Egypt. These leaders are still remembered today because they helped build one of the world's greatest civilizations.

الفصل الأول

غموض وحش البحر

في منتصف القرن التاسع عشر، أبلغ البحارة عبر المحيطات عن مخلوق غريب. زعمت السفن أنها شاهدت "وحشًا بحريًا" ضخمًا، يتحرك أسرع من الحيتان ويحطم السفن بقوة هائلة. وصفته الصحف بأنه مدهش ومرعب في آن واحد. تصاعد الجدل العام لدرجة أنه تم إطلاق رحلة بحرية لأسر أو قتل هذا الوحش.

دعي البروفيسور بيير أرونالكس، وهو عالم بحار فرنسي، للانضمام إلى الرحلة. كما أصبح خادمه المخلص كونسيل وصياد حيتان كندى يُدعى نيد لاند جزءًا من الطاقم. صعدوا على متن سفينة بحرية وأبحروا عبر المحيط الهادئ وبحثوا لأشهر دون نجاح. شكك بعض البحارة في وجود الوحش، بينما أصبح البعض الآخر قد نفذ صبره.

أخيرًا، في إحدى الأمسيات، ظهر شكل طويل متوهج بين الأمواج. لاحقه الطاقم بياس. أطلقت نيران المدافع والحراب. فجأة، استدار "الوحش" وضرب السفينة بجسمه الشبيه بالفولاذ. ألقى أرونالكس ورفيقاه في البحر. كافحوا من أجل البقاء، وسبحوا نحو المخلوق الغامض. ولدهشتهم، اكتشفوا أنه ليس حيوانًا على الإطلاق بل غواصة من صنع الإنسان ذات تصميم خاص. كانت مغامراتهم تحت المحيطات على وشك أن تبدأ.

الفصل الثاني

اسرى الكابتن نيمو

أدخل أرونالكس وكونسيل ونيد لاند إلى الداخل عبر باب حديدي. وهناك، التقوا بالقائد : الكابتن نيمو، رجل غامض ذو إرادة قوية ومعرفة عميقة. أوضح نيمو أن سفينته، نوتيلوس، بُنيت بالكامل للحياة تحت سطح البحر. تعمل بالطاقة الكهربائية، ويمكنها السفر لمسافات طويلة جدًا دون أن تطفوا على السطح.

رحب بهم نيمو بتعظيم، لكنه أوضح نقطة أساسية : بمجرد صعودهم على متن السفينة، لا يمكنهم العودة إلى اليابسة أبدًا. كان عليهم البقاء

معه ما داموا أحياء. قبل البروفيسور أرونالكس ذلك، وقد غمرته النزعة الفضولية العلمية، لأنه أراد أن يتعلم عن المحيط وأسراره. ظل كونسيل وفتيًا لسيدته. أما نيد لاند، الذي يُقدّر الحرية فوق كل شيء، فكان غاضبًا. وبدأ يضع خطة للهروب من نوتيلوس.

كانت الحياة على متن نوتيلوس مذهلة. بدت السفينة كقصر عائم تحت الماء، تحتوي على مكتبة ومحتف ونوافذ كبيرة لرؤية أعماق المحيط. عرض عليهم نيمو كنوزًا جمعها من البحر : اللؤلؤ والذهب والتحف القديمة أخبرهم أنه أبعد نفسه عن اليابسة. وأصر على أن البحر هو وطنه الوحيد.

وهكذا، بدأوا يشعرون بأنهم نصف سجناء ونصف ضيوف احتجزوا في رحلة مليئة بالعجائب والأخطار.

الفصل الثالث

عجائب الأعماق

أظهرت الأيام التي تلت ذلك لأرونالكس عجائب العالم تحت الماء.. نظر من خلال النوافذ الكبيرة ورأى الشعاب المرجانية تتوهج بالألوان، والأسماك بكل شكل، وحطام السفن الراقدة بصمت في قاع المحيط. دعا نيمو ضيوفه في رحلات غوص، وزودهم ببذلات خاصة سمحت لهم بالسير فوق قاع البحر.

أخذتهم إحدى هذه الرحلات عبر غابة تحت الماء من النباتات الغريبة، حيث قاموا بالصيد وجمع العينات. وأدت رحلة أخرى بهم إلى بقايا مدينة غارقة، حيث لمح نيمو إلى حضارات منسية أبتلعها الأمواج.

سجل البروفيسور أرونالكس كل شيء بعناية، مستغلًا الفرصة لدراسة الحياة البحرية بطرق لم يرقم بها أي عالم من قبل. دعمه كونسيل، مُسميًا كل كائن بدقة. لكن نيد لاند بدأ يفقد صبره. على الرغم من حماسه في البداية، إلا أنه اشتاق للحرية والهواء النقي. بالنسبة له، فإن جمال البحر لا يمكن أن يحل محل حرية اليابسة.

على الرغم من خلافاتهم، اتفق الرفاق على شيء واحد: كان الكابتن نيمو عبقرًا وغامضًا في آن واحد. كانت براعته في العلوم واضحة، لكن صمته بشأن ماضيه ودوافعه ملأهم بالفضول والقلق.

واصلت نوتيلوس حركتها، أعمق وأعمق في الغموض الأزرق للمحيط وبعيدًا عن أي شاطئ مألوف.

الفصل الرابع

المعارك والأخطار

لم تكن الحياة على متن نوتيلوس خالية من المخاطر. ففي إحدى المرات، تعرضت الغواصة لهجوم من حبار عملاق في صراع بائس على السطح. قاتل نيمو وطاقمه بشجاعة بالفؤوس والرماح. نيد لاند، الشجاع كعادته، قتل الوحش. وبجهد كبير فقط تمكنوا من الهروب من الخطر. في مرة أخرى، حوصرت الغواصة تحت الجليد السميك في القطب الجنوبي. ومع انخفاض الأكسجين، عمل الطاقم بجد لشق طريق إلى السطح. في اللحظة الأخيرة، شقت نوتيلوس طريقها بقوة للتحرر، وتنفس الرجال الهواء النقي مرة أخرى. وعندما ظهرت السفن الحربية على السطح، هاجمها نيمو بلا رحمة، وأرسلها إلى الأعماق. من خلال هذه الأخطار، تعلم الركاب المزيد عن شخصية نيمو. لقد أظهر شجاعة هادئة وقيادة رائعة، ولكنه أظهر أيضًا لامبالاة باردة تجاه الحياة البشرية.

بدأ أرونالكس يُعجب بنيمو ولكنه في نفس الوقت يخاف منه. المحيط، على الرغم من جماله، كان مليئًا أيضًا بالتهديدات والمخاطر. بالنسبة لأرونالكس، كان مدرسة للعجائب، وبالنسبة لنيمو، كان ساحة معركة. وبالنسبة لنيد لاند، ظل سجنًا. تزايد فيما بينهم مع استمرار الرحلة.

الفصل الخامس

أسرار الكابتن نيمو

بينما كانت نوتيلوس تسافر عبر محيطات العالم، أصبح أرونالكس أكثر تصميمًا على معرفة الحقيقة حول نيمو. كان القبطان بوضوح رجل ثروة وتعليم وحرز، لكنه أبقى ماضيه مخفيًا. أكدت تصرفات نيمو ذلك في بعض الأحيان. فقد هاجم سفنًا حربية دون تردد، مدعيًا أنه يحارب ضد القسوة. ومع ذلك، لم يخبر أبدًا بتفاصيل قصته الشخصية. بالنسبة لأرونالكس، كان نيمو شجاعًا وغامضًا في آن واحد.

في غضون ذلك، كان نيد لاند يخطط للهروب. وجادل بأنه لا يحق لأي رجل إبقائهم سجناء، مهما كانت الغواصة رائعة. تردد أرونالكس، ممرقًا بين الاكتشاف العلمي والحرية. وظل كونسيل هادئًا ومخلصًا لسيد.

في إحدى الأمسيات، بينما كان نيمو يقود الغواصة عبر مقبرة للسفن الغارقة، أدرك أرونالكس أن القبطان يرى نفسه كجزء من العالم الميت تحت الأمواج. تعمق غموض نيمو، ولكن كذلك تصميم الرفاق على إيجاد طريق للعودة إلى الوطن.

الفصل السادس

الهروب إلى الحرية

أخيرًا، وبعد أشهر عديدة، اقتربت نوتيلوس من سواحل أوروبا. رأى نيد لاند في ذلك فرصة للهروب. خلال عاصفة قوية، انزل الرفاق الثلاثة قاربًا صغيرًا سرًا إلى البحر. جُرفت بهم الأمواج بسبب العاصفة، لكنهم كانوا مدفوعين بأمل الحرية.

كانت الليلة طويلة وخطيرة. تلاطمت الأمواج فوقهم، وهددت الرياح بإتلاف قاربهم الضعيف. لكن مع بزوغ الفجر، وهم مرهقون وشبه واعين، وصلوا إلى بر الأمان. ولأول مرة منذ عدة أشهر، شعروا بالأرض الصلبة تحت أقدامهم.

كتب أرونالكس لاحقًا مغامراتهم المذهلة: عجائب البحر، والأخطار التي واجهوها، والعبقرية الغريبة للكابتن نيمو. لم يكتشف أبدًا الحقيقة الكاملة حول ماضي نيمو، ولا ما حلّ بغواصة نوتيلوس. هل كانت لا تزال تستكشف الأعماق. مختبئة عن البشرية، أم أنها تحطمت في العاصفة؟

لم تُختم القصة بإجابات نهائية بل بدرس: الفضول البشري والمعرفة قويان ويمكنهما تحقيق العجائب. ومع ذلك، فإن الطموح الممزوج بالحزن قد يؤدي إلى العزلة. يظل المحيط شاسعًا وغامضًا، يحمل أسرارًا تفوق متناولنا.

Notes

A series of horizontal dotted lines for writing notes, spanning the width of the page.

Notes

A series of horizontal dotted lines for writing notes, spanning the width of the page.

Notes

A series of horizontal dotted lines for writing notes, spanning the width of the page.

Notes

Handwriting practice lines consisting of 20 horizontal rows. Each row is defined by two dotted lines, with a solid line in the center of each row. The lines are evenly spaced and extend across the width of the page.

IN THIS BOOK ...

- A detailed explanation for each two lessons
- Various exercises on each part
- General exercises on each two lessons
- A brief summary of each unit
- A sample test after each unit
- **The Story:**
 - Twenty Thousand Leagues Under The Sea

الآن بالمكتبات

المعاصر
في الرياضيات
للمرحلة الإعدادية

يُصرف مجاناً مع هذا الكتاب
كراسة المعاصر للمراجعة والاختبارات



English



AL TALABA BOOKSTORE

For printing, publication & distribution

El Faggala - Cairo - Egypt

Tel.: 02/ 259 340 12 - 259 377 91

www.gpseducation.com

☎ 15014



كراسة المعاصر
للمراجعة والاختبارات

EL-MOASSER
GUIDE

English

By a group of supervisors

الصف الثالث الإعدادي الفصل الدراسي الثاني

A Week Is Enough



3rd
PREP.
2026
SECOND TERM

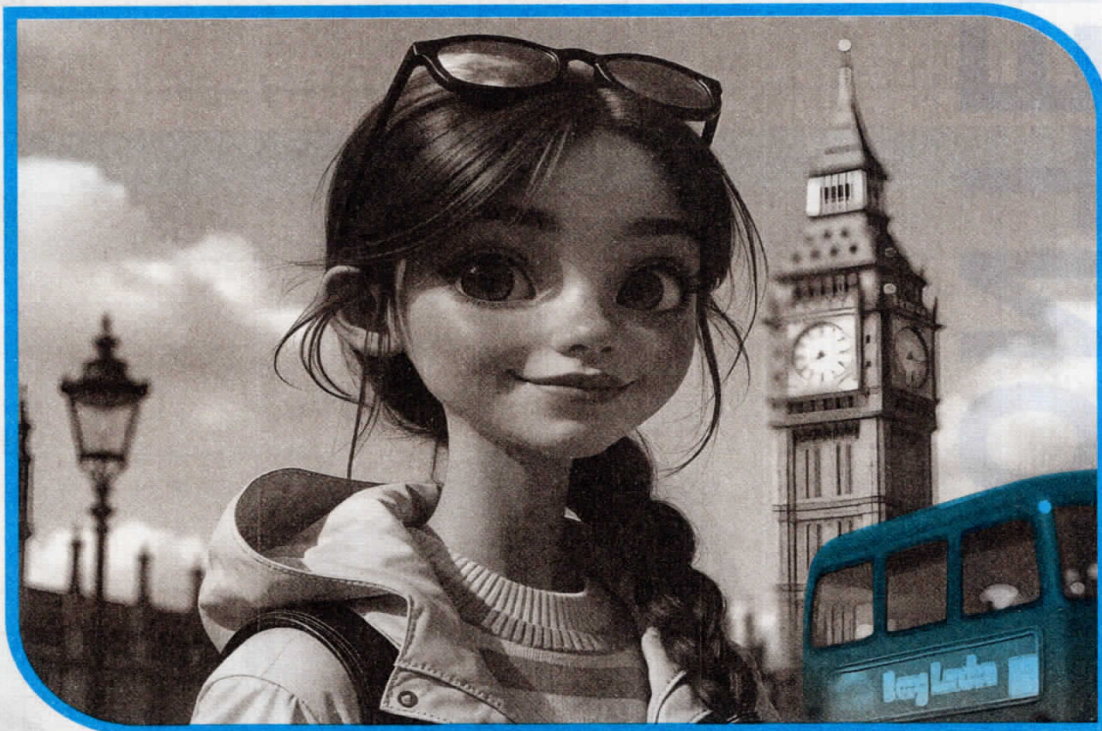


GUIDE

English

By a group of supervisors

A Week Is Enough



2026



AL TALABA BOOKSTORE

For printing, publication & distribution

El Faggala - Cairo - Egypt

Tel.: 02/ 259 340 12 - 259 377 91

www.gpseducation.com

☎ 15014



3rd PREP.
SECOND TERM

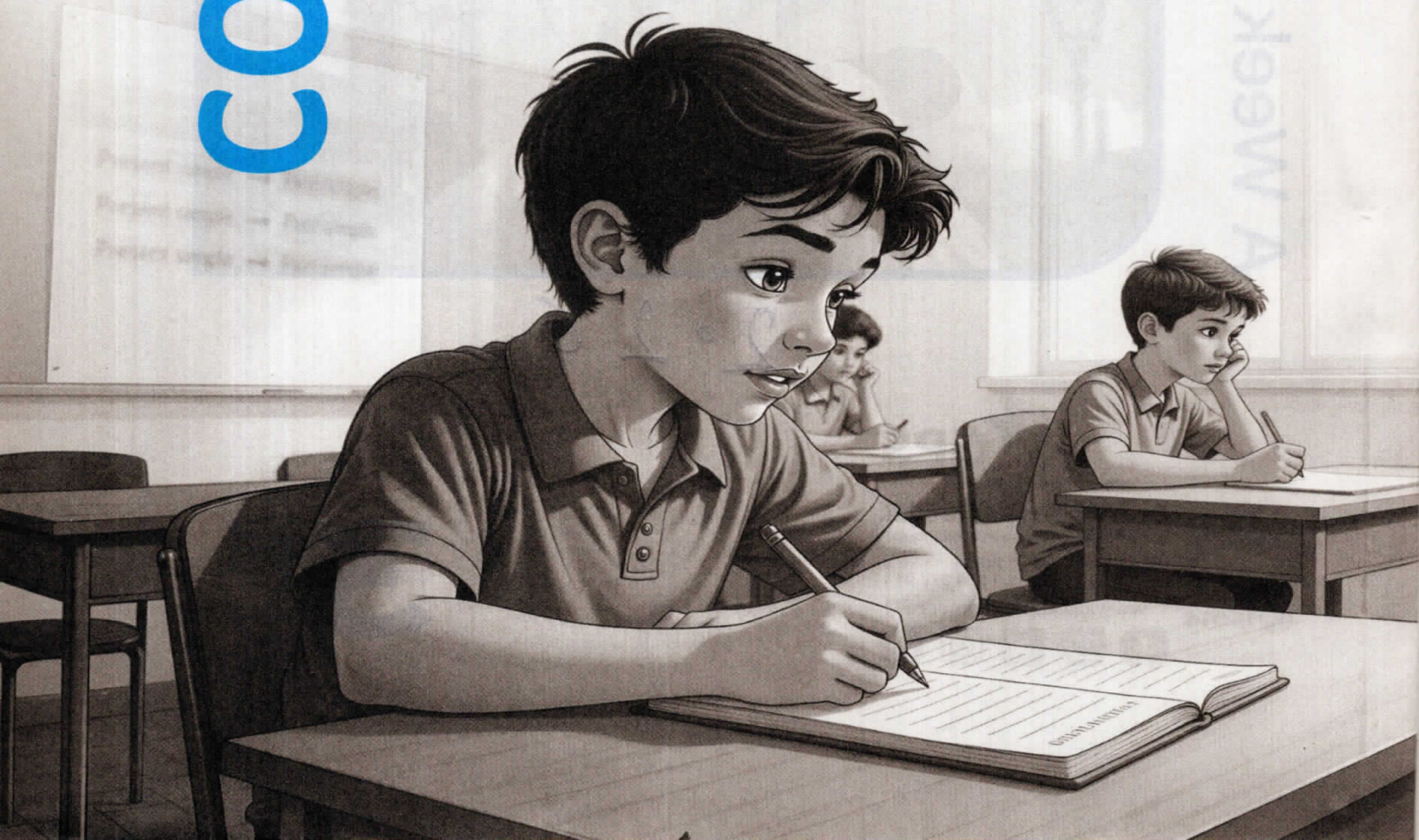
CONTENTS

► PART ONE

Dictation On Lessons 3

► PART TWO

A Week Is Enough 15



يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

Lessons 1 & 2	
(A)	(B)
..... فارس	 انتصار
..... معركة	 مكافأة / جائزة
..... ينافس	 المصارعة
champion	sportsmanship
admiration	archery
honor	fencing

Lesson 3	
(A)	(B)
..... ألعاب القوى	 تفوق / مهارة عالية
..... رياضيون	 رياضة الجمباز
..... دولة / أمة	 صداقة
continents	represent
spirit	weightlifting
united	achievements

Lessons 5 & 6	
(A)	(B)
..... إلهام / تحفيز	 بطولة / دوري
..... بطولة	 يستفيد
..... منافسة	 لائق بدنيا
team sport	semi-final
refreshed	individual sport
excitement	focused

• Read and complete the conjugation.

Present	Past	P.P.
.....	spread	spread
bring	.....	brought
begin	began	.....

• Read and complete (synonyms & antonyms).

Word	Synonym	Word	Antonym
ancient		respect	.....
strength		inspire	.....
fair		famous	.....

• Read and complete (prefixes & suffixes).

prefix / suffix	meaning	prefix / suffix	meaning
honest	بأمانة	friend	صداقة
fit	لياقة بدنية	excite	متعة

• Read and complete (collocations).

..... strength	يظهر القوة	 daily tasks	يقوم بالمهام اليومية
..... values	يبرز القيم	 focused	يشعر بالتركيز

• Read and match (Definitions)

1	fair play
2	knight
3	chariot

☐ soldier in the Middle Ages
☐ cart pulled by horses
☐ treating others honestly in games

يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

Lessons 1 & 2	
(A)	(B)
..... عادات	 احتفالات
..... ثقافة	 يجمع
..... مراسم / طقوس	 صبر
reflect	the elderly
harmony	wisdom
identity	connected

Lesson 3	
(A)	(B)
..... عادات مجتمعية	 طويل الأمد
..... كرم الضيافة	 غرض / سبب
..... ذكرى / ذاكرة	 أجيال
grave	community
alive	grand
generosity	lunar

Lessons 5 & 6	
(A)	(B)
..... خبير ثقافي	 الشعور بالهوية
..... الانتماء	 مهرجان
..... الوحدة / التماسك	 يقوى
importance	explanation
shape	exist
fast-changing	participants

• Read and complete the conjugation.

Present	Past	P.P.
tell	.....	told
.....	wore	worn
build	built	.....

• Read and complete (synonyms & antonyms).

Word	Synonym	Word	Antonym
connected		massive	.....
hospitality		harmony	.....
special		gather	.....

• Read and complete (prefixes & suffixes).

prefix / suffix	meaning	prefix / suffix	meaning
wise	حكمة	creativ	الإبداع
patien	صبر	generos	الكرم
kind	عطف	belong	الانتماء

• Read and complete (collocations).

..... respect	يعكس الاحترام	 memories	يصنع ذكريات
..... ties	يقوى الروابط	 gifts	يتبادل الهدايا
..... alive	يحافظ على بقائه حيًا	 a role	يلعب دور

• Read and match (Definitions)

1	identity	☐ the way of life of a group of people
2	culture	☐ who someone is
3	ceremony	☐ peace or balance among people or things
4	harmony	☐ special event like a wedding

يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

Lessons 1 & 2	
(A)	(B)
.....	الغاز حامض / لاذع
.....	مستكشف أسطورة
.....	قطع - أثرية كشف
treasure hunt	panic
survive	clues
shelter	hidden

Lesson 3	
(A)	(B)
.....	قبيلة وفاء / ولاء
.....	شجاعة أعداء
.....	أبطال محارب
strategies	inspire
defeat	folk
rival	fight

Lessons 5 & 6	
(A)	(B)
.....	مخاطر حب الاستطلاع / الفصول
.....	يهجم / هجوم غابة مطيرة
.....	مؤرخين معرفة
wild	respect
qualities	compass
traveler	traditions

• Read and complete the conjugation.

Present	Past	P.P.
hide	.....	hidden
fight	fought	.....
.....	led	led

• Read and complete (synonyms & antonyms).

Word	Synonym	Word	Antonym
defend		calm	.....
courage		sour	.....
loyal		hidden	.....

• Read and complete (prefixes & suffixes).

prefix / suffix	meaning	prefix / suffix	meaning
lead	قائد	valu	ذو قيمة
perform	عرض / أداء	fight	محارب

• Read and complete (collocations).

..... riddles	يحل ألغاز	 generations	يلهم الأجيال
..... lost	يضل الطريق	 skills	ينمي مهارات

• Read and match (Definitions)

1	explorer
2	artifact
3	riddle

- ☐ a question or puzzle with a hidden answer
- ☐ a piece of historical object from the past
- ☐ a person who travels to discover new places

يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

Lessons 1 & 2	
(A)	(B)
..... قاس / صعب	 حماية البيئة
..... يتكيف / يتأقلم	 باحث
..... سلوك	 مفترس
prey	adaptation
fascinated	wildlife expert
migration	tracking devices

Lesson 3	
(A)	(B)
..... سميك	 القطب الشمالي
..... تمويه / اختفاء	 موسمي
..... يمتص	 زعانف
miles	warmth
demonstrate	hatch
remarkable	vegetation

Lessons 5 & 6	
(A)	(B)
..... معرض / عرض	 موطن / بيئة [الحيوان]
..... يخزن	 معرض لخطر الانقراض
..... حاد / شديد	 يكتشف / يلاحظ
hollow	status
features	hibernate
reflect	physical

• Read and complete the conjugation.

Present	Past	P.P.
understand	understood	.....
lose	.....	lost
.....	heard	heard

• Read and complete (synonyms & antonyms).

Word	Synonym	Word	Antonym
harsh		thick	.....
conserve		extreme	.....
frozen		store	.....

• Read and complete (prefixes & suffixes).

prefix / suffix	meaning	prefix / suffix	meaning
warm	دفع	research	باحث
dark	ظلام	remark	جدير بالملاحظة
adapt	تكيف / تأقلم	flex	مرن / قابل للتغير

• Read and complete (collocations).

..... turns	يتبادل	 data	يجمع البيانات
..... warm	يحافظ على دفئة	 dangers	يواجه المخاطر

• Read and match (Definitions)

1	harsh
2	adaptations
3	predators
4	conservation

- ☐ changes that help living things survive in their environment
- ☐ rough or severe (like very hot, cold, or tough conditions)
- ☐ protecting nature and natural resources
- ☐ animals that hunt and eat other animals

يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

Lessons 1 & 2

(A)	(B)
..... يحجز	 مدى الحياة
..... غير متوقع	 رحلة سفاري
..... أعمدة	 كرم الضيافة
hiking trail	unforgettable
challenging	snorkeling
slippery	brehtaking

Lesson 3

(A)	(B)
..... بمفرده / منفرد	 عوامل جذب
..... مصمم / عازم	 دراجة نارية
..... متهور	 مرهق / متعب
memorable	landscape
southward	prove
landmark	endless

Lessons 5 & 6

(A)	(B)
..... ساحر / خلاب	 الفراعنة
..... غيور	 تجربة حياتية / خبرة
..... كنوز	 يتمكن / يدير
glowing	capture
powerful	monuments
tour	shot

• Read and complete the conjugation.

Present	Past	P.P.
.....	caught	caught
steal	stole	.....
fall	.....	fallen

• Read and complete (synonyms & antonyms).

Word	Synonym	Word	Antonym
comfortable		remote	.....
challenging		breathtaking	.....
exhausted		struggle	.....

• Read and complete (prefixes & suffixes).

prefix / suffix	meaning	prefix / suffix	meaning
..... expected	غير متوقع	memor	لا ينسى
color	ملون	amaze	مدهش

• Read and complete (collocations).

..... a plan	يضع خطة	 attractions	يوفر عوامل جذب
..... a challenge	يواجه تحدي	 friends	يكون صداقات
..... shelter	يحتمي / يلجأ لمكان آمن	 snorkeling	يمارس الغوص

• Read and match (Definitions)

1	slippery	☐ impossible to forget
2	unforgettable	☐ very beautiful, impressive, or surprising
3	breathtaking	☐ difficult in a way that tests your abilities and skills
4	challenging	☐ smooth and hard to stand on because you might slide

يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

Lessons 1 & 2	
(A)	(B)
..... قائد	 ضخم / هائل
..... تراث	 صفة / سمة
..... رخاء / ازدهار	 هجين / خليط
emphasize	marketing
campaign	civilization
judges	budget

Lesson 3	
(A)	(B)
..... فعال / مؤثر	 قابل للتكيف
..... تعاطف	 صراعات / نزاعات
..... يرشد / مرشد	 يثق / ثقة
view points	motivated
admit	modesty
earn	willingness

Lessons 5 & 6	
(A)	(B)
..... عرض تقديمي	 فصل دراسي
..... جدال / خلاف	 رسمي
..... يتعامل مع	 منظم
role	complement
schedule	coordinator
deadline	check-ins

• Read and complete the conjugation.

Present	Past	P.P.
.....	broke	broken
set	.....	set

• Read and complete (synonyms & antonyms).

Word	Synonym	Word	Antonym
immense		encourage	.....
effective		trust	.....

• Read and complete (prefixes & suffixes).

prefix / suffix	meaning	prefix / suffix	meaning
respect	يتسم بالاحترام	 agreement	خلاف
press	ضغط / جهد	support	مساند / مؤيد

• Read and complete (collocations).

..... peace	يجلب السلام	 information	يجد معلومات
..... respect	يحظى باحترام	 a difference	يحدث فارق

• Read and match (Definitions).

1	campaign	☐ farther than or outside something; more than
2	prosperity	☐ a plan to share a message and reach a goal
3	beyond	☐ state of begin successful and having enough money

A WEEK IS ENOUGH

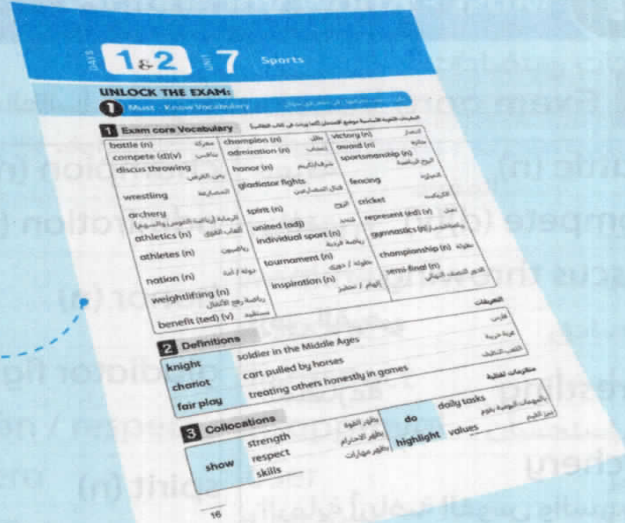
(الامتحان بين يديك)

مراجعة على المنهج بالكامل والتمكن منه في أسبوع واحد فقط

Days 1&2

Vocabulary and Language

- مراجعة على أهم المفردات اللغوية والقواعد اللغوية الهامة التي وردت في المنهج.



Days 3 & 4

General Exercises collected from SB&AB

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Scientists always _____ data before doing research.
 - keep
 - sort
 - collect
 - analyze
- He had the chance to attack his rival's weak point. The phrase "weak point" is similar in meaning to _____.
 - weakness
 - task
 - opportunity
 - lack
- The words "peace" and "war" are _____.
 - adjectives
 - verbs
 - adverbs
 - antonyms
- _____ means peace or balance among people or things.
 - Harmony
 - fight
 - argument
 - defeat

- _____ means protecting nature and natural resources.
 - Conservation
 - pollution
 - face
 - poor
- He can _____ challenges easily. He is brave.
 - swim
 - fly
 - poor
 - poor
- The word "effective" is closest in meaning to _____.
 - weak
 - successful
 - long
 - poor
- The suffix "-ly" in "clearly" changes the adjective into a(n) _____.
 - adverb
 - verb
 - noun
 - pronoun

Days 5, 6 & 7

General Exercises collected from SB&AB

- تدريبات عامة مجمعة من كتاب الطالب والتقييمات.

Days 5, 6 & 7

25 Sample Tests

- ٢٥ نموذج اختبار على المنهج بالكامل تتضمن :
- ١٥ اختبار على المنهج بالكامل من كتاب المعاصر.
- ٥ اختبارات على المنهج بالكامل مجمعة من كتاب الطالب والتقييمات.
- ٥ اختبارات لطلاب الأزهر الشريف.

UNLOCK THE EXAM:

1 Must - Know Vocabulary

مفردات يجب معرفتها - كن جاهز لأي سؤال

1 Exam core Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية الأساسية موضع الامتحان [كما وردت في كتاب الطالب]

battle (n)	معركة	champion (n)	بطل	victory (n)	انتصار
compete (d)(v)	ينافس	admiration (n)	إعجاب	award (n)	جائزة
discus throwing	رمى القرص	honor (n)	شرف / تكريم	sportsmanship (n)	الروح الرياضية
wrestling	المصارعة	gladiator fights	قتال المصارعين	fencing	المبارزة
archery	الرمية [رياضة القوس والسهم]	spirit (n)	الروح	cricket	الكريكت
athletics (n)	ألعاب القوى	united (adj)	مُتحد	represent (ed) (v)	يمثل
athletes (n)	رياضيون	individual sport (n)	رياضة فردية	gymnastics (n)	رياضة الجمباز
nation (n)	دولة / أمة	tournament (n)	بطولة / دوري	championship (n)	بطولة
weightlifting (n)	رياضة رفع الأثقال	inspiration (n)	إلهام / تحفيز	semi-final (n)	الدور النصف النهائي
benefit (ted) (v)	يستفيد				

2 Definitions

التعريفات

knight	soldier in the Middle Ages	فارس
chariot	cart pulled by horses	عربة حربية
fair play	treating others honestly in games	اللعب النظيف

3 Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

show	strength	يظهر القوة	do	daily tasks	بالمهام اليومية يقوم
	respect	يظهر الاحترام	highlight	values	يبرز القيم
	skills	يظهر مهارات			

bring	communities together يوجد المجتمعات	compete	fairly يتنافس بعدالة
join	the Olympics ينضم إلى الأولمبياد	feel	calm يشعر بالهدوء
score	points يسجل نقاط		focused يشعر بالتركيز
	goals يسدد أهداف	make	friends يكون صداقات

4 Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym / Opposite المضاد
ancient قديم	very old	modern حديث
strength قوة	power	weakness ضعف
fair نزيه / عادل	honest	dishonest غير صادق
respect احترام	honor	disrespect عدم احترام
admiration إعجاب / تقدير	appreciation / respect	disapproval عدم استحسان
champion بطل	winner / hero	loser خاسر
focus يركز	concentrate	distract يشتت
inspire يلهم	motivate / encourage	discourage يحبط
famous مشهور	well-known	unknown غير معروف
united متحد	joined / connected	divided / separated مقسم / منفصل
peace سلام	harmony / calm	war / conflict حرب / صراع
active نشيط	lively / energetic	lazy / inactive غير نشيط
discipline نظام / انضباط	order / regulation	chaos / disorder فوضى

5 Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
-tion	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	competition منافسة
-ly	تحول الصفة إلى ظرف	honestly بأمانة fairly بإنصاف / بعدالة
re-	[again] تعطي معنى مرة أخرى	restart يعيد بداية
-ship	تكون الاسم	friendship صداقة sportsmanship الروح الرياضية
-ation	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	admiration إعجاب inspiration إلهام / تشجيع
-ics	تكون الاسم	athletics ألعاب القوى

- ment	تكون الاسم من الفعل	excitement	إثارة / حماس
-ed	تكون الصفة من الفعل	united focused	متحد / مُوَحَّد مركز
-ing	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	relaxing exciting	استرخاء ممتع / رائع
-ness	تكون الاسم من الصفة	fitness	لياقة بدنية

2

Extra Vocabulary for the Exam

مفردات مساعدة - كن جاهز لأي سؤال

المفردات اللغوية المساعدة في التعامل مع الورقة الامتحانية.

1

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
spread ينتشر / ينشر	spread	spread
bring يحضر	brought	brought
begin يبدأ	began	begun
teach يُعلم	taught	taught
hold يقيم	held	held

2

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

create friendship يكون / ينشئ صداقات	expect to ... يتوقع أن ...
united in friendship متحدون بروح الصداقة	in the 19 th century في القرن التاسع عشر
(be) held every four years تقام كل أربع سنوات	compete in ينافس في
keep the mind fresh يبقى العقل نشيطًا ومنعشًا	in peace في سلام

UNLOCK THE EXAM:

3 Must - Know Sentences

جمل يجب معرفتها - كن جاهز لأي سؤال

جمل كتاب الطالب مُجمعة من [نصوص الاستماع والقراءة - دروس الوحدة] التي تساعدك في تدريبات الورقة الامتحانية [الاختبار من متعدد - تصحيح الخطأ - تكملة الفراغ في القطعة - قطعة الفهم - الفقرات الإنشائية].

Mohamed Rashwan

1. Mohamed Rashwan used to be one of Egypt's most admired sports **champions**⁽¹⁾.
2. In the 1984 Olympic Games in Los Angeles, he reached the judo final **against**⁽²⁾ a strong Japanese **opponent**⁽³⁾.
3. His **rival**⁽⁴⁾ was injured at the time.
4. He **avoided**⁽⁵⁾ attacking his rival's weak point to win the gold medal.
5. He chose to compete with **honor**⁽⁶⁾.
6. Although he lost the final, he gained respect and **admiration**⁽⁷⁾.

(1) أبطال رياضيين

(2) ضد

(3) منافس

(4) خصم

(5) تجنب

(6) شرف

(7) إعجاب

The Olympic Games

1. The **Olympic Games**⁽¹⁾ are the most famous sports event in the world.
2. Today, Olympic Games are **held**⁽²⁾ every four years in different countries.
3. **Athletes**⁽³⁾ from more than 200 nations come together to compete in many sports such as football, swimming, **athletics**⁽⁴⁾ and gymnastics.
4. The Olympic flag, with its five rings, **represents**⁽⁵⁾ the five continents Africa, Asia, the Americas, Europe and Australia of the world united in **friendship**⁽⁶⁾.
5. The Olympics are not only about **winning**⁽⁷⁾ medals, they also teach **values**⁽⁸⁾.

(1) الألعاب الأولمبية

(2) تُقام

(3) رياضيون

(4) ألعاب القوى

(5) يمثل

(6) صداقة

(7) الفوز

(8) قيم

UNLOCK THE EXAM:

4 Must - Know Language Rules قواعد يجب معرفتها - كن جاهز لأي سؤال

القواعد اللغوية الأساسية موضع الامتحان [كما وردت في كتاب الطالب]

"Used to" for past habits

1. Affirmative Statements

المصدر used to + inf. + الفاعل Subj.

- I **used to eat** a lot of sweets when I was a child.

2. Negative Statements

Subj. + didn't + use to + inf.

- She **didn't use to** drink tea.

3. Yes/No question السؤال بـ «هل»

Did + subj. + use to + inf.?

- **Did you use to swim** when you were a child?

- **Yes**, I did.

- **No**, I didn't. : للإجابة

4. Wh-question السؤال بـ «كلمة استفهام»

Q.W. + did + subj. + use to + inf.?

- **What did you use to play** when you were a child?

UNLOCK THE EXAM:

5 Must - Know Speaking Skill مهارة التحدث - كن جاهز لأي سؤال

المحادثة موضع الامتحان [كما وردت في كتاب الطالب]

Talking about the history of sport and sports heroes

Questions ?

1. Why did people in Ancient Greece start the Olympic Games?
2. What's your favorite sport?
3. What sport shows a lot of skill?

Answers ✓

- I think for entertainment.
- Football is my favorite sport.
- I think archery shows a lot of skill.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Young people can take part in this event. "Take part" means ".....".
a. inspire b. spread c. focus d. join
- SB** A is a cart pulled by horses.
a. battle b. chariot c. knight d. race
- SB** The Olympic Games are the most famous sports event.
The antonym of "famous" is
a. honest b. active c. unknown d. slow
- SB** To get the adjective from the word "relax", we add the suffix ".....".
a. -ing b. -ly c. -er d. -ment

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

spirit - competitions - cooperation - inspiration - teams

Many young people enjoy playing basketball because it is a fast and exciting sport. Schools often hold (1) where teams win and show their skills. What makes the game special is not only winning, but also the (2) of teamwork and (3) Many athletes say that their (4) comes from watching professional players and learning from them.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Today is a special day for Talia. She is getting ready for a dinner celebration. She wants to look very nice for her night out .First, she gets her hair cut at a salon. A salon is a place where people go to get their hair and nails done. Then, she gets her fingernails painted pink. A woman who works at the salon paints Talia's nails. Talia is not happy with the color. She asks the woman to change the color to purple .She likes the purple very much. It is almost time to go out. Talia goes home and looks in her closet. She tries on a pair of light blue pants with a white shirt .She tries on a purple dress with a black belt. She tries on a brown skirt with a green top. She wears the purple dress. Many of her friends and family are at the restaurant when she gets there .She hugs her mother and father. She gives her grandfather a kiss. Talia's sister gives her a big smile. Her best friend, Esraa, gives her a present. Tomorrow is Talia's birthday, but she is celebrating it tonight. "Happy Birthday, Talia," they say. "You look great!" "I feel great because all of you are here," says Talia, "For my last night as a teenager."

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. What does Talia do when she sees her parents?
 a. She smiles. b. She says hello.
 c. She gives them a hug. d. She gives them a kiss.
2. Who smiles at Talia?
 a. Her mother b. Her sister c. Her father d. Her friend
3. As described in the beginning of the story, what is a salon?
 a. A Restaurant b. A place where people talk about business
 c. A gift shop d. A place to get hair and nails done

b. Answer the following questions :

4. What is Talia doing for her special day?

5. Why does Talia want to look nice?

6. Why does Talia change the color of her nails?

4 Rewrite the following sentences.

1. He used to ride his bike to school. (not)

2. She used to live in Luxor. (Where)

3. No, he didn't use to travel alone. (Did)

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. They used to (gone) to the market a lot.
2. I used to (been) a player, but now I'm not.
3. Did Ali used to (has) encouraged by his family?

6 Complete the following dialogue :

A reporter met a tourist at the Egyptian Grand Museum.

Reporter: Pleased to meet you .

Tourist : (1)..... :

Reporter: (2)..... ?

Tourist : Yes, of course. Go ahead.

Reporter: Where do you come from?

Tourist : (3)..... .

Reporter: Paris ! (4)..... ?

Tourist : Yes , I like Egypt very much.

Reporter: Which places would you like to visit in Egypt?

Tourist : (5)..... .

7 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"Why people would like to attend the Olympic Games."

UNLOCK THE EXAM:

1

Must - Know Vocabulary

مفردات يجب معرفتها - كن جاهز لأي سؤال

1

Exam core Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية الأساسية موضع الامتحان [كما وردت في كتاب الطالب]

traditions (n)	عادات	the elderly	كبار السن	gather (ed) (v)	يجمع / يتجمع
culture (n)	ثقافة	wisdom (n)	حكمة	patience (n)	صبر
customs (n)	عادات مجتمعية	alive (adv)	على قيد الحياة	generations (n)	أجيال
hospitality (n)	كرم الضيافة	long-standing (adj)	طويل الأمد	grand (adj)	كبير / عظيم
graves (n)	مقابر			lunar (adj)	قمرى / خاص بالقمر
memory (n)	ذاكرة / ذكرى	generosity (n)	كرم / سخاء	shape (d)(v)	يُشكّل
belonging (n)	الانتماء	carnival (n)	مهرجان	strengthen (ed)(v)	يقوى
unity (n)	الوحدة / التماسك				

2

Definitions

التعريفات

culture	the way of life of a group of people	ثقافة
identity	who someone is	شخصية
harmony	peace or balance among people or things	توافق / تناغم
ceremony	special event like a wedding	مراسم / طقوس

3

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

offer	tea / coffee	يقدم الشاي أو القهوة	show	creativity	يظهر الإبداع
	kindness	يعكس التعاطف	exchange	gifts	يتبادل الهدايا
reflect	respect	يعكس الاحترام	build	sculptures	يصنع تماثيل
	generosity	يعكس الكرم	keep	alive	يحافظ على بقائه حيًا
create	a sense	يخلق شعور بـ	strengthen	ties	يقوى الروابط
	memories	يصنع ذكريات	play	a role	يلعب دورًا

4 Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

الكلمة Word	المترادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym / Opposite
متصل / مرتبط connected	joined	separated / disconnected غير متصل
شائع / معروف common	usual / popular	unusual / special غير عادي - مميز
توافق harmony	agreement / balance	disagreement / conflict عدم اتفاق - صراع
الصبر patience	tolerance / self-control	impatience تهور - عدم صبر
ضخم massive	enormous / huge	tiny / very small صغير الحجم
حسن الضيافة hospitality	kindness / generosity / friendliness	unfriendliness / rudeness عدم الود / سوء التصرف
طويل الأمد long-standing	long-lasting	short-lived / temporary قصير الأمد / مؤقت
الانتماء belonging	connection / attachment	isolation / separation عزلة / انفصال
يجتمع / يجمع gather	collect / bring together	separate / divide ينفصل / يقسم
خاص / مميز special	unique / unusual	ordinary / common عادي / شائع
سريع التغير fast-changing	dynamic / unstable	constant / slow-changing ثابت / بطيء التغير

5 Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

الوظيفة Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	أمثلة Examples
-ed	تكون الصفة من الفعل	connected مرتبط / متصل
-dom	تكون الاسم من الصفة	wisdom حكمة
-al	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	cultural ثقافي traditional تقليدي
-ce	تحول الصفة إلى اسم	patience صبر importance أهمية
-ness	تحول الصفة إلى اسم	kindness عطف happiness سعادة
-ity	تحول الصفة إلى اسم	creativity الإبداع generosity الكرم
-ing	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	belonging الانتماء

2

Extra Vocabulary for the Exam

مفردات مساعدة - كن جاهز لأي سؤال

المفردات اللغوية المساعدة في التعامل مع الورقة الامتحانية.

1

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

المضارع Present	الماضي Past	التصريف الثالث P.P.
tell يخبر	told	told
wear يرتدى	wore	worn
build يبني	built	built

2

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

step by step	خطوة بخطوة	real- live stories	قصص من الواقع
passed to new generations	انتقلت للأجيال الجديدة	draw people and tourist alike	يجذب الأشخاص والسائحين على حد سواء
long-standing custom	تقليد متوارث	whether simple or grand	سواء كان بسيطاً أو عظيماً
Not at all!	إطلاقاً / أبداً!	remind ... of	يذكر شخص بشئ
common for	شائع بين		

UNLOCK THE EXAM:

3

Must - Know Sentences

جمل يجب معرفتها - كن جاهز لأي سؤال

جمل كتاب الطالب مُجمعة من [نصوص الاستماع والقراءة - دروس الوحدة] التي تساعدك في تدريبات الورقة الامتحانية الاختيار من متعدد - تصحيح الخطأ - تكملة الفراغ في القطعة - قطعة الفهم - الفقرات الإنشائية].

Families and communities

1. Traditions are an important part of every **culture**⁽¹⁾.
2. Traditions help people feel **connected**⁽²⁾ to their families, **communities**⁽³⁾, and history.
3. Traditions appears in festivals, food, music, and **celebrations**⁽⁴⁾.
4. Each tradition tells a story about the values of a **society**⁽⁵⁾.
5. In Japan, the tea **ceremony**⁽⁶⁾ reflects respect, patience, and harmony.
6. In Sapporo Snow Festival, people gather to build massive ice and snow sculptures.
7. The snow celebration draws people and tourists alike and shows creativity, **community spirit**⁽⁷⁾ and the beauty of seasonal transformation.

(1) ثقافة

(2) مترابط

(3) مجتمعات

(4) احتفالات

(5) مجتمع

(6) مراسم

(7) روح مجتمعية

UNLOCK THE EXAM:**4****Must - Know Language Rules**

قواعد يجب معرفتها - كن جاهز لأي سؤال

القواعد اللغوية الأساسية موضع الامتحان [كما وردت في كتاب الطالب]

Defining Relative clauses**(1) who "for people"****ex.** - This is the person **who** helped me yesterday.**(2) which "for things"****ex.** - The mobile **which** I bought was smart.**(3) where "for places"****ex.** - This is the shop **where** I buy sweets.**(4) when "for time"****ex.** - Ramadan is the month **when** we fast.**Note :** where = which ... in/at**ex.** - This is the hospital **where** my father works.- This is the hospital **in which** my father works.- This is the hospital **which** my father works **in**.**UNLOCK THE EXAM:****5****Must - Know Speaking Skill**

مهارة التحدث - كن جاهز لأي سؤال

المحادثة موضع الامتحان [كما وردت في كتاب الطالب]

Traditions in different countries

التقاليد في البلاد المختلفة

Questions ?

1. What tradition is important in your family?
2. Why are customs important in daily life?
3. What do Egyptian customs during festivals show about family values?

Answers ✓

- Visiting each other in different occasions.
- Because it brings people together.
- It shows great cooperation and hospitality.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **SB** Every country has its own unique that shows its history and values.
a. traditions b. collections c. pollution d. population
2. **SB** means peace or balance among people or things.
a. Identity b. Harmony c. Culture d. Friendship
3. **SB** Customs an important role in people's lives.
a. stop b. play c. write d. feel
4. **SB** The word "....." is the opposite of "alive".
a. living b. lively c. dead d. active

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

takes – traditions – connected – families – festival

Every country has its own traditions that show its culture and history. In Egypt, for example, (1) come together to celebrate different events each year. One popular (2) is held in spring when people enjoy food, music, and dancing. Another exciting carnival (3) place in the streets with colorful clothes and songs. These celebrations make people feel (4) and proud of their culture.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Camping was once a poor way of spending a holiday. It was not OK for boy scouts or those students who didn't have enough money. But nowadays it has so much to offer. You can enjoy absolute freedom. For a small sum, you can enjoy comfort which few hotels could provide. Modern camping sites are well equipped with hot and cold running water and even shops. Low cost holidays make camping attractive. But above all, you enjoy mobility. If you don't like a place or if it's too crowded, you can simply get up and go. On the contrary, you can stay as you like. Camping provides you with a real change for everyday living. You get up earlier, go to bed earlier and develop a hearty appetite. It's exciting to arrive at a campsite, put up your tent and start getting a meal ready. You are active all the time and you are always close to nature. Moreover, you have the opportunity to meet people and share your pleasures with them. People are friendly when they are relaxed and have real enjoyment.

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Camping
a. is a poor way of spending a holiday b. has little to offer
c. is the ideal way of spending a holiday d. gives no comfort

2. You enjoy mobility because
 - a. you put up your tent
 - b. you are always active
 - c. you are always close to nature
 - d. if you don't like the place, you can get up and go
3. The general idea of the text is about ".....".
 - a. Money b. Hotels c. Camping d. Running

b. Answer the following questions :

4. Why is camping attractive to some people?
.....
5. What does camping provide you with?
.....
6. What does the underlined pronoun "they" refer to?
.....

4 Rewrite the following sentences.

1. Cairo is the largest city in Egypt. We live in Cairo. (where)
.....
2. The teacher explained the tradition. Students asked about it. (which)
.....
3. I met a journalist. He writes articles about the environment. (who)
.....

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Samir (whose) I helped is naughty.
2. The car (whose) I bought is cheap.
3. Friday is the day (where) I was born.

6 Complete the following dialogue :

Mariam and Zeinab are talking about their book club.

Zienab : We need a new leader for our book club.

Mariam : I agree. (1).....?

Zienab : It's important for a leader to be imaginative, patient and sensible.
Who do you think should be the leader of our book club?

Mariam : We could ask Sara to be the leader.

Zienab : (2)..... . Marwa would make a better leader than Sara.

Mariam : But Sara is very imaginative. She always chooses good books.

Zienab : She is imaginative. (3)..... .

Mariam : You're right, Sara is not the right person. (4).....?

Zienab : (5)..... . Hala is patient, sensible and imaginative!

7 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"Where would you like to live with a group of children?"

UNLOCK THE EXAM:

1

Must - Know Vocabulary

مفردات يجب معرفتها - كن جاهز لأي سؤال

1 Exam core Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية الأساسية موضع الامتحان [كما وردت في كتاب الطالب]

treasure hunt (n)	panic (ked) (v),(n)	treasure (n)
لعبة جمع الكنوز	يفزع / ذعر	كنز
survive (d) (v)	legend (n)	loyalty (n)
يبقى على قيد الحياة	أسطورة	وفاء / ولاء
tribe (n)	defeat (ed) (v)	loyal = faithful (adj)
قبيلة	يهزم	وفى
courage (n)	historians (n)	folk tale (n)
شجاعة	مؤرخين	حكاية شعبية
attack (ed) (v), (n)	curiosity (n)	knowledge (n)
يهجم / هجوم	حب الاستطلاع / فضول	معرفة
		heroes (n)
		أبطال

2 Definitions

التعريفات

clue	a hint that helps you solve something	مفتاح اللغز
riddle	a question or puzzle with a hidden answer	لغز
artifact	a piece of historical object from the past	قطعة أثرية
explorer	a person who travels to discover new places	مستكشف
hidden	being out of sight or not easily seen	مخفى
shelter	a safe place to stay and protect yourself	مأوى
torch	a small electric lamp that you can hold in your hand	كشاف
survival	living through a dangerous or difficult situation	البقاء
sour	having an acidic taste, like lemon	حامض
panicked	showed sudden fear	خائف / مفزوع
tribe	a group of families living together with shared traditions	قبيلة
rival	a person or group that competes with another	منافس
loyal	being faithful and supportive to others	وفى
strategy	clever plan to win a battle	استراتيجية
wisdom	great intelligence and good judgment	حكمة

3 Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

solve	a question riddles	يحل سؤال يحل الغاز	get	lost	يضل الطريق
give	hope	يعطي أمل	make	a choice	يختار
take	place	يحدث	build	skills	ينمي مهارات
			bring	back	يستعيد

4 Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

الكلمة Word	المرادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym / Opposite
hidden مخفي	secret / invisible	visible مرئي
riddle لغز	puzzle	solution حل
clues مفاتيح / أدلة	hints / keys	questions أسئلة
calm هادئ	quiet / peaceful	nervous متوتر
sour حامض	acidic	sweet حلو
loyal وقي	faithful	disloyal / unfaithful غير وقي
wisdom حكمة	insight	ignorance جهل
courage شجاعة	bravery	fear خوف
defend يدافع	protect	hurt يؤذي
goal هدف	aim	aimlessness انعدام الهدف

5 Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

الوظيفة Function	أمثلة Examples
تكون الصفة من الفعل	hidden مختبئ
تكون الصفة من الاسم	valuable ذو قيمة
تكون الاسم من الفعل	performance عرض - أداء
تكون الاسم من الفعل	fighter محارب leader قائد

2

Extra Vocabulary for the Exam

مفردات مساعدة - كن جاهز لأي سؤال

المفردات اللغوية المساعدة في التعامل مع الورقة الامتحانية.

1

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
hide يخفي / يختفي	hid	hidden
give up يستسلم	gave up	given up
fight يحارب	fought	fought
lead يقود	led	led

2

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

quick thinking	سرعة البديهة	made my heart race	جعل قلبي ينبض بسرعة
heavy rain	أمطار غزيرة	magic powers	قوى سحرية
find a way out	يجد طريقًا للخروج	search for	يبحث عن
born into	ولد في [عائلة]	afraid of	خائف من
at the age of	في سن	known as	معروف باسم

UNLOCK THE EXAM:

3

Must - Know Sentences

جمل يجب معرفتها - كن جاهز لأي سؤال

جمل كتاب الطالب مُجمعة من [نصوص الاستماع والقراءة - دروس الوحدة] التي تساعدك في تدريبات الورقة الامتحانية [الاختيار من متعدد - تصحيح الخطأ - تكملة الفراغ في القطعة - قطعة الفهم - الفقرات الإنشائية].

Treasure hunt

1. A treasure hunt⁽¹⁾ is a game where players follow clues⁽²⁾ to find a hidden⁽³⁾ prize.
2. In schools, treasure hunts make learning fun and improve teamwork⁽⁴⁾ and problem-solving⁽⁵⁾.
3. In the past, treasure hunts were connected to explorers and pirates⁽⁶⁾ looking for gold.
4. Today, people still search for valuable artifacts⁽⁷⁾.
5. Treasure hunts teach students to read carefully, work together, and think creatively.

(1) لعبة البحث عن الكنوز

(2) أدلة

(3) مخفي

(4) عمل جماعي

(5) حل المشكلات

(6) قراصنة

(7) قطع أثرية

UNLOCK THE EXAM:

4

Must - Know Language Rules

قواعد يجب معرفتها - كن جاهز لأي سؤال

القواعد اللغوية الأساسية موضع الامتحان [كما وردت في كتاب الطالب]

Verbs + infinitive / -ing form

1 Verbs + to + inf.

agree	يوافق	fail	يفشل في	plan	يخطط
arrange	يرتب	help	يساعد في	promise	يعد
ask	يسأل / يطلب	hope	يأمل	refuse	يرفض
choose	يختار	intend	ينوي	threaten	يهدد
decide	يقرر	need	يحتاج	want	يريد
expect	يتوقع	learn	يتعلم	wish	يتمنى
encourage	يشجع	manage	يتمكن		
invite	يدعو	offer	يعرض		

ex. - My neighbor **agreed to water** my plants when we were away on holiday.

2 Verbs + (inf. + ing)

avoid	يتجنب	finish	ينهى	practise	يمارس
consider	يفكر في	imagine	يتخيل	recommend	يوصي بـ
deny	ينكر	include	يشمل / يتضمن	suggest	يقترح
dislike	يكره	keep	يظل / يستمر في	admit	يقر/يعترف
enjoy	يستمتع	mind	يمنع		

ex. - You should **avoid going** out late at night.

3 Verbs + (to + inf.) / (inf. + ing)

remember, forget, stop, try + [to + inf.] / [inf. + ing]

ex. - **Remember to bring** your homework tomorrow. يتذكر أن يفعل شيء ما
 - I **remember waking** up in the middle of the night. يتذكر أنه فعل شيء ما

UNLOCK THE EXAM:

5

Must - Know Speaking Skill

مهارة التحدث - كن جاهز لأي سؤال

المحادثة موضع الامتحان [كما وردت في كتاب الطالب]

Discussing survival skills

مناقشة مهارات البقاء

Questions ?

1. What would you do if you found a treasure map?
2. How can you survive in the jungle?
3. What skills do you need to stay alive in a dangerous place?

Answers ✓

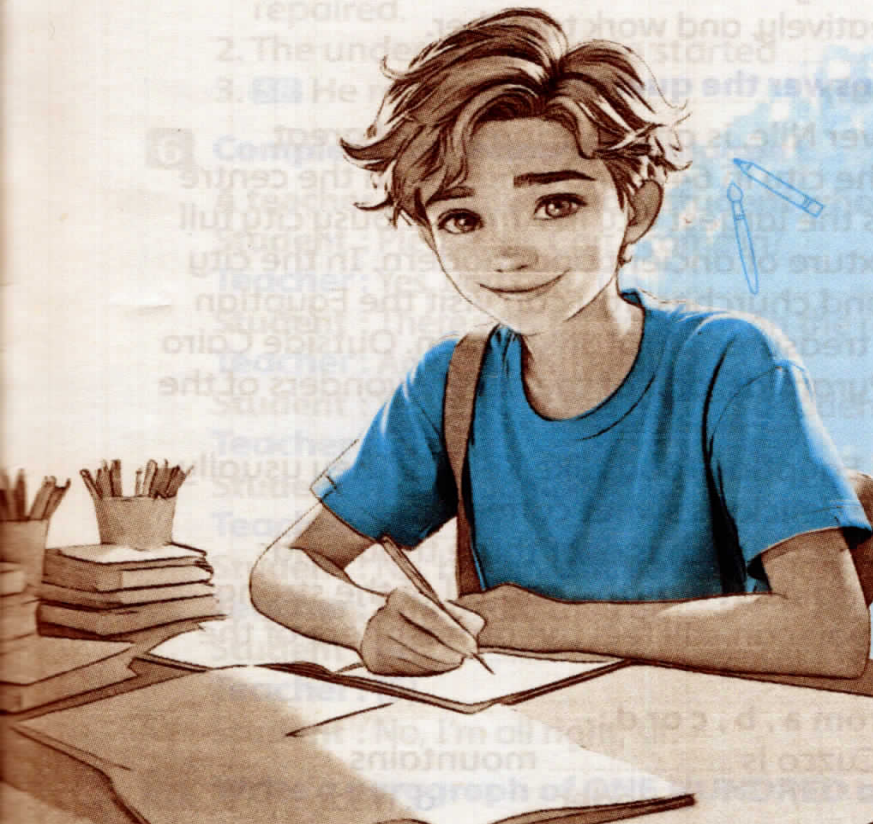
- I would follow the clues with my friends to find the hidden treasure.
- I would build a shelter, look for clean water, and stay calm.
- Smart choices, teamwork, and never giving up are important survival skills.

احرص على اقتناء

كتب

EL-MOASSER

امنح ثقتك
لمن يستحق



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **SB** A is a safe place to stay and protect yourself.
a. clue b. shelter c. torch d. riddle
2. **SB** I had planned a trip, but I lost in the jungle.
a. played b. got c. read d. filled
3. **SB** His courage helps him survive in the jungle. The antonym of "survive" is ".....".
a. live b. travel c. face d. die
4. **SB** Real is shown when someone faces danger without giving up.
a. courage b. fear c. anger d. surprise

2 SB Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

hunt - brave - skills - valuable - legends

In history, real treasure hunts were often connected to explorers and pirates. Many (1) tell about pirates hiding gold on islands and (2) sailors searching for it. Even today, some people search for lost treasures, such as old coins sunken ships, or (3) artifacts. A treasure hunt is more than just a game-it builds (4) Students learn to read carefully, think creatively, and work together.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Cairo, on the fascinating River Nile, is an amazing city of great wonders. The Arabs founded the city in 641, and it has been the centre of Egypt for centuries. Now it is the largest city in Africa, a busy city full of people, with an exciting mixture of ancient and modern. In the city there are many big mosques and churches. You can visit the Egyptian Museum to see the wonderful treasures of Tutankhamen. Outside Cairo there are the Sphinx and the Pyramids, one of the seven wonders of the world.

Tourists like to have special Egyptian foods like Kebab. They usually finish off their meals with some delicious sweet coffee.

In Peru, there is the city of Cuzco which is over three thousands metres high in the Andes mountains. It was the capital of the strong Inca Empire. In historic Cuzco you can still feel the atmosphere of the ancient Inca civilization.

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Cairo is on the River but Cuzco is mountains
a. over b. in c. under d. near

2. You can find in Cairo
 a. ancient and old things b. ancient things only
 c. old and new things d. old things only
3. The underlined word "exciting" means
 a. interesting b. busy c. ancient d. delicious

b. Answer the following questions :

4. When was Cairo built?

5. Mention three things you can see in Cairo.

6. How do tourists usually end their meals with in Cairo?

4 Rewrite the following sentences.

1. He said that he didn't take part in the crime. (denied)

2. Are you sorry for not helping them? (regret)

3. Ramez said, "Can I carry this box for you?" (offered)

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. The boy's father promised (pay) for the window to be repaired.

2. The underground train started (move).

3. **SB** He remembered (feel) afraid of the glowing eyes.

6 Complete the following dialogue :

A teacher of English and a student who has been late for school.

Student : Please, sir. Can I come in?

Teacher : Yes, you can. (1)..... ?

Student : There was an accident on the road.

Teacher : An accident! Really?

Student : Yes, sir. Our bus had an accident.

Teacher : (2)..... ?

Student : Badly damaged.

Teacher : (3)..... ?

Student : No, but only three were injured.

Teacher : Where did they go?

Student : (4)..... .

Teacher : (5)..... ?

Student : No, I'm all right, sir.

7 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"How technology has improved the lives of people"

UNLOCK THE EXAM:

1

Must - Know Vocabulary

مفردات يجب معرفتها - كن جاهز لأي سؤال

1

Exam core Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية الأساسية موضع الامتحان [كما وردت في كتاب الطالب]

adapt (ed) (v)	يتكيف	disturb (ed) (v)	يزعج	hibernation (n)	البيات الشتوي
wildlife expert	خبير في الحياة البرية	flexible (adj)	مرن / قابل للتغير	store (d)(v)	يخزن
behavior (n)	سلوك	methods (n)	طرق / أساليب	status (n)	حالة
researcher (n)	باحث	camouflage (n)	تمويه / اختفاء	features (n)	ملامح / صفات
tracking devices (n)	أجهزة تتبع	absorb (ed) (v)	يمتص	exhibit (n)	معرض / عرض
endangered (adj)	معرض لخطر الانقراض	hibernate (d) (v)	يدخل في بيات شتوي	physical (adj)	بدني / جسدي
prey (n)	فريسة			habitat (n)	موطن [الحيوان] أو بيئته

2

Definitions

التعريفات

adaptations	changes that help living things survive in their environment	تعديلات - تكيفات
harsh	rough or severe (like very hot, cold, or tough conditions)	قاسي
conservation	protecting nature and natural resources	الحفاظ على البيئة
predators	animals that hunt and eat other animals	المفترسون
fascinated	amazing or extraordinary	منبهر
migration	the movement from one place to another	الهجرة
disturbing	annoying or interrupting	مزعج
flexible	able to change easily	مرن

3

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

face dangers	يواجه المخاطر	collect data	يجمع البيانات
take turns	يتبادل الأدوار	solve problems	يحل مشكلات

4 Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

الكلمة Word	المترادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym / Opposite
harsh قاس / صارم	severe	mild لطيف / خفيف
adaptation تكيف	adjustment	resistance مقاومة
conserve يحافظ / يوقّر	save / protect	waste يُبدّد / يهدر
flexible مرن / قابل للتكيف	bendable	rigid جامد
extreme شديد / قاس	intense	moderate معتدل
ordinary عادي	amazing	remarkable مذهش / رائع
thin رقيق	dense / heavy	thick كثيف
hide يخفي	show	demonstrate يوضح
spend / waste يهدر	keep - pack	store يخزّن

5 Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	أمثلة Examples
-er	تكون الاسم من الفعل	researcher باحث hunter صياد
-tion	تكون الاسم من الفعل	migration هجرة adaptation تكيف - تأقلم conservation حفاظ - حماية description وصف
-ible	تكون الصفة من الاسم / الفعل	flexible مرن / قابل للتغيير
-ness	تكون الاسم من الصفة	darkness ظلام
-able	تكون الصفة من الفعل	remarkable جدير بالملاحظة - مميز
-th	تكون الاسم من الصفة	warmth دفء

2 Extra Vocabulary for the Exam

مفردات مساعدة - كن جاهز لأي سؤال

المفردات اللغوية المساعدة في التعامل مع الورقة الامتحانية.

1 Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

المضارع Present	الماضي Past	التصريف الثالث P.P.
understand يفهم	understood	understood
lose يفقد - يخسر	lost	lost
hear يسمع	heard	heard

2 Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعابير و حروف جر هامة

masters of adaptation	أسياد التكيف	freezing cold	برد قارس
last longer	تدوم مدة أطول	slow down	يبطئ من
seven times stronger	أقوى سبعة أضعاف	from far away	من بعيد
adapt to	يتكيف مع	protect from / against	يحمي من
interested in	مهتم بـ	prevent from	يمنع من
fascinated by	مفتون بـ / منبهرب	covered in	مغطى بـ
blend in	يندمج في	at heights up to	في مرتفعات يصل ارتفاعها إلى

UNLOCK THE EXAM:

3 Must - Know Sentences

جمل يجب معرفتها - كن جاهز لأي سؤال

جمل كتاب الطالب مُجمعة من [نصوص الاستماع والقراءة - دروس الوحدة] التي تساعدك في تدريبات الورقة الامتحانية
[الاختيار من متعدد - تصحيح الخطأ - تكملة الفراغ في القطعة - قطعة الفهم - الفقرات الإنشائية].

Life in the desert

1. Life in the desert is very **challenging**⁽¹⁾ because of the extreme heat during the day and freezing cold at night.
2. Some animals have developed amazing **adaptations**⁽²⁾ to survive in such **tough**⁽³⁾ environments.
3. The Fennec fox is perfectly **adapted**⁽⁴⁾ to desert life. Its large ears help it lose heat and hear **prey**⁽⁵⁾, and its thick fur protects it from hot sand.
4. Desert tortoises can store water in their bodies for months and slow down their energy use when food is **scarce**⁽⁶⁾.
5. Camels are famous for their **survival skills**⁽⁷⁾.
They store water, use fat in their humps for energy, and their long **eyelashes**⁽⁸⁾ protect them from **sandstorms**⁽⁹⁾.

(1) صعب

(2) تعديلات

(3) قاسي

(4) تكيف

(5) فريسة

(6) نادر

(7) مهارات البقاء

(8) رموش العين

(9) عواصف رملية

UNLOCK THE EXAM:

4 Must - Know Language Rules

قواعد يجب معرفتها - كن جاهز لأي سؤال

القواعد اللغوية الأساسية موضع الامتحان [كما وردت في كتاب الطالب]

1 Reported «Yes / No» Questions :

السؤال بـ «هل» في الكلام غير المباشر

• يتم تحويل السؤال بـ [هل] إلى الكلام الغير مباشر كالتالي :

- **Speaker** استفسر / **asked / wondered** تساءل / **inquired** / **wanted to know** + **if / whether** + **فاعل** / مفعول +

١ نحذف علامات التنصيص (".....") و نحذف علامه الاستفهام ونضع نقطه مكانها.

٢ تتحول أفعال القول كالتالى :

say to / says to + مخاطب → ask / asks + مخاطب

said to + مخاطب → asked + مخاطب

٣ تتحول الأزمنة إلى الماضى.

٤ تتحول ظروف الزمان و المكان.

ex. - "Do you like ice cream?"

- She asked if I liked ice cream.

2 Reported Wh-Questions :

الأسئلة بأداة استفهام فى الكلام غير المباشر

تتكون جملة السؤال بأداة استفهام فى الكلام غير المباشر من :

مُبَلِّغ

+

فعل قول

+

أداة استفهام

+

نص الكلام غير المباشر

Ali

asked

why

she had arrived home late.

ex. - "When is the test?"

- He asked when the test was.

UNLOCK THE EXAM:

5

Must - Know Speaking Skill

مهارة التحدث - كن جاهز لأى سؤال

المحادثة موضع الامتحان [كما وردت فى كتاب الطالب]

Amazing Animal Adaptations!

تكيفات مذهشة للحيوانات!

Questions ?

1. What's your favorite desert animal?

2. How do lizards survive in the desert?

3. What is special about fennec foxes?

Answers ✓

- The lizard.

- They have a body shape that helps them blend into the desert environment.

- They have large ears to lose heat and hear their prey.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **SB** The loud noise outside was and made it hard to concentrate.
a. pleasant b. disturbing c. peaceful d. hard
2. **SB** are animals that hunt and eat other animals.
a. Prey b. Adaptations c. Predators d. Shells
3. **SB** Our teacher uses different methods to explain difficult lessons.
The word "methods" here means ".....".
a. ways b. rocks c. roads d. streets
4. **SB** The words "tough" and "hard" are
a. nouns b. synonyms c. antonyms d. opposites

2 SB Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

survive - feathers - store - shells - scarce

Desert tortoises are masters of water conservation. They can (1) water in their bodies for months and get water from the plants they eat. Their hard (2) protect them from predators and extreme temperatures. When food becomes (3), they can slow down their use of energy and (4) without eating.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Salah loved the sea since childhood. One summer, he joined a diving course to explore the underwater world. On his first dive, he felt nervous but remembered all his training. As he went deeper, colorful fish surrounded him, and coral reefs shone like jewels. Suddenly, he saw a turtle trapped in a fishing net. Without hesitation, Salah used his knife to cut the ropes carefully. The turtle swam away freely. When Salah reached the surface, his instructor praised his courage. That day, Salah learned that bravery isn't just about facing danger-it's about helping those in need.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The underlined word "praised" means to show
a. admiration b. regret
c. feeling d. rejection
2. The turtle was trapped in a
a. net b. cage c. shell d. rock

3. The main idea of the passage is about ".....".

- a. Fear b. Courage c. Traveling d. Luck

b. Answer the following questions :

4. How did Salah feel during his first dive?

.....

5. What did Salah do to help the turtle?

.....

6. What lesson did Salah learn?

.....

4 Rewrite the following sentences.

1. Abdo asked me, "Where have you spent the holiday?" (I)

.....

2. Hana asked Basmalla, "What did you buy last week?" (the week before)

.....

3. Eman asked Mariam, "When will you finish?" (would)

.....

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. **SB** She asked me where I (go) the night before.

2. **SB** The teacher asked us if we (understand) the lesson.

3. **SB** I asked him where he (spend) his weekend.

6 Complete the following dialogue :

Ali is buying a shirt.

Ali : Excuse me, how much is this shirt?

Salesperson : (1).....

Ali : (2).....?

Salesperson : Sure, you can try it.

Ali : It fits perfectly. I'll take it.

Salesperson : Ok. (3).....?

Ali : I would like to pay by cash.

Salesperson : Here is your receipt.

Ali : (4).....

Salesperson : (5).....?

7 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"How we can protect our nature"

UNLOCK THE EXAM:

1

Must - Know Vocabulary

مفردات يجب معرفتها - كن جاهز لأي سؤال

1

Exam core Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية الأساسية موضع الامتحان [كما وردت في كتاب الطالب]

book (ed) (v)	يحجز	lifelong (adj)	مدى الحياة	scenery (n)	منظر طبيعي
unexpected (adj)	غير متوقع	landmark	معلم بارز / مكان مشهور	determined (adj)	مصمم / عازم
hiking trail	طريق للمشى في الجبال أو الطبيعة	struggle (d)	يصارع / يكافح	exhausting (adj)	مرهق / متعب
solo (adj)	بمفرده / منفرد	landscape (n)	منظر طبيعي / تضاريس	treasures (n)	كنوز
southward (adj), (adv)	باتجاه الجنوب	monuments (n)	آثار / قطع أثرية	shot (n)	لقطة / صورة [بالكاميرا]
capture (d) (v)	يلتقط [بالكاميرا]	pharaohs (n)	الفراعنة	magical (adj)	ساحر / خلاب
jealous (adj)	غيور	attractions (n)	عوامل جذب	glowing (adj)	متوهج / مشرق / لامع

2

Definitions

التعريفات

unforgettable	impossible to forget	لا ينسى
brehtaking	very beautiful, impressive, or surprising	رائع / مذهش
challenging	difficult in a way that tests your abilities and skills	صعب / يتطلب جهدًا
slippery	smooth and hard to stand on because you might slide	زلق
snorkeling	swimming near the surface of the sea using a mask to see underwater	الغطس [باستخدام أنبوب التنفس]
safari	a trip into the desert to explore and enjoy nature	رحله سفاري
hospitality	warm and friendly treatment to guests and visitors	كرم الضيافة
columns	large stone structures in temples or buildings	أعمدة حجرية
tombs	places where the dead are buried, often underground	مقابر / قبور

3 Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

take	photos	يلتقط صور	face	challenge	يواجه تحدي
	shelter	يلجأ إلى مأوى		problems	يواجه مشكلة
make	a plan	يضع خطة	got	lost	فُقد

4 Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

الكلمة Word	المترادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym / Opposite
unforgettable لا يُنسى	memorable	forgettable يمكن نسيانه
breathtaking مُدهش	amazing	boring ممل
challenging صعب	difficult	easy سهل
slippery زلق	smooth	rough خشن
remarkable استثنائي	extraordinary	ordinary عادي
brave شجاع	courageous	coward جبان
embarrassed محرج	ashamed / shy	confident واثق
comfortable مريح	relaxing / cozy	uncomfortable / restless غير مريح
incredible رائع / لا يُصدّق	amazing	ordinary / boring عادي / ممل
manage يدير / يسيطر	handle / control	fail / lose control يفشل / يفقد السيطرة
magical سحري / خلاب	wonderful	realistic واقعي

5 Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	أمثلة Examples
un-	تكون عكس الصفة	unforgettable لا يُنسى unexpected غير متوقع
-ed	تكون الصفة من الفعل	determined مصمم / عازم
-d	تكون الصفة من الفعل	amazed مندهش
-ion	تكون الاسم من الفعل	attractions عوامل جذب
-ly	تكون الظرف من الصفة	absolutely تماماً

2 Extra Vocabulary for the Exam

مفردات مساعدة - كن جاهز لأي سؤال

المفردات اللغوية المساعدة في التعامل مع الورقة الامتحانية.

1 Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
catch يلحق - يمسك	caught	caught
steal يسرق	stole	stolen
fall يسقط	fell	fallen

2 Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

the journey of a lifetime رحلة العمر	set up the tent يثبت الخيمة
set off the journey انطلق / بدأ في رحلة	inner strength القوة الداخلية
No way ! مستحيل!	Tell me more ! أخبرني أكثر!
It opened my eyes to جعلنى أدرك أن	manage to ينجح في / يتمكن من
turn into يتحول إلى	all of a sudden مفاجأة
along the path عبر أو بطول الممر	run off with يهرب بـ

UNLOCK THE EXAM:

3 Must - Know Sentences

جمل يجب معرفتها - كن جاهز لأي سؤال

جمل كتاب الطالب مُجمعة من [نصوص الاستماع والقراءة - دروس الوحدة] التي تساعدك في تدريبات الورقة الامتحانية [الاختيار من متعدد - تصحيح الخطأ - تكملة الفراغ في القطعة - قطعة الفهم - الفقرات الإنشائية].

Exploring Luxor and Aswan

- John is an American **traveler**⁽¹⁾ who spent a week **exploring**⁽²⁾ Egypt.
- In Luxor, John visited the Valley of the Kings and walked inside tombs.
- He admired the great karnak temple with its tall **columns**⁽³⁾.
- Then, he sailed on a felucca boat along the Nile River to Aswan.
- There, he enjoyed the calm water and visited the famous Philae Temple.
- He thought that Southern Egypt had been even more amazing than he had imagined, and he hoped to return one day.

(1) مسافر

(2) يستكشف

(3) اعمدة

UNLOCK THE EXAM:

4

Must - Know Language Rules

قواعد يجب معرفتها - كن جاهز لأي سؤال

القواعد اللغوية الأساسية موضع الامتحان [كما وردت في كتاب الطالب]

Past perfect

Form had + [p.p.]

ex. Ayman **had finished** his work **before** sleeping.

After	]	past perfect	,	past simple
As soon as		had + p.p.		

ex. After Hassan **had done** his homework, he **slept**.

Before	]	past simple ,	past perfect
By the time			had + p.p.
When			

ex.- Before Heba **watched** TV, she had **washed** the dishes.

UNLOCK THE EXAM:

5

Must - Know Speaking Skill

مهارة التحدث - كن جاهز لأي سؤال

المحادثة موضع الامتحان [كما وردت في كتاب الطالب]

5. An Unexpected Adventure

مغامرة غير متوقعة

Questions ?

1. Have you ever been on a camping trip?
2. What kind of problems can happen when people go camping?
3. What is the most enjoyable thing in camping?

Answers ✓

- Yes, I have.
- I think bad weather is the biggest problem.
- Meeting new people.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **SB** To form the adjective of the noun "person", we add the suffix ".....".
a. -or b. -er c. -al d. -ment
2. **SB** means very beautiful, impressive or surprising.
a. Breathtaking b. Ordinary c. Usual d. Late
3. **SB** Three months ago, I set off the journey of a lifetime. The phrase "set off" here means ".....".
a. finished b. forgot c. started d. ended
4. **SB** The word "challenging" is a synonym of ".....".
a. simple b. easy c. amazing d. difficult

2 SB Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

challenging - unforgettable - together - breathtaking - unexpected

Last summer, my family and I went on a camping trip in the forest. The place was (1), with tall green trees and birds singing everywhere. Setting up the tent was (2), but we were excited. While enjoying our picnic, something (3) happened. A hungry monkey suddenly appeared and tried to steal fruit from our basket. I jumped to scare it away, but I slipped and fell, which made everyone laugh. The monkey ran off with an apple, and felt very embarrassed. It was an (4) day that we still talk about and laugh at together.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

The ocean is full of life. Coral reefs provide homes for many creatures, including fish, crabs, and sea turtles. Sharks are top predators, while smaller animals hide for protection. Some animals use camouflage to avoid danger, and others migrate to find food. Scientists study ocean life to understand ecosystems and preserve biodiversity. Protecting oceans ensures healthy habitats for marine life and supports human needs like food and medicine.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Coral reefs are
a. homes for creatures b. mountains
c. desert plants d. buildings
2. Camouflage helps animals
a. avoid danger b. swim faster
c. jump higher d. fly

3. The underlined word "preserve" means
a. include b. hunt c. protect d. damage

b. Answer the following questions :

4. Why do scientists study the ocean?
.....

5. How do small animals protect themselves?
.....

6. Why do some animals migrate?
.....

4 Rewrite the following sentences.

1. First, he ate. Then, he went walking. (After)
.....

2. By the time he phoned, I had worn my clothes. (before)
.....

3. After they had arrived, we finished. (When)
.....

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. **SB** I (find) the book after I had searched for two hours.

2. **SB** We (visiting) Roma before we traveled.

3. **SB** After they (have) won, they celebrated.

6 Complete the following dialogue :

Malak is telling Aya about her amazing tour.

Aya : Hey Malak! How was your tour to Luxor and Aswan ? I want to hear everything.

Malak : (1) ! I had never seen such amazing temples.

Aya : That sounds amazing! (2) ?

Malak : The most exciting part was visiting the Valley of the Kings. I was amazed by the ancient tombs.

Aya : No way! How did you feel when you saw them ?

Malak : (3) It opened my eyes to how powerful the Pharaohs were.

Aya : (4) ?

Malak : Ok, I'll tell you more. We took a boat trip on the Nile in Aswan. The sunset was breathtaking.

Aya : Wonderful ! (5) ?

Malak : Yes, I took a few. There were so many tourists, but I managed to capture some beautiful shots.

7 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"The importance of reading our history"

UNLOCK THE EXAM:

1

Must - Know Vocabulary

مفردات يجب معرفتها - كن جاهز لأي سؤال

1

Exam core Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية الأساسية موضع الامتحان [كما وردت في كتاب الطالب]

leader (n) قائد	quality (n) صفة - سمة	praise (d) (v) يكرم / يمدح
empathy (n) تعاطف	civilization (n) حضارة	trust (ed) (v) (n) يثق / ثقة
schedules (n) جداول مواعيد ثابتة	adjust (ed) (v) يضبط - يعدل	motivated (adj) متحمس / متحفز
deadlines(n) مواعيد نهائية	complement (ed) يتمم - يكمل	modesty (n) تواضع
official (adj) رسمي		semester (n) فصل دراسي

2

Definitions

التعريفات

heritage	the history, traditions, and culture of a country or family	تراث
inspire	to make someone feel interested or want to do something good	يلهم
prosperity	a state of being successful and having enough money	ازدهار
emphasize	to show that something is important by saying or doing it strongly	تؤكد / تشدد على
beyond	farther than or outside something; more than	ما وراء / أبعد من
immense	very big or great	ضخم / هائل
marketing	the work of telling people about a product to help sell it	تسويق
budget	the amount of money you can spend	ميزانية
campaign	a plan to share a message and reach a goal	حملة
hybrid	a mix of two different things	هجين / خليط
judges	people who watch or listen and then decide who wins	حكّام / قضاة

3 Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

lead	campaigns	يقوم بحملات	achieve	success	يحقق نجاح
build	trust	يبني ثقة		goals	يحقق أهداف
	relationships	يكون علاقات	set	goals	يضع أهداف
earn	respect	يحظى باحترام	take	a role	يلعب دور
make	sure	يتأكد			
	a difference	يحدث فارق			

4 Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

الكلمة Word	المترادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym / Opposite
prosperity رخاء / ازدهار	success	loss خسارة
emphasize يؤكد	stress	deny ينكر
immense ضخم / هائل	huge	tiny صغير
hybrid مزيج - هجين	mixture	pure نقى
effective فعال	powerful/useful	useless عديم الفائدة
trust يثق	believe	doubt يشك / يشتهبه
pride فخر/ عزة	self - respect	modesty تواضع
detailed مفصل	specific	simple بسيط

5 Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
-ity	تكون الاسم من الفعل	prosperity ازدهار
-tion	تكون الاسم من الفعل	civilization حضارة
		cooperation تعاون
-able	تكون الصفة من الفعل	presentation عرض
		renewable متجدد
-ure	تكون الاسم من الفعل	adaptable قابل للتكيف
		pressure ضغط - جهد
-ment	تكون الاسم من الفعل	achievement إنجاز
-ive	تكون الصفة من الاسم	effective فعال / مؤثر

2 Extra Vocabulary for the Exam

مفردات مساعدة - كن جاهز لأي سؤال

المفردات اللغوية المساعدة في التعامل مع الورقة الامتحانية.

1 Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

المضارع Present	الماضي Past	التصريف الثالث P.P.
break يكسر/ يفتت	broke	broken
set يحدد - يضع	set	set

2 Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

rather than بدلاً من / عوضاً عن	decision-making اتخاذ القرار / صناعة القرار
work under pressure يعمل تحت ضغط	solar-wind hybrid system نظام يعمل بالطاقة الشمسية والرياح
play to their strength يركزون على نقاط قوتهم	keep teams motivated يحفز الفرق باستمرار
keep track يتبع	left out مهمل / مستبعد
ask for feedback يطلب ملاحظات / تغذية راجعة	listen with empathy يستمع بتعاطف

UNLOCK THE EXAM:

3 Must - Know Sentences

جمل يجب معرفتها - كن جاهز لأي سؤال

جمل كتاب الطالب مُجمعة من [نصوص الاستماع والقراءة - دروس الوحدة] التي تساعدك في تدريبات الورقة الامتحانية [الاختيار من متعدد - تصحيح الخطأ - تكملة الفراغ في القطعة - قطعة الفهم - الفقرات الإنشائية].

Great civilization

1. Egypt produced many great leaders who shaped its great civilization⁽¹⁾.
2. Queen Hatshepsut was a successful female pharaoh who focused on building and trade⁽²⁾.
3. She ruled Egypt wisely for twenty-two years and brought peace and prosperity⁽³⁾.
4. Pharaoh Thutmose III was a strong military⁽⁴⁾ leader who led many successful campaigns⁽⁵⁾.
5. Ramses II brought immense⁽⁶⁾ wealth and power to the country.
6. All these leaders showed the power and beauty of ancient Egypt's great civilization.

(1) حضارة

(2) تجارة

(3) رخاء

(4) عسكري

(5) حملات

(6) هائل

UNLOCK THE EXAM:

4

Must - Know Language Rules

قواعد يجب معرفتها - كن جاهز لأي سؤال

القواعد اللغوية الأساسية موضع الامتحان [كما وردت في كتاب الطالب]

Reported Orders

► To report "command" or "order"

We use verbs like

told

ordered

asked

advised

- **Affirmative order** → (to + inf.)
- **Negative order** → (not to + inf.)

ex. - The teacher said to Ali, "clean the board."
= The teacher **ordered** Ali **to clean** the board.

ex. - Mother said to Mona, "Don't waste your time."
= Mother **advised** Mona **not to waste** her time.

UNLOCK THE EXAM:

5

Must - Know Speaking Skill

مهارة التحدث - كن جاهز لأي سؤال

المحادثة موضع الامتحان [كما وردت في كتاب الطالب]

Leadership Styles

أساليب القيادة

Questions ?

1. How can you describe a leader?
2. How does a good leader inspire his team to do their best?
3. What are the best qualities of a good leader?

Answers ✓

- A good leader should be supportive and a problem-solver.
- He should support and improve their skill.
- Responsibility and courage.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **SB** Economic growth brings to many communities.
a. poverty b. prosperity c. conflict d. loss
2. **SB** means farther than or outside something; more than.
a. Alone b. Specific c. Beyond d. Together
3. **SB** The opposite of "inspire" is ".....".
a. improve b. respect c. discourage d. develop
4. **SB** Successful leaders goals and break them into steps.
a. set b. build c. make d. take

2 SB Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

problem - inspire - Decision - solve - communication

I want to become a better leader. To do this, I will improve my (1) skills by working with my team and listening to everyone's ideas. I will focus on team cooperation and help (2) any problem we face together. I also want to (3) others by encouraging them to do their best. (4) making is important, so I will practice making choices that help the group. In the future, I hope to be a leader who helps others achieve their goals.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Some people like going to the theatre while others prefer going to the cinema. Of course, both of them have their **advantages** and disadvantages. As we live in a huge city, we have five theatres. Three of our theatres open during the whole year. However, two are open in winter only. A great advantage of theatres is that the plays are live and the audience has the opportunity to interact with the actors and actresses. However, the main disadvantage of going to the theatres in our city is that it is necessary to buy tickets in advance. Another disadvantage of the theatre is that it is more expensive than the cinema.

: Today, there is a cinema in almost every town. One of the reasons for the popularity of the cinema is that it entertains all types of people, young and old. Because it is so popular, my friends and I go there every week. We prefer to be there on Tuesday because at the weekend, the cinema is too much crowded. At the cinema, we can watch a film on a big screen and sound system is clear.

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The underlined word "**advantages**" can be replaced by

a. benefits b. disadvantages c. actors d. tickets

2. The text is mainly about ".....".

a. open areas b. cinemas and theatres
c. actors and actresses d. modern cities

3. The writer lives in a city.

a. small b. tiny c. large d. medium

b. Answer the following questions :

4. Why is the cinema more popular than the theatre?

5. What is the main disadvantage of the theatres?

6. Which do you prefer going to theatres or cinemas?

4 Rewrite the following sentences.

1. Hager said to Nada, "Sleep early to get up early." (advised)

2. She said to Rana, "Don't go out." (ordered.....)

3. Ziad said to Ibrahim, "Do your exercises." (advised)

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. She advised me (do) my homework.

2. Mother asked me (not come) late.

3. **SB** The officer ordered us not (parking) there.

6 Complete the following dialogue :

Mo'men meets a tourist from London.

Mo'men : Are you visiting Egypt on business or on holiday?

Tourist : (1).....

Mo'men : (2).....?

Tourist : I come from London.

Mo'men : (3).....?

Tourist : Big Ben and the Queen's Palace are the most famous places in London.

Mo'men : What interests do you like most in Egypt?

Tourist : (4).....

Mo'men : I hope you will enjoy your tour in our country.

Tourist : (5).....

7 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"The importance of learning English"

The Story

Twenty Thousand Leagues under The Sea

MAIN POINTS OF THE STORY

Chapter 1

The Mystery of the Sea Monster

1. Sailors **claimed**⁽¹⁾ to have seen a huge sea monster⁽²⁾ smashing ships.
2. A **voyage**⁽³⁾ was launched to **capture**⁽⁴⁾ or kill the beast.
3. Professor Pierre Aronnax joined the voyage with his servant.
4. A Canadian **harpooner**⁽⁵⁾ was a part of the **crew**⁽⁶⁾.
5. They boarded a warship and sailed for months without success.
6. A long glowing shape appeared and the crew **chased**⁽⁷⁾ it.
7. The monster hit their ship and the crew were thrown into the sea.
8. They discovered that the monster was a man-made **submarine**⁽⁸⁾.

(1) يدعى

(2) وحش

(3) رحلة بحرية

(4) يمسك

(5) صائد بحرية

(6) طاقم السفينة

(7) يطارد

(8) غواصة

Chapter 2

Captives of Captain Nemo

1. Aronnax, Conseil, and Ned Land were taken inside the submarine to meet the **commander**⁽¹⁾.
2. Captain Nemo was a mysterious man of strong will and deep knowledge.
3. He said the Nautilus was built to live **entirely**⁽²⁾ under the sea.
4. Nautilus could travel long distances without **surfacing**⁽³⁾.
5. They had to stay **aboard**⁽⁴⁾ the submarine forever.
6. Professor Aronnax, filled with scientific **curiosity**⁽⁵⁾, accepted as he wanted to learn about the ocean.
7. Conseil stayed **loyal**⁽⁶⁾ to his master, but Ned Land loved **freedom**⁽⁷⁾.
8. Ned Land began to make plan to **escape**⁽⁸⁾ from Nautilus.
9. Nemo showed them **treasures**⁽⁹⁾ collected from the sea.
10. He said the sea was his **homeland**⁽¹⁰⁾.
11. They realized their new life under the sea had wonders and dangers.

(1) قائد

(2) بالكامل

(3) الصعود إلى السطح

(4) على متن السفينة

(5) فضول

(6) وفّي - مخلص

(7) حرية

(8) يهرب

(9) كنوز

(10) وطن

Chapter 3

Wonders of the Deep

1. Aronnax saw the **wonders**⁽¹⁾ of the underwater world through the big windows.
2. He saw colorful **coral reefs**⁽²⁾ and **shipwrecks**⁽³⁾ on the **sea bed**⁽⁴⁾.
3. Captain Nemo invited them on diving **voyages**⁽⁵⁾.
4. They walked and explored an underwater city that was **sunken**⁽⁶⁾.
5. Nemo hinted that lost **civilizations**⁽⁷⁾ were **swallowed**⁽⁸⁾ by the waves.
6. Professor Aronnax recorded everything carefully for science.
7. Conseil helped him in studying marine life.
8. Ned Land became **impatient**⁽⁹⁾ because he missed freedom.
9. The Nautilus moved deeper into the ocean.
10. It traveled far from any **familiar**⁽¹⁰⁾ shore.

(1) عجائب / روائع

(2) شعاب مرجانية

(3) حطام سفن

(4) قاع البحر

(5) رحلات بحرية

(6) غارقة

(7) حضارات

(8) ابتلعت

(9) فاقد الصبر

(10) مألوف

Chapter 4

Battles and Dangers

1. Life on Nautilus wasn't without **risk**⁽¹⁾.
2. Once, a giant squid attacked the submarine.
3. Nemo and his crew fought bravely with axes and harpoons.
4. Ned Land **fearless**⁽²⁾ as always killed the monster.
5. The submarine became **trapped**⁽³⁾ beneath thick ice at the South Pole.
6. Nemo attacked any warships appeared on the surface without **mercy**⁽⁴⁾.
7. Captain Nemo showed calm and **remarkable**⁽⁵⁾ leadership to all the **passengers**⁽⁶⁾.
8. Aronnax began to admire Nemo and fear him.
9. The ocean was a school of wonder for Aronnax and a **battlefield**⁽⁷⁾ for Nemo.

(1) خطر

(2) شجاع

(3) محتجز

(4) رحمة

(5) مدهش

(6) ركاب

(7) ساحة معركة

Chapter 5

Secrets of Captain Nemo

1. Aronnax became **determined**⁽¹⁾ to learn the truth about Nemo.
2. Nemo was a man of **wealth**⁽²⁾, education, and sorrow.
3. Nemo kept his past **hidden**⁽³⁾ from everyone.
4. He attacked warships to fight against **cruelty**⁽⁴⁾.
5. To Aronnax, Nemo was **brave**⁽⁵⁾ and **mysterious**⁽⁶⁾.
6. Ned Land planned to **escape**⁽⁷⁾.
7. Aronnax was **torn**⁽⁸⁾ between scientific discovery and freedom.
8. Conseil remained to calm and **loyal**⁽⁹⁾ to Aronnax.
9. The **graveyard**⁽¹⁰⁾ of sunken ships increased the mystery of Nemo.

(1) عازم

(2) ثروة

(3) مخفى

(4) قسوة

(5) شجاع

(6) غامض

(7) هروب

(8) مُمزق / حائر

(9) وفى / مخلص

(10) مقبرة

Chapter 6

Escape to Freedom

1. The Nautilus neared the **coasts**⁽¹⁾ of Europe after many months.
2. The three companions used a small **craft**⁽²⁾ to escape during a strong storm.
3. They drifted away while waves **threatened**⁽³⁾ to break their boat.
4. At dawn, they reached the **shore**⁽⁴⁾, exhausted and **half-conscious**⁽⁵⁾.
5. Aronnax wrote about the **brilliance**⁽⁶⁾ of Captain Nemo and their adventures.
6. Aronnax never learned the full truth about Nemo's past.
7. The lesson of the story is : human curiosity and knowledge can achieve wonders.
8. It also tells us that **ambition**⁽⁷⁾ mixed with sorrow may lead to **isolation**⁽⁸⁾.

(1) السواحل

(2) قارب صغير

(3) يهدد

(4) الشاطئ

(5) شبه واعي

(6) براعة / عبقرية

(7) الطموح

(8) عزلة

السؤال الأول في الورقة الامتحانية

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

A

نماذج من كتاب الطالب

- Scientists always data before doing research.
a. buy b. sail c. damage d. collect
- SB** He had the chance to attack his rival's weak point. The phrase "weak point" is similar in meaning to
a. weakness b. task c. opportunity d. luck
- SB** The words "peace" and "war" are
a. adjectives b. verbs c. synonyms d. antonyms
- SB** means peace or balance among people or things.
a. Harmony b. Fight c. Argument d. Defeat

B

- means protecting nature and natural resources.
a. Conversation b. Conservation c. Pollution d. Migration
- SB** He can challenges easily, he is brave.
a. swim b. fly c. post d. face
- SB** The word "effective" is closest in meaning to
a. weak b. successful c. lazy d. poor
- SB** The suffix "-ly" in "clearly" changes the adjective into a/an
a. adverb b. verb c. noun d. pronoun

نماذج من كتاب التقييمات

C

- Traditions help people in a country keep their and culture.
a. money b. customs c. games d. food
- A puzzle with tricky questions is called a/an
a. clue b. artifact c. riddle d. solution

3. We add the suffix to the word "tradition" to form an adjective.
 a. -al b. -ous c. -ing d. -ed
4. Mohamed Salah is a well-known player. The synonym of "well-known" is ".....".
 a. famous b. quiet c. unknown d. silent

D

1. A is a soldier in the Middle Ages.
 a. player b. teacher c. knight d. mechanic
2. The loud noise outside was and made it hard to concentrate.
 a. pleasant b. disturbing c. peaceful d. relaxing
3. The suffix turns the word "culture" into an adjective.
 a. -ed b. -ous c. -ing d. -al
4. The opposite of the word "powerful" is ".....".
 a. strong b. courage c. kind d. weak

السؤال الثاني في الورقة الامتحانية

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

A

نماذج من كتاب الطالب

health – exercise – old – strength – enjoy

Sports are very important for people of all ages. Both the young and the (1) can take part in games and activities that make life more active and fun. Regular (2) helps the body stay strong and keeps the mind fresh. Playing football, swimming, or even walking gives people more (3) to do their daily tasks. Sport is not only good for physical (4) but also helps people meet friends and work as a team.

B

important - concentrated - prosperity - style - buildings

Queen Hatshepsut was one of the most successful female pharaohs in Egyptian history. She ruled Egypt for twenty-two years and brought peace and (1) to the country. Hatshepsut (2) on building projects and trade relationships, great temples and (3) trading routes. Her leadership (4) emphasized cooperation rather than fight.

C

amazing - funny - it - difficult - event

Last summer, my family and I went on a camping trip in the forest. The place was amazing, with tall green trees and birds singing everywhere. Setting up the tent was a bit (1), but we were excited. While enjoying our picnic, something (2) happened. A hungry monkey suddenly appeared and tried to steal fruit from our basket. I jumped to scare it away, but I slipped and fell, which made everyone laugh. The monkey ran off with an apple, and I felt very embarrassed. It was an (3) day that we still talk about and laugh at (4)

D

continents - countries - Athletes - held - sports

The Olympic Games are the most famous sports event in the world. Today, they are (1) every four years in different countries. (2) from more than 200 nations come together to compete in many (3) such as football , swimming, athletics and gymnastics . The Olympic flag, with its five rings, represents the five (4) Africa, Europe, Asia, Australia and the Americas of the world united in friendship.

السؤال الثالث في الورقة الامتحانية

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

A

نماذج من كتاب الطالب

1

Last week, our school team took part in the National School Championship, and the atmosphere here was full of excitement and energy. Teams from many cities joined the tournament to show their best skills and spirit of competition.

Our coach encouraged every player to believe in themselves and play with teamwork and honesty. Although we didn't win in the semi-final, the players showed great respect to the winners.

This event was a real inspiration for everyone. It taught us that sport is not only about winning medals, but also about friendship.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The atmosphere of the event was

- a. disappointing b. hard c. boring d. exciting

2. The underlined word "encouraged" means ".....".

- a. discouraged b. supported c. forgot d. deleted

3. The text talks about a

- a. skills b. school subject
c. sports championship d. energy

b. Answer the following questions.

4. Why do you think sports events are important for students' growth?

5. When did their school team join the championship?

6. How did their coach help them?

B

One cold winter morning, a young boy named Omar was walking to school when he saw smoke coming from a small house nearby. Without thinking twice, he ran to the door and heard a child crying inside. Omar quickly called for help and then crawled through the open window to rescue the frightened boy. Just as he got out, firefighters arrived and put out the fire. Everyone praised Omar for his bravery. He said he didn't feel like a hero—he just wanted to help. His quick thinking and courage saved the child's life and inspired others to act bravely in difficult situations. Sometimes, true bravery comes from caring about others more than yourself.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Omar saw coming from a small house.

- a. water b. light c. smoke d. a dog

2. Omar's brave action helped save a

- a. dog b. child c. firefighter d. hero

3. The underlined word "rescue" means ".....".

- a. arrive b. come c. think d. save

b. Answer the following questions.

4. What would you have done if you were in Omar's place?

5. Give a suitable title to the text.

6. What makes a person truly brave?

٢ نماذج من كتاب التقييمات

C

In England in 1948, there was a special sports event for people who had spinal cord injuries from World War Two. (The spinal cord contains the nerves in the backbone). In 1952, competitors from the Netherlands joined in the special sports event, making it international. This was the beginning of the Paralympic Games, which are now a major international sports event for people with physical disabilities. The Paralympic Games are held immediately after the Olympic Games and in the same place. In 2016 in Brazil, 3,951 athletes from 146 countries competed in the Summer Paralympic Games. Each Paralympic athlete competes against others with a similar disability, such as blindness or loss of an arm or leg. But the Games emphasize what the athletes can do, not their disabilities. One benefit of the Paralympic Games is that ordinary people respect people with disabilities more and are willing to employ them.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The disabled athletes to compete in England special sports event

a. were blind

b. were from the Netherlands

c. had lost an arm or leg

d. had spinal cord injuries

2. The main idea of the text is about

a. games

b. physical strength

c. blindness

d. Paralympic Games

3. The underlined word "major" means

a. main

b. similar

c. ordinary

d. international

b. Answer the following questions.

4. When was the first international sports event for people with disabilities?

5. Where are the Paralympic Games held?

6. Why are events like the Paralympics important for the disabled?

D

Many animals are endangered due to habitat loss, hunting, and pollution. Wildlife conservation helps protect species and maintain balance in nature. National parks, reserves, and breeding programs are methods to save animals. Educating people about endangered species encourages respect for nature. Every small action, like planting trees or avoiding plastic, contributes to wildlife protection. Conservation ensures that future generations can enjoy the beauty and benefits of nature.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Animals are endangered due to

- a. habitat loss b. computers c. music d. cars

2. Conservation includes

- a. breeding programs b. shopping
c. writing d. running

3. The general idea of the text is about ".....".

- a. endangered animals b. natural resources
c. predators d. national parks

b. Answer the following questions.

4. Why are many animals endangered?

5. What methods protect wildlife?

6. Why is conservation important for the future?

السؤال الرابع في الورقة الامتحانية

4 "Story" (Twenty Thousand Leagues under The Sea)

A

نماذج من كتاب الطالب

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. What was the main risk faced by Captain Nemo and his crew?

- a. A dangerous sea monster b. cold weather
c. A submarine breakdown d. Warships

2. To Aronnax, Nemo seemed both brave and
 a. boring b. loyal c. mysterious d. supportive
3. Ned Land was angry because he valued above all.
 a. the sea b. freedom c. treasure d. knowledge
4. Captain Nemo hinted at forgotten civilizations swallowed by the
 a. earth b. storms c. waves d. mountains

b. Answer the following questions.

1. What did Ned Land decide to do while living on Nautilus?

2. Why do you think Captain Nemo's past was kept a secret?

B

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Nemo attacked without hesitations.
 a. warships b. submarines c. islands d. whales
2. Who was the inventor of the Nautilus mentioned in the text ?
 a. Aronnax b. Conseil
 c. Captain Nemo d. Ned Land
3. Captain Nemo's ship, called, was built for life beneath the sea.
 a. Nautilus b. Atlantis c. Sea King d. Odyssey
4. Professor Aronnax was invited to join the
 a. party b. voyage c. army d. flight

b. Answer the following questions.

1. Why do you think Captain Nemo was able to stay calm during such difficult situation?

2. What was the purpose of the diving voyages with Captain Nemo?

نماذج من كتاب التقييمات

C

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Ned Land planned to
 a. explore the sea b. escape c. stay forever d. join Nemo

2. Conseil remained between scientific discovery and his master's choice.

- a. torn b. angry c. sad d. determined

3. The sea monster was described as having a body.

- a. fish-like b. steel-like
c. long-tentacled d. staff

4. Nemo declared that the sea, not , was his only homeland.

- a. the land b. the ocean c. the city d. civilization

b. Answer the following questions.

1. How did professor Aronnax make use of the chance?

.....

2. How did Nemo's actions confirm people's thoughts about him?

.....

D

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. How was the weather described during their escape attempt?

- a. Dangerous and sunny b. Calm and peaceful
c. Clear and sunny d. Foggy and cloudy

2. The Nautilus moved forward into deeper mysteries carrying them far from

- a. land b. war c. safety d. their home

3. Ned Land became part of the

- a. crew b. scientists
c. expedition d. warship crew

4. What did the submarine do to escape the danger?

- a. It dived deeper b. It fought the monster
c. It surfaced slowly d. It broke a path to the surface

b. Answer the following questions.

1. What did the sailors across the oceans report?

.....

2. Why do you think some sailors doubted the existence of the sea monster while others were determined to capture it?

.....

السؤال الخامس في الورقة الامتحانية

5 Rewrite the following sentences:

- A** نماذج من كتاب الطالب 1
1. Nabila isn't using the mobile phone anymore. (used to)
 2. "Why do some animals hibernate?" (The teacher asked ...)
 3. I met a journalist. He writes articles about the environment. (who)

- B**
1. The police came to the crime scene, but the criminal escaped. (before)
 2. His favorite hobby is to write poetry. (enjoy)
 3. The man who stole the money had brown hair. (whose)

2 نماذج من كتاب التقييمات

- C**
1. Why don't we go to the theatre? (I suggest)
 2. The patient bought the medicine. The doctor gave it to him (which)
 3. My mother said, "Clean the room". (My mother ordered ...)

- D**
1. He used to drive his car to work. (not)
 2. "How do doctors diagnose illnesses?" (The boy asked ...)
 3. After she had finished her homework, she read a book. (Before)

السؤال السادس في الورقة الامتحانية

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 نماذج من كتاب الطالب

- A**
1. He refused (wait) for us.
 2. Did the player (used) to win many matches?
 3. That's the restaurant (where) serves the best pizza in town.

- B**
1. After we (reach) the mountain village, it got completely dark.
 2. He (said) his friend if he could lend him some money.
 3. The teacher commanded me (stopping) talking.

C

1. The girl (which) helps me at home is my sister.
2. (Do) you use to travel alone?
3. My sister enjoys (watches) TV at night.

D

1. This is the hotel (where) we stay in.
2. The teacher told me to (writes) the lesson three times.
3. After Eiad (buy) the new camera, he took nice photos.

السؤال السابع في الورقة الامتحانية

7 Complete the following dialogue:

A

١ نماذج من كتاب الطالب

Ayman and Baher are talking about their favorite sports.

Ayman : What's your favorite sport?

Baher : (1)
It's the most popular sport in Egypt.

Ayman : Do you like swimming?

Baher : (2)

Ayman : (3) ?

Baher : I really like LeBron James. He is the best basketball player.

Ayman : Do you prefer team sports or individual sports?

Baher : (4)

I enjoy working together with others.

Ayman : (5) ?

Baher : I usually play twice a week to stay healthy.

B

Lina and Mariam are talking about the spring festival in Thailand.

Lina : Mariam, have you ever watched the spring festival in Thailand on TV?

Mariam : (1) The streets
were full of decorations and music.

Lina : (2) ?

Mariam : People wore colorful clothes and carried flowers during the festivals.

Lina : (3)! I think traditions like this are important because they bring people together and show their culture.

Mariam : Right. They also bring happiness to children and tourists.

Lina : (4) ?

Mariam : Yes, I would love to go there one day.

Lina : That's great. (5)

٢ نماذج من كتاب التقييمات

C

Habiba and Salsabil met after a long absence.

Habiba : Hi! I haven't seen you for a long time. Where have you been?

Salsabil : (1)

Habiba : How was your holiday?

Salsabil : (2) ?

Habiba : (3) ?

Salsabil : We went to the North Coast. It's such an amazing place.

Habiba : Really! Did you go with your parents?

Salsabil : (4) I went with my cousins.

Habiba : (5) ?

Salsabil : Yes. I took many pictures. I'll post them on my Facebook today.

D

A lady is at a watch shop to repair her watch.

Salesman : Can I help you, madam?

Lady : Well, it depends: Do you do watch-repairs?

Salesman : (1)

Lady : Could you examine my watch, please? It's stopped.

Salesman : (2) ?

Lady : Only yesterday. Can you repair it?

Salesman : Yes, I can, but I'm afraid you'll have to leave it.

Lady : All right. When will it be ready?

Salesman : (3) Now you need a receipt.

Lady : Oh, yes. I mustn't forget that. (4) ?

Salesman : No. You won't be able to get the watch without it.

Lady : (5)

السؤال الثامن في الورقة الامتحانية

8 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

1 نماذج من كتاب الطالب

1. A paragraph on : A custom in your family or country.

.....

2. A biography on : A real or local hero you know.

.....

3. A short story on : An adventure you liked.

.....

4. A paragraph on : How you celebrate your birthday.

.....

5. Short notes on : Your personal leadership goal.

.....

2 نماذج من كتاب التقييمات

6. A social media post on : favorite animal.

.....

7. A paragraph on : What sport do you like to compete in?

.....

8. A paragraph on : How to lead a healthy life.

.....

9. A paragraph on : How technology has improved the lives of people.

.....

10. A paragraph on : The Olympic Games.

.....

11. A paragraph on : Arctic Animals.

.....

12. A paragraph on : The important role of Egypt in the world.

.....

Sample Test 1

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The is a cart with two wheels that was pulled by horses in ancient times.
a. knight b. chariot c. campaign d. tribe
- The Olympic flag has five rings to represent the five of the world.
a. continents b. artifacts c. riddles d. predators
- The opposite of "modern" is ".....".
a. flexible b. harsh c. ancient d. loyal
- The suffix "-ence" turns the adjective "excellent" into a/an
a. adjective b. noun c. adverb d. verb

The Answers :

1. 2. 3. 4.

2. Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

artifacts - predators - harsh - stories - adaptation

Egypt has a rich cultural heritage that we are all proud of. When you visit museums, you can see amazing (1)..... from ancient times. These objects tell us (2)..... about the people who lived here. Life in the ancient desert was very (3)....., so people and animals had to be strong. Animals that survive in the desert, like the fennec fox, have special (4)..... to deal with the heat and find food.

The Answers :

1. 2. 3. 4.

3. Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Mohamed Rashwan is a famous Egyptian judo champion. He is remembered for an amazing act of fair play at the 1984 Los Angeles Olympics. Rashwan reached the final and was competing against Japanese opponent, Yasuhiro Yamashita for the gold medal. Before the match, Rashwan's coaches told him that his opponent had a serious injury in his right leg. They advised him to target the injury to win easily.

However, Rashwan refused. He believed in fair play and respect for his opponent. During the match, he did not attack Yamashita's injured leg. Rashwan lost the match and won the silver medal, but he won the respect and admiration of the world. The Japanese people gave him a special award for his sportsmanship. His story teaches us that how you play the game is more important than winning or losing.

5. Rewrite the following sentences:

1. I played tennis in the past, but I don't play it now. (used to)
.....
2. This is the smart athlete. He won the gold medal. (who)
.....
3. Hassan looks forward to finding a good job. (hopes)
.....

The Answers :

1. 2. 3.

6. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Hassan bought a mobile (whose) was expensive.
2. What sports did you (used) to play when you were a child?
3. When the film (end), we went to bed.

The Answers :

1. 2. 3.

7. Complete the following dialogue :

Ali and Tamer are talking about sports.

Ali : What's your favorite sport, Tamer?

Tamer : (1) I'm a big fan of the Egyptian national team.

Ali : Me, too! (2) ?

Tamer : Sport is important because it teaches teamwork and fair play.

Ali : That's true. (3) ?

Tamer : Yes, I used to play for the school team when I was younger.

Ali : Why did you stop playing football?

Tamer : (4)

Ali : What other sports do you like?

Tamer : (5)

The Answers :

1. 2. 3. 4. 5.

8. Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN(110) words on:

"A sports event you attended or watched"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Sample Test 2

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A is a group of families living together with shared traditions.
a. tribe b. campaign c. budget d. knight
2. The antonym of the word "frozen" is ".....".
a. cool b. hard c. solid d. melted
3. The path became and dangerous. Be careful, you may slide.
a. slippery b. expensive c. noisy d. easy
4. The suffix "....." changes the word "challenge" into an adjective.
a. -ment b. -or c. -ing d. -less

The Answers :

1. 2. 3. 4.

2. Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

how - conflict - ceremony - loyal - leader

Every culture has unique traditions that are passed down through generations. In Japan, the tea (1) is a famous example that reflects respect and harmony. In many cultures, being loyal to your family and community is a very important (2) To be a good (3), you must show empathy and understand (4) other people feel.

The Answers :

1. 2. 3. 4.

3. Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Traditions are an important part of every culture. They help people feel connected to their families, communities, and history. Around the world, traditions appear in festivals, food, music, and celebrations. Each tradition tells a story about the values of a society.

For example, in Egypt, it is common for people to wear new clothes and visit relatives during festivals. This tradition, which brings joy and excitement, shows the importance of family. Another important value in Egyptian culture is respect for the elderly. Younger people are taught to greet and care for older people. In Japan, the tea ceremony, which is carefully performed, reflects respect, patience, and harmony. These customs may look different, but they all remind us of shared values: love, respect, and community.

a Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Traditions help people feel to their history.
a. disconnected b. connected c. bored d. angry
2. The antonym of the underlined word "the elderly" is ".....".
a. the poor b. the young c. the dead d. the rich
3. The Japanese tea ceremony reflects respect, patience, and
a. harmony b. hospitality c. conflict d. adaptation

b Answer the following questions :

4. What are two examples of traditions mentioned in the text?
.....
5. What is the main idea of the passage?
.....
6. What shared values do customs from different cultures remind us of?
.....

The Answers :

- a. 1. 2. 3.
b. 4. 5. 6.

4. Story: (Twenty Thousand Leagues Under the Sea)

a Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The men meet the mysterious commander, Captain
a. Aronnax b. Land c. Nemo d. Conseil
2. Captain Nemo told the men they could never return to
a. the ship b. the library c. the sea d. land
3. Ned Land planned to
a. escape b. explore the sea
c. join Nemo d. stay forever
4. was the inventor of Nautilus.
a. Aronnax b. Conseil c. Captain Nemo d. Ned Land

b Answer the following questions :

1. Why did Captain Nemo choose isolation instead of interacting with the world?
.....
2. What did Ned Land decide to do while living on the Nautilus?
.....

The Answers :

- a. 1. 2. 3. 4.
b. 1. 2.

5. Rewrite the following sentences:

1. The teacher praised the student. The student answered the question. (who)
.....
2. After he had had his lunch, he slept. (having)
.....
3. "Don't touch the artifacts," the guide said to the tourists. (told)
.....

The Answers :

1.
2.
3.

6. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. This is the man (which) helped me carry my bags.
2. They hoped (find) a solution to the problem.
3. He (said) his uncle if he could come early.

The Answers :

1.
2.
3.

7. Complete the following dialogue :

A tourist is asking a guide about the Egyptian traditions.

Tourist: I'm very interested in the Egyptian culture. (1).....?

Guide : One of our most important values is hospitality. We love welcoming guests.

Tourist: That's lovely. What do people usually do during festivals like Eid?

Guide : (2)..... . It's a time for family.

Tourist: (3)..... ?

Guide : Yes, we do. We often prepare special meals and sweets like Kahk.

Tourist: What about dealing with the elderly?

Guide : (4)..... . We are taught to care for them.

Tourist: Thank you for sharing that.

Guide : (5)..... I hope you enjoy your time in Egypt.

The Answers :

1.
2.
3.
4.
5.

8. Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN(110) words on:

"An important tradition in your family or community"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Sample Test 3

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Polar bears have white fur for, which helps them hide in the snow.
a. camouflage b. inspiration c. conservation d. migration
2. The opposite of "courage" is ".....".
a. wisdom b. strength c. fear d. empathy
3. A is a person or group that competes with another.
a. rival b. leader c. judge d. community
4. We can form the noun from the verb "perform" by adding the suffix ".....".
a. -ship b. -ance c. -ness d. -ly

The Answers :

1. 2. 3. 4.

2. Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

motivated - slippery - hospitality - challenging - determined

I recently read a story about a man who went on a solo motorcycle ride across Egypt. He was (1) to prove he could do it alone, even though it was (2) In some parts, the roads were wet and (3), but he kept going. When he met local people, they showed him great (4) and offered him food and help.

The Answers :

1. 2. 3. 4.

3. Read the following text, then answer the questions :

A treasure hunt is a game where players follow a series of clues to find a hidden prize. Treasure hunts are popular in schools to make learning fun. Teachers may hide cards around the classroom, each with a question. When students solve the question, they get the next clue. This activity encourages teamwork, problem-solving, and quick thinking.

In history, real treasure hunts were often connected to explorers and pirates. Many legends tell about pirates hiding gold on islands and brave sailors searching for it. Even today, some people search for lost treasures, such as sunken ships or valuable artifacts. A treasure hunt is more than just a game-it builds skills.

a Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A treasure hunt is a game where players follow
 a. maps b. pirates c. clues d. artifacts
2. In schools, treasure hunts are used to make learning
 a. hard b. fun c. easy d. short
3. The underlined word "valuable" means ".....".
 a. having a high price or worth b. very old
 c. easy to find d. hidden

b Answer the following questions :

4. What three skills does a treasure hunt encourage?

5. In history, who was connected to real treasure hunts?

6. Why is a treasure hunt considered "more than just a game"?

The Answers :

- a. 1. 2. 3.
 b. 4. 5. 6.

4. Story: (Twenty Thousand Leagues Under the Sea)

a Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Professor Aronnax saw amazing glowing with color.
 a. sea monsters b. coral reefs c. submarines d. sunken cities
2. Ned Land missed his and wanted to return to land.
 a. freedom b. harpoon c. crew d. money
3. Captain Nemo spoke passionately against
 a. wealth b. injustice c. education d. discovery
4. Conseil remained calm and loyal to.....
 a. Captain Nemo b. Nautilus
 c. Ned Land d. Aronnax

b Answer the following questions :

1. What was Captain Nemo's role in facing the dangers on the submarine?

2. Why do you think Captain Nemo keep his past hidden?

The Answers :

- a. 1. 2. 3. 4.
 b. 1. 2.

5. Rewrite the following sentences :

1. "Did you find the treasure?" he asked me. (if)

2. She finished her homework. Then she watched TV. (After)

3. This is the pupil. His book is lost. (whose)

The Answers :

1. 2. 3.

6. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. I enjoy (read) adventure stories about explorers.

2. She wanted to know if I (have) a car.

3. By the time we (arrive) cinema, it had started already.

The Answers :

1. 2. 3.

7. Complete the following dialogue :

Hagar and Fatima are at the bus stop.

Hagar : Good morning, Fatima. Where are you going ?

Fatima : Good morning, Hagar. I'm going to school, but the bus seems late.

Hagar : (1) ?

Fatima : Yes, it usually comes at 7:30.

Hagar : Don't worry. (2)

Fatima : (3) I hope it arrives soon.

Hagar : If it doesn't arrive, we can walk together to the next station.

Fatima : That's a good idea ! (4) ?

Hagar : Sure, I don't mind walking.

Fatima : (5)

The Answers :

1. 2. 3. 4. 5.

8. Write a short story of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A time you (or someone) got lost and had to use survival skills"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Sample Test 4

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- is when animals travel from one place to another at certain times of the year.
a. Migration b. Imagination c. Conservation d. Campaign
- We can get the adjective from the word "comfort" by adding the suffix ".....".
a. -ment b. -ly c. -able d. -tion
- It's a breathtaking scenery. That means it is
a. hard b. terrible c. amazing d. awful
- The words "brave" or "courageous" are ".....".
a. verbs b. opposites c. antonyms d. synonyms

The Answers :

1. 2. 3. 4.

2. Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

strength – fresh – exercise – old – weakness

Sports are very important for all ages. Both the young and the (1) can take part in games and activities. Regular (2) helps the body stay strong and keeps the mind (3) Playing football, swimming, or even walking gives people (4) to do their daily tasks. Many people also enjoy watching sport together as a social activity.

The Answers :

1. 2. 3. 4.

3. Read the following text, then answer the questions :

The Arctic is one of the Earth's most extreme environments, with freezing temperatures and months of darkness. However, remarkable animals survive there. Polar bears are perfect Arctic survivors. Their thick, white fur provides warmth and perfect camouflage against the snow. Under their fur, they have black skin which absorbs heat from the sun. Their large paws work like snowshoes, helping them walk on thin ice.

Arctic foxes also show amazing seasonal adaptations. In winter, their fur turns completely white and becomes thicker. During summer, it changes to brown or gray to mix with the rocks and vegetation. Male emperor penguins also survive the cold by gathering in large groups to stay warm while protecting their eggs.

a Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The polar bear's fur provides warmth and
a. camouflage b. food c. heat d. darkness
2. The underlined pronoun "their" refers to
a. polar bears b. zebras
c. Arctic foxes d. emperor penguins
3. Arctic foxes change their fur color in the to match the rocks.
a. winter b. spring c. summer d. fall

b Answer the following questions :

4. What is the best title for the passage?
.....
5. How do you think Arctic foxes adapt to winter?
.....
6. How do emperor penguins stay warm in the freezing winds?
.....

The Answers :

- a. 1. 2. 3.
b. 4. 5. 6.

4. Story: (Twenty Thousand Leagues Under the Sea)

a Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The Nautilus was attacked by a
a. warship b. giant squid c. shark d. ghost
2. The submarine also got trapped under thick at the South Pole.
a. water b. sand c. seaweed d. ice
3. The sea monster was described as having a body.
a. fish-like b. steel-like
c. long-tentacled d. staff
4. To Aronnax, Nemo seemed both brave and
a. boring b. loyal c. mysterious d. supportive

b Answer the following questions :

1. What happened at dawn after the storm?
.....
2. How do you think Conseil's calmness helped during their underwater exploration?
.....

The Answers :

- a. 1. 2. 3. 4.
b. 1. 2.

5. Rewrite the following sentences :

1. "Do polar bears live in the desert?" (She asked if)
.....
2. We ate dinner, then we went for a walk. (After)
.....
3. This is the hospital. My father works in it. (where)
.....

The Answers :

1.
2.
3.

6. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. The teacher asked the student why he (is) late.
2. We (visit) Rome before we traveled to London.
3. Salma promised (calling) me after the exam.

The Answers :

1.
2.
3.

7. Complete the following dialogue :

Hana and Sara are talking about animal adaptations.

Hana : I'm reading a book about desert animals. It's fascinating.

Sara : What desert animal is it about?

Hana : (1)

Sara : (2) ?

Hana : Fennec foxes' ears help them lose heat to stay cool. They also help them hear prey underground.

Sara : That's a clever adaptation! What about camels?

Hana : (3)

Sara : Humps! (4) ?

Hana : They store fat for energy, not water. And their wide feet stop them sinking in sand.

Sara : Animals are amazing survivors.

Hana : (5) Their camouflage is also important for hiding.

The Answers :

1.
2.
3.
4.
5.

8. Write a review of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on :

"The fennec fox's adaptations"

.....

.....

.....

Sample Test 5

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We can form the noun from the verb "press" by adding the suffix ".....".
a. -ment b. -tion c. -ure d. -ly
2. The view from the mountain was, we couldn't stop looking at it.
a. breathtaking b. loyal c. flexible d. boring
3. The opposite of "failure" is ".....".
a. conflict b. empathy c. budget d. success
4. A is a person who is very good at a sport and wins competitions.
a. champion b. knight c. predator d. rival

The Answers :

1. 2. 3. 4.

2. Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

empathy - heritage - students - landmarks - motivated

Our school started a campaign to encourage students to read more. The team leader was very (1) and inspired everyone to work hard. She showed great (2) by listening to everyone's ideas. Our plan is to create posters showing famous (3) from around the world to encourage (4) to read about different cultures.

The Answers :

1. 2. 3. 4.

3. Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Last summer, I decided to take a solo motorcycle ride from Cairo to Luxor. Many people thought I was crazy, but I was determined to try. The first week was exhausting. I got lost several times and struggled alone. But in small towns along the Nile Valley, friendly people helped me fix my motorcycle and suggested excellent street food. Their kindness helped me not to give up.

As I continued southward, the landscape changed from green fields to endless desert. The most memorable moment happened near Luxor. I saw an incredible sunset that painted the sandstone cliffs in brilliant colors. In the end, I realized this journey had changed me. I had discovered an inner strength I never knew I had.

a Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The underlined word "exhausting" is close in meaning to ".....".
a. helpful b. simple c. tiring d. useful

2. The narrator's journey was
 a. solo b. with friends c. with family d. easy
3. The most memorable moment was near Luxor.
 a. fixing the motorcycle b. eating street food
 c. seeing the sunset d. getting lost

b Answer the following questions :

4. What challenges did the narrator face during the first week?

5. What is the main idea of the passage?

6. How did the journey change the narrator in the end?

The Answers :

- a. 1. 2. 3.
 b. 4. 5. 6.

4. Story: (Twenty Thousand Leagues Under the Sea)

a Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Aronnax realized Captain Nemo was a man of wealth, education, and
 a. sorrow b. joy c. freedom d. loyalty
2. Ned Land was angry and argued that Nemo had no right to keep them as
 a. guests b. crew c. prisoners d. scientists
3. The companions saw glowing with color through the great observation.
 a. fish b. coral reefs c. shipwrecks d. sharks
4. For Aronnax, the ocean was a school of
 a. mercy b. courage
 c. tension d. wonder

b Answer the following questions :

1. How did the crew manage to survive the attack from the giant squid?

2. How did Aronnax feel when he saw the graveyard of sunken ships in your opinion?

The Answers :

- a. 1. 2. 3. 4.
 b. 1. 2.

5. Rewrite the following sentences :

1. He packed his bag. Then, he went to the station. (After)
.....
2. He said to me, "Do you like fish?" (asked)
.....
3. It was his habit to arrive late. (used)
.....

The Answers :

1. 2. 3.

6. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. After I (finish) my homework, I went to bed.
2. My uncle didn't (used) to work in a bank.
3. Ramadan is the month (which) we fast.

The Answers :

1. 2. 3.

7. Complete the following dialogue :

Mona and Salma are planning a holiday.

Mona: I'm so excited for our trip to Luxor next week!

Salma: Me, too! (1) ?

Mona: We are traveling by train. I have already booked the tickets.

Salma: Why did you choose to travel by train?

Mona: (2)

Salma: Great! What do you want to see first?

Mona: The temples and the tombs. Have you ever been to Luxor ?

Salma: (3)

Mona: Only Aswan! (4) ?

Salma: I was most excited to see Abu Simbel and Philae Temples.

Mona: Will you bring your new camera ?

Salma: (5)

The Answers :

1. 2. 3. 4. 5.

8. Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"An unforgettable trip"

.....

.....

.....

Sample Test 6

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A/An is a soldier in the Middle Ages.
 a. actor b. dentist c. knight d. astronaut
2. To get the noun from the adjective "fit", we add the suffix ".....".
 a. -ness b. -er c. -al d. -ment
3. The wise person good choices to improve his life.
 a. plays b. does c. makes d. goes
4. The opposite of "brave" is ".....".
 a. loyal b. determined c. cowardly d. motivated

The Answers :

1. 2. 3. 4.

2. Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

amazing - funny - difficult - scare - monkey

Last summer, my family and I went on a camping trip in the forest. The place was (1) with tall green trees and birds singing everywhere. Setting up the tent was a bit (2), but we were excited. While enjoying our picnic, something funny happened. A hungry monkey suddenly appeared and tried to steal fruit from our basket. I jumped to (3) it away, but I slipped and fell, which made everyone laugh. The (4) ran off with an apple, and I felt very embarrassed. It was an amazing day that we still talk about and laugh at it.

The Answers :

1. 2. 3. 4.

3. Read the following text, then answer the questions :

What makes an effective leader? Modern research shows that the most effective leaders share key qualities. Great leaders communicate clearly and listen carefully. They show empathy which means they understand others' feelings and viewpoints. This builds trust and helps solve conflicts peacefully. Emotional intelligence allows them to build respectful, strong team relationships.

Successful leaders are also adaptable, ready to adjust plans and welcome new ideas. They have a clear vision and set goals, but they also celebrate progress to keep their teams motivated. Importantly, the best leaders never stop learning. They admit mistakes, ask for feedback, and work to improve. Leadership isn't about having all the answers, but about guiding others with honesty and a willingness to develop.

a Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The underlined word "vision" is close in meaning to the word ".....".
a. conflict b. pride c. opinion d. risk
2. leaders are ready to adjust plans and welcome new ideas.
a. Adaptable b. Traditional c. Harsh d. Slippery
3. The best leaders never stop
a. thinking b. talking c. learning d. leading

b Answer the following questions :

4. According to the text, what are two the qualities of an effective leader?
.....
5. How does showing empathy help a leader?
.....
6. Give a suitable title for the passage.
.....

The Answers :

- a. 1. 2. 3.
b. 4. 5. 6.

4. Story : (Twenty Thousand Leagues Under the Sea)

a Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The three companions planned their during a strong storm.
a. voyage b. escape c. attack d. return
2. At dawn, exhausted and half-conscious, they reached the safety of the
a. Nautilus b. shore c. submarine d. ship
3. Conseil remained between scientific discovery and his master's choice.
a. torn b. angry c. sad d. determined
4. Ned Land, a Canadian harpooner, became part of the
a. crew b. scientists c. treasure d. flight

b Answer the following questions :

1. What role did professor Aronnax play in the voyage?
.....
2. What do you think the purpose of the diving voyages with captain Nemo was?
.....

The Answers :

- a. 1. 2. 3. 4.
b. 1. 2.

5. Rewrite the following sentences :

1. "Listen to the guide," the teacher said to us. (told)
.....
2. Ahmed decided not to smoke. (avoided)
.....
3. We reached the park, then we had lunch. (Before)
.....

The Answers :

1.
2.
3.

6. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. The coach ordered the players (run) faster.
2. After we (have) dinner, we walked.
3. Hassan refused (waiting) for us.

The Answers :

1.
2.
3.

7. Complete the following dialogue :

Ayman and Baher are talking about their favorite sports.

Ayman : What's your favorite sport?

Baher : (1) Mo Salah is my favorite player.

Ayman : Do you like swimming?

Baher : (2)

Ayman : (3) ?

Baher : I really like Lebron James. He is the best basketball player.

Ayman : Do you prefer team sports or individual sports?

Baher : (4) I enjoy working together with others.

Ayman : (5) ?

Baher : I usually play twice a week to stay healthy.

The Answers :

1.
2.
3.
4.
5.

8. Write a review of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"The qualities that make an effective leader"

.....

.....

.....

.....

Sample Test 7

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- is a key value in Egypt, where guests are welcomed warmly.
a. Hospitality b. Adaptation c. Harmony d. Strategy
- A successful leader has a clear for the team's goals.
a. vision b. conflict c. artifact d. identity
- The words "peace" and "war" are
a. adjectives b. verbs c. synonyms d. antonyms
- To form the adjective from the noun "culture", we add the suffix ".....".
a. -ous b. -al c. -ment d. -er

The Answers :

1. 2. 3. 4.

2. Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

continents - countries - Athletes - held - sports

The Olympic Games are the most famous sports event in the world. Today, they are (1) every four years in different countries. (2) from more than 200 nations come together to compete in many (3) such as football, swimming, athletics and gymnastics. The Olympic flag, with its five rings, represents the five (4) Africa, Europe, Asia, Australia and the Americas of the world united in friendship.

The Answers :

1. 2. 3. 4.

3. Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Sport has been part of human life for thousands of years. In ancient times, people competed to show strength, speed, and skill. For example, the Olympic Games began in Greece more than 2,700 years ago. They included running, wrestling, and discus throwing. These games were not only for fun, but also to bring communities together.

Modern sports started to grow in the 19th century. Football, tennis, and cricket became **popular** in England and soon spread across the world. The modern Olympic Games were restarted in 1896 in Athens. Sport is now practiced not only for winning, but also for teamwork, fair play, and health.

a Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The ancient Olympic Games began in
 a. England b. France c. Egypt d. Greece
2. The underlined word "**popular**" is the opposite of ".....".
 a. known b. unknown c. brilliant d. crazy
3. The modern Olympic Games were restarted in
 a. 1912 b. 1896 c. 1900 d. 2000

b Answer the following questions :

4. What sports were included in the ancient Olympic Games?

5. Why do you think sport is an important part of our life?

6. What is the main idea of the passage?

The Answers :

- a. 1. 2. 3.
 b. 4. 5. 6.

4. Story: (Twenty Thousand Leagues Under the Sea)

a Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. was the professor who was curious about the sea.
 a. Aronnax b. Nemo c. Land d. Conseil
2. was the harpooner who wanted freedom.
 a. Aronnax b. Nemo c. Ned Land d. Conseil
3. Nemo attacked without hesitation.
 a. warships b. submarines c. islands d. whales
4. was the inventor of the Nautilus.
 a. Aronnax b. Conseil c. Nemo d. Ned Land

b Answer the following questions :

1. How do you think the three companions felt when they reached the shore?

2. What happened when the submarine was attacked by a giant squid?

The Answers :

- a. 1. 2. 3. 4.
 b. 1. 2.

5. Rewrite the following sentences :

1. This is the player. He won the award for fair play. (who)
.....
2. "Finish your homework," my mother said to me. (told)
.....
3. She finished reading the book, then she slept. (Before)
.....

The Answers :

1.
2.
3.

6. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. He (use) to be a champion, but now he is a coach.
2. The leader (whose) inspired the team was very kind.
3. The manager ordered the employees (finish) the work.

The Answers :

1.
2.
3.

7. Complete the following dialogue :

Karim and Omar are talking about the school sports day.

Karim: Did you enjoy the school sports day yesterday?

Omar: (1)! I really enjoyed the running competitions.

Karim: (2)?

Omar: I competed in the 100-meter race.

Karim: How did you do?

Omar: (3) I won a silver medal!

Karim: Congratulations! (4)?

Omar: Yes, I did. I used to practice hard and run every day when I was younger.

Karim: I think sports are important. They teach us fair play and teamwork.

Omar: (5) And they are a great way to stay healthy.

The Answers :

1.
2.
3.
4.
5.

8. Write a biography of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on :

"A famous athlete"

.....

.....

.....

.....

Sample Test 8

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A historical object from the past, like an old pot, is a/an.....
a. artifact b. explorer c. clue d. tribe
2. The map had a that we couldn't solve to find the next clue.
a. riddle b. shelter c. torch d. strategy
3. The synonym of "courageous" is ".....".
a. scared b. memorable c. brave d. fearful
4. To get the noun of the verb "win", we add the suffix ".....".
a. -al b. -er c. -or d. -ness

The Answers :

1. 2. 3. 4.

2. Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

artifact - clue - breathtaking - weather - slippery

We went on a camping trip last weekend. The path to the waterfall was (1)..... because it had rained, so we walked carefully. When we arrived, the view was (2)..... . On the way back, we found an interesting (3)..... in the sand, which looked like a very old pot. We thought it might be a (4)..... to finding an old village.

The Answers :

1. 2. 3. 4.

3. Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Life in the desert is extremely challenging. Too much heat during the day and freezing cold at night create **harsh** conditions. However, some amazing creatures have developed incredible adaptations to survive. The fennec fox is perfectly adapted to desert life. Its large ears help it lose heat and hear prey moving underground. The fox has thick fur on its feet to protect against hot sand.

Camels are also famous for their survival skills. They can drink huge amounts of water quickly. Their humps contain fat, which provides energy during long journeys. Their wide feet prevent them from sinking into sand, and their long eyelashes protect their eyes from sandstorms.

a Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The text is mainly about ".....".
a. Desert predators b. Arctic animals
c. Jungle survival d. Desert animal adaptations

2. The fennec fox uses its large ears to lose heat and
 a. hear prey b. find water c. store fat d. sink in sand
3. The underlined word "harsh" is close in meaning to the word ".....".
 a. simple b. difficult c. easy d. useful

b Answer the following questions :

4. Why do you think life in the desert is challenging?

5. What protects the fennec fox's feet from hot sand?

6. What are two adaptations camels have for living in the desert?

The Answers :

- a. 1. 2. 3.
 b. 4. 5. 6.

4. Story: (Twenty Thousand Leagues Under the Sea)

a Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Nemo invited his guests on diving voyages using special
 a. submarines b. windows c. suits d. ships
2. Ned Land became impatient because he missed and fresh air.
 a. freedom b. the sea c. hunting d. gold
3. The men saw a huge that attacked the submarine.
 a. shark b. whale c. squid d. crab
4. The story is full of adventure and
 a. magic b. mystery c. sadness d. comedy

b Answer the following questions :

1. How did Captain Nemo compare the sea to the land?

2. If you were in Ned Land's place, would you try to escape or stay on the ship? Why?

The Answers :

- a. 1. 2. 3. 4.
 b. 1. 2.

5. Rewrite the following sentences :

1. He likes to read adventure stories. (enjoys)

2. "Do you like desert animals?" she asked me. (if)

3. This is the book. I bought it yesterday. (which)

The Answers :

1. 2. 3.

6. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. He enjoys (write) stories about survival.

2. The teacher asked the student if he (can) swim.

3. The explorer decided (following) the river.

The Answers :

1. 2. 3.

7. Complete the following dialogue :

Mr. Atef is at the mechanic's.

Mr. Atef : Will you have a look at my motorbike, please ?

Mechanic : (1)

Mr. Atef : It is not running very well and it doesn't start easily.

Mechanic : (2) ?

Mr. Atef : Yes, it becomes hot very quickly.

Mechanic : I will check the engine for you and find out the problem.

Mr. Atef : (3) ?

Mechanic : After 3 hours.

Mr. Atef : Shall I give you a call first ?

Mechanic : (4)

Mr. Atef : When do you close the workshop ?

Mechanic : (5)

The Answers :

1. 2. 3. 4. 5.

**8. Write a social media post of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:
"Arctic animals"**

.....

.....

.....

.....

Sample Test 9

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Animals use to blend in with their surroundings.
a. camouflage b. pollution c. conversation d. migration
2. "....." means showed sudden fear.
a. Delighted b. Glad c. Funny d. Panicked
3. The suffix "-tion" in "conservation" changes the word into a/an
a. adjective b. verb c. noun d. adverb
4. The opposite of "strong" is ".....".
a. weak b. harsh c. hard d. difficult

The Answers :

1. 2. 3. 4.

2. Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

energy - plants - store - predators - create

Desert tortoises are masters of water conservation. They can (1) water in their bodies for months and get water from the (2) they eat. Their hard shells protect them from (3) and extreme temperatures. When food becomes scarce, they can slow down their use of (4) and survive without eating.

The Answers :

1. 2. 3. 4.

3. Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Mohamed Salah was born in a small village in Egypt, in 1992. From a young age, he showed great interest in football. Salah spent hours practicing with a ball in the streets of his village.

By the time he joined El Mokawaloon, he had already trained for many years with great dedication and patience. His hard work finally paid off when he signed with FC Basel in Switzerland—it was the start of his international journey.

Salah later played for Chelsea, Roma, and Liverpool, where he achieved incredible success. He scored record-breaking goals, won the Champions League, and was named one of the best footballers in the world.

a Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Before Salah joined FC Basel, he had played for
 a. Rome b. Chelsea c. El Mokawloon d. Liverpool
2. The main idea of the text is about ".....".
 a. Roman soldiers b. Money
 c. A famous football player d. Egypt
3. The opposite of the underlined "success" is
 a. progress b. failure c. achievement d. happiness

b Answer the following questions :

4. Where was Mohamed Salah born?

5. How did Salah spend most of his free time?

6. What record did Salah break at Liverpool?

The Answers :

- a. 1. 2. 3.
 b. 4. 5. 6.

4. Story: (Twenty Thousand Leagues Under the Sea)

a Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Ned Land planned to from the Nautilus.
 a. escape b. steal c. fight d. jump
2. Aronnax was torn between scientific discovery and
 a. freedom b. wealth c. sorrow d. fear
3. Professor Aronnax was invited to join the
 a. party b. voyage c. army d. flight
4. The Nautilus moved forward into deeper mysteries, carrying them far from
 a. land b. war c. safety d. warships

b Answer the following questions :

1. How would you describe the relationship between Captain Nemo and his crew ?

2. Who killed the giant squid ?

The Answers :

- a. 1. 2. 3. 4.
 b. 1. 2.

5. Rewrite the following sentences :

1. "Where do fennec foxes live?" he asked. (wanted to know)
.....
2. He played for a famous club in the past, but he doesn't now. (used to)
.....
3. Cairo is the city. I live there. (where)
.....

The Answers :

1.
2.
3.

6. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. My brother (use) to play judo, but now he plays tennis.
2. The student asked the teacher if polar bears (hibernates).
3. (Were) you use to watch cartoons when you were young?

The Answers :

1.
2.
3.

7. Complete the following dialogue :

Ahmed and Mona are speaking about finding a job.

Mona : What is your dream job ?

Ahmed : (1)

Mona : (2) ?

Ahmed : As I've graduated from the faculty of commerce.

Mona : (3) ?

Ahmed : I prefer to find a job in the private sector.

Mona : (4)

Ahmed : I know it's not easy, but I must try.

Mona : Why don't you read the advertisement in the newspaper?

Ahmed : (5)

Mona : I wish you good luck.

Ahmed : Thank you.

The Answers :

1.
2.
3.
4.
5.

8. Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"Your favorite sport and why you like it"

.....

.....

.....

.....

Sample Test 10

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- "....." means smooth and hard to stand on because you might slide.
a. Hard b. Harsh c. Instant d. Slippery
- To form the adjective of the noun person, we add the suffix ".....".
a. -or b. -er c. -al d. -ment
- The opposite of "remember" is ".....".
a. forget b. receive c. adapt d. decide
- Our trip to the Pyramids was ; we will never forget it.
a. unforgettable b. slippery c. solo d. harsh

The Answers :

1. 2. 3. 4.

2. Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

seaside - beauty - snorkel - trip - snorkling

Last winter, Sophie, a tourist from France, visited Dahab on the Red Sea. She had dreamed of visiting Egypt before she finally made the (1)..... Before arriving in Dahab, she had read about its (2)..... and the hospitality of its people. She loved the relaxing atmosphere of the small town and spent her mornings walking along the (3)..... After exploring the beaches, she went (4)..... at the Blue Hole, where she saw colorful fish and coral reefs.

The Answers :

1. 2. 3. 4.

3. Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Last summer, my family went on a simple camping trip to Wadi El-Rayan. On the second day, we decided to take a challenging hiking trail to see a remote waterfall. The scenery was breathtaking. Suddenly, dark clouds gathered, and heavy rain started pouring down. We weren't prepared for such conditions. The path became slippery and dangerous, so we took shelter under some large rocks.

While waiting, we met another family. They shared their extra food and warm blankets with us. We spent hours talking and laughing. When the rain finally stopped, we had made new lifelong friends. That unexpected experience turned our ordinary camping trip into an unforgettable one.

a Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The underlined word "prepared" is similar to in meaning.
a. ready b. focused c. afraid d. amazed

2. The path became dangerous because of
 a. wild animals b. darkness c. the rain d. trees
3. The positive result of the storm was
 a. seeing the waterfall b. finishing the hike
 c. making new friends d. finding shelter

b Answer the following questions :

4. What was the scenery like on the hiking trail?

5. What is the main idea of the text?

6. How did the other family show kindness?

The Answers :

- a. 1. 2. 3.
 b. 4. 5. 6.

4. Story: (Twenty Thousand Leagues Under the Sea)

a Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Captain Nemo's submarine was named the
 a. Nautilus b. Monster c. Warship d. Harpoon
2. was the harpooner who valued freedom most of all.
 a. Aronnax b. Conseil c. Nemo d. Ned Land
3. The ship's crew chased the creature after it
 a. swam away b. attacked them
 c. appeared in the waves d. dove underwater
4. Professor Aronnax accepted to be on the Nautilus because of his
 a. poverty b. curiosity
 c. fear d. desire for freedom

b Answer the following questions :

1. What did the ship claim ?

2. Why do you think Captain Nemo chose to fight against cruelty land ?

The Answers :

- a. 1. 2. 3. 4.
 b. 1. 2.

5. Rewrite the following sentences :

1. He decided to go on the trip. (not mind)

2. We finished our lunch. Then we played football. (After)

3. Ali is my friend. He helped me a lot. (who)

The Answers :

1. 2. 3.

6. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. The explorer avoided (drink) unclear water.

2. After she (eat) breakfast, she went to school.

3. I didn't want to go to the cinema because I (see) that movie before.

The Answers :

1. 2. 3.

7. Complete the following dialogue :

Yara and Mariam are planning a treasure hunt.

Yara : Let's plan a treasure hunt for the school party!

Mariam : (1) ! Where should we hide the final treasure?

Yara : We can hide it in the library behind the new books.

Mariam : What do we need to do first ?

Yara : (2) The first clue can be a riddle

Mariam : (3) ?

Yara : We can hide it in the garden. And the second clue can be a map.

Mariam : This will be so much fun. Treasure hunts teach teamwork.

Yara : (4)

Mariam : (5) ?

Yara : It can be a box of chocolates and a small trophy.

The Answers :

1. 2. 3. 4. 5.

8. Write an email of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on How we can protect our nature. Your name is Khaled. Your email address is khaled22@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is maged90@gmail.com.

From

To

Subject

..... ,

Sample Test 11

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. means protecting nature and natural resources.
a. Loyalty b. Conservation c. Wisdom d. Connection
3. He trained hard every day to more goals for his team.
a. score b. pass c. miss d. save
3. The opposite of "courage" is ".....".
a. kindness b. fear c. pride d. calmness
4. The suffix "-d" turns the verb "amaze" into a/an
a. verb b. adjective c. adverb d. noun

The Answers :

1. 2. 3. 4.

2. Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

argument - important - region - pasta - traditions

Italy is a country rich in traditions that bring families and communities together. One of the most famous (1)..... is the celebration on food. Italians enjoy long family gathering, often starting with (2)..... and ending with coffee. Every (3)..... has its own special dishes, such as pizza in Naples and risotto in Milan. Festivals are also a/an (4)..... part of Italian culture.

The Answers :

1. 2. 3. 4.

3. Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Buying and selling is part of everyday activities. People used to do this long ago. But shopping habits changed a lot. In the past you could deal directly with a person. You could talk to the seller and even ask for advice about the best quality and price. When there was a problem, you could go to the shop and explain it. At that time, you could solve any problem at once. Buying and selling today depend on a lot of online activities. First, you must log on the internet and choose price, the quality and time of delivery. You must provide correct and clear information to get your product. When there is a problem, you must fill in a form describing it clearly. An online assistant will contact you. But it may take a long time to get a reply. The biggest problem is that some companies can't be reached easily because they may be far away from you or you don't know the exact address. To buy online, you must be careful about your personal information. You must keep it secret and deal with trusted online companies.

a Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The best title for the passage is ".....".
 a. Shopping b. Buying c. Selling d. Internet
2. Some companies can't be reached easily because from you.
 a. they are protected b. their products are expensive
 c. they are far away d. they are usually closed
3. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the
 a. problem b. product c. correct price d. good quality

b Answer the following questions :

4. Explain why there may be a problem when you buy something online?

5. Are there any new shopping habits today? Mention one.

6. How can you protect your personal information when you buy something online?

The Answers :

- a. 1. 2. 3.
 b. 4. 5. 6.

4. Story: (Twenty Thousand Leagues Under the Sea)

a Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. What was the name of Captain Nemo's submarine?
 a. The Monster b. The Harpoon c. The Nautilus d. The Explorer
2. Who was the harpooner who wanted freedom?
 a. Aronnax b. Conseil c. Nemo d. Ned Land
3. Nemo declared that the sea, not, was his only homeland.
 a. the land b. the forest c. the city d. the civilization
4. The story was written by
 a. Jules Verne b. Mark Twain
 c. Charles Dickens d. Robert Louin Stevenson

b Answer the following questions :

1. What can we learn from Captain Nemo's leadership ?

2. What did Nemo invite his guests to do ?

- a. 1. 2. 3. 4.
 b. 1. 2.

5. Rewrite the following sentences :

1. "Do you like sports?" he asked. (if)
.....
2. "Don't talk in the library." The teacher said to the students. (ordered)
.....
3. He ate his dinner and left the house. (After)
.....

The Answers :

1.
2.
3.

6. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. He (use) to play judo when he was young.
2. This is the man (which) won the competition.
3. He asked me if I (can) help him.

The Answers :

1.
2.
3.

7. Complete the following dialogue :

At the doctor's clinic.

Doctor : Hello, what's the matter with you?

Adam : (1)

Doctor : (2) ?

Adam : No, just the headache.

Doctor : You should drink more water and get some rest.

Adam : (3) ?

Doctor : Yes, I'll give you some mild medicine for pain.

Adam : Thank you, doctor.

Doctor : (4) I hope you get well soon!

Adam : (5)

The Answers :

1.
2.
3.
4.
5.

8. Write a biography of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A person you admire for their leadership or fair play"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Sample Test 12

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A two-wheeled cart pulled by horses in ancient races was a
a. chariot b. tribe c. clue d. shelter
2. They saw fish with different colors. This means the fish were
a. plain b. pale c. colorless d. colorful
3. The opposite of "inspire" is ".....".
a. improve b. respect c. discourage d. develop
4. We add the suffix "....." to form the noun of the word "present".
a. -tion b. -sion c. -ive d. -ment

The Answers :

1. 2. 3. 4.

2. Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

strange - storytellers - enemies - leadership - strength

Salah El-Din was a wise and powerful leader. He is a symbol of strength and intelligence. He fought bravely to defeat his (1)..... and defend the land. His (2)..... in battles showed that real heroes win not only by physical (3)....., but also with wisdom. Egyptian (4)..... still tell his adventures.

The Answers :

1. 2. 3. 4.

3. Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Today is a special day for Talia. She is getting ready for a dinner celebration. She wants to look very nice for her night out. First, she gets her hair cut at a salon. A salon is a place where people go to get their hair and nails done. Then, she gets her fingernails painted pink. A woman who works at the salon paints Talia's nails. Talia is not happy with the color. She asks the woman to change the color to purple. She likes the purple very much. It is almost time to go out. Talia goes home and looks in her closet. She tries on a pair of light blue pants with a white shirt. She tries on a purple dress with a black belt. She tries on a brown skirt with a green top. She wears the purple dress. Many of her friends and family are at the restaurant when she gets there. She hugs her mother and father. She gives her grandfather a kiss. Talia's sister gives her a big smile. Her best friend, Esraa, gives her a present. Tomorrow is Talia's birthday, but she is celebrating it tonight. "Happy Birthday, Talia," they say. "You look great!" "I feel great because all of you are here," says Talia, "for my last night as a teenager."

5. Rewrite the following sentences :

1. "Don't be late for the match, Ali" the coach said. (advised)
.....
2. This is the athlete. He won the silver medal. (who)
.....
3. The police came to the crime scene, but the criminal escaped. (before)
.....

The Answers :

1.
2.
3.

6. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My grandfather (use) to tell us stories about ancient Egypt when we were children.
2. You should avoid (make) bad friends.
3. This is the festival (where) is celebrated in spring.

The Answers :

1.
2.
3.

7. Complete the following dialogue :

Malak is buying a blouse at a clothes shop.

Malak : Excuse me! I'm looking for a blouse .

Salesman : What colour do you want ?

Malak : (1).....

Salesman : Look at this one. (2)..... ?

Malak : Yes, I will try it on. (3)..... ?

Salesman : You can try it on in this room.

Malak : It fits me well. How much is it ?

Salesman : (4).....

Malak : Here you are. Can you wrap it , please ?

Salesman : (5).....

The Answers :

1.
2.
3.
4.
5.

8. Write a report of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"An important football match you watched"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Sample Test 13

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A/An is a puzzle with a hidden meaning, often used in treasure hunts.
 a. riddle b. clue c. artifact d. shelter
2. Abu Zayd al-Hilali was a hero who led his in many battles.
 a. tribe b. rival c. artifact d. riddle
3. To "conserve" water means to it.
 a. waste b. save c. mix d. boil
4. The prefix "un-" in unforgettable means ".....".
 a. again b. not c. before d. after

The Answers :

1. 2. 3. 4.

2. Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

journey - age - Europe - flight - cultures

One of the greatest real explorers in history was Ibn Battuta, born in Morocco in the 14th century. At the (1) of 21, he decided to leave his home and travel. His first goal was to visit Mecca, but his (2) continued for almost 30 years! Ibn Battuta traveled across Africa, Asia, and even parts of (3) He enjoyed meeting kings, learning about (4), and recording what he saw.

The Answers :

1. 2. 3. 4.

3. Read the following text, then answer the questions :

The fennec fox is perfectly adapted to desert life. It is the smallest of all foxes, but it has very large ears, which can be 15 centimeters long. These ears are not just for hearing. The fox uses them to lose heat and stay cool in the hot desert.

The fennec fox also has thick fur on its feet. This protects its feet from the hot sand. During the hot day, it stays cool in underground holes. Its excellent hearing helps it locate insects and small animals moving underground, which it hunts at night. Its fur is sand-colored, which gives it excellent camouflage.

a Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The fennec fox uses its large ears to
 a. lose heat b. find water c. dig holes d. store fat

2. The fur on the fox's feet protects it from the
 a. predators b. hot sand c. cold nights d. insects
3. The fox's sand-colored fur provides excellent
 a. camouflage b. hearing c. shelter d. adaptation

b Answer the following questions :

4. Give a suitable title for the passage?

5. What does the fennec fox's excellent hearing help it do?

6. What do you think makes the fennec fox different from other foxes?

The Answers :

- a. 1. 2. 3.
 b. 4. 5. 6.

4. Story: (Twenty Thousand Leagues Under the Sea)

a Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Captain Nemo told the men they were on the Nautilus forever.
 a. guests b. prisoners c. captains d. scientists
2. The Nautilus was powered by and could travel long distances underwater.
 a. steam b. magic c. electricity d. wind
3. Professor Aronnax was a French
 a. officer b. sailor c. servant d. scientist
4. Nautilus could travel very long distances without
 a. fuel b. masters c. surfacing d. gold

b Answer the following questions :

1. Why did Nemo want them to use special suits in their diving voyages ?

2. Do you think life of the Nautilus would be better or worse than life on land ?

- a. 1. 2. 3. 4.
 b. 1. 2.

5. Rewrite the following sentences :

1. He finished his school project. Then he played with his friends. (After)

2. The doctor said to me , "Take some rest." (advised)

3. Basant is a clever girl. Her father is a teacher. (whose)

The Answers :

1. 2. 3.

6. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. He promised (help) me solve the problem.

2. You must avoid (touch) the hot pan.

3. The teacher asked the students (to) they understood the lesson.

The Answers :

1. 2. 3.

7. Complete the following dialogue :

Ziad and Fares are discussing a survival story.

Ziad : I read a story about a man who was lost in the jungle.

Fares : (1).....?

Ziad : He built a shelter from leaves and branches.

Fares : (2).....?

Ziad : He collected rainwater in a bottle and found wild fruits.

Fares : That's very clever. Did he avoid walking in circles?

Ziad : (3).....

Fares : It sounds like a challenging adventure.

Ziad : (4)..... He needed courage and smart choices to survive.

Fares : Did the rescue team find him or he found his way?

Ziad : (5).....

The Answers :

1. 2. 3. 4. 5.

8. Write short notes of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"The camel's adaptations to desert life"

Sample Test 14

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The view from the mountain was, we were amazed by the beauty.
a. breathtaking b. slippery c. solo d. harsh
- A good leader must have a clear for the team's future.
a. vision b. conflict c. artifact d. identity
- "....." means having an acidic taste, like lemon.
a. Sour b. Hidden c. Salty d. Sweet
- We add the suffix "....." to form the adjective from the word "value".
a. -ly b. -able c. -er d. -en

The Answers :

1. 2. 3. 4.

2. Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

shape - underwater - swimmers - hunt - prey

Emperor penguins is one of the remarkable animals that can survive in the Arctic. They are one of the best (1) Their body (2) helps them move quickly through the water. Their sharp eyesight allows them to see well (3) Emperor penguins (4) in groups to catch their prey. They are fast and skillful hunters in the water.

The Answers :

1. 2. 3. 4.

3. Read the following text, then answer the questions below :

Dr. Aisha Abd El Rahman is one of the most famous writers in Egyptian and Arab culture, she wrote many books and articles on cultural. She also wrote poetry and for 50 years, she wrote regularly in the newspaper Al Ahram. People admired Dr Aisha for her courage in promoting women's rights. Dr Aisha was born in 1913. Her father was a well-known sheikh. Aisha used to go with him to religious meetings, where she learned to read and write. Later she wrote under the pen-name of Bint El Shatei.

People considered it wrong for women to write in the press or take part in public life. The pen-name Bint El Shatei was taken by Dr. Aisha as a sign of respect to her father. Dr Aisha worked at Cairo University as a research assistant in the Faculty of Arts. People today still read Dr. Aisha's books.

a Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. People admired Dr Aisha for
a. attacking men b. considering it unnecessary to educate women
c. writing in the newspapers d. promoting women's rights
2. Dr Aisha wrote books on
a. science and technology b. information technology
c. cultural and religious matters d. newspapers and magazines
3. The underlined word "sign" means ".....".
a. hint b. matter c. meeting d. research

b Answer the following questions :

4. What was Dr. Aisha famous for?

5. What did Dr. Aisha write about?

6. Why did she write under the pen-name Bint El Shatei?

The Answers :

- a. 1. 2. 3.
b. 4. 5. 6.

4. Story: (Twenty Thousand Leagues Under the Sea)

a Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Professor Aronnax saw amazing glowing with color.
a. sea monsters b. coral reefs c. submarines d. sunken cities
2. Ned Land grew because he missed his freedom.
a. impatient b. loyal c. happy d. mysterious
3. Ned valued , so he wanted to escape.
a. loyalty b. freedom
c. scientific curiosity d. pearls
4. Nemo hinted that some forgotten civilizations swallowed by the
a. waves b. science c. forest d. whales

b Answer the following questions :

1. Who finally killed the monster ?

2. Why did Aronnax admire Nemo despite his cruelty ?

The Answers :

- a. 1. 2. 3. 4.
b. 1. 2.

5. Rewrite the following sentences :

1. He packed his bag. Then he went to the station. (After)
.....
2. "Listen to the guide," the teacher said to us. (told)
.....
3. His favorite hobby is to write poetry. (enjoys)
.....

The Answers :

1.
2.
3.

6. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. After I (finish) my homework, I went to bed.
2. The teacher told the students (open) their books.
3. By the time the police arrived, the thief (escape).

The Answers :

1.
2.
3.

7. Complete the following dialogue :

Sara and Nour are discussing a recent trip.

Sara : How was your trip to Aswan last month?

Nour : (1) ! I had never seen so much history.

Sara : (2) ?

Nour : We visited the temples and saw the ancient tombs. The scenery was breathtaking.

Sara : Did anything unexpected happen?

Nour : (3) We were on a boat when a small storm started.

Sara : Oh no! (4) ?

Nour : We were a little scared, but the boat captain was a great leader. He kept everyone calm.

Sara : That's good. A leader must show empathy and be adaptable.

Nour : (5) He definitely was. It made the trip even more memorable.

The Answers :

1.
2.
3.
4.
5.

8. Write a blog post of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"An unforgettable trip you have taken"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Sample Test 15

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The ability to do something dangerous without being afraid is
 a. courage b. identity c. empathy d. modesty
2. A leader who shows understands their team's feelings.
 a. empathy b. conflict c. modesty d. vision
3. The synonym of the word "adaptation" is ".....".
 a. resistance b. conflict c. adjustment d. reaction
4. To form the adjective from the noun "comfort", we add the suffix ".....".
 a. -able b. -er c. -ness d. -al

The Answers :

1. 2. 3. 4.

2. Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

calm - return - trip - flooding - hope

After John had visited Luxor, he sailed on a felucca boat along the Nile River to Aswan. There, he enjoyed the (1) waters and visited the famous Philae Temple, which had been moved to a new island to protect it from (2) After the (3), John said that southern Egypt had been even more amazing than he had imagined, and he hoped to (4) one day.

The Answers :

1. 2. 3. 4.

3. Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Abu Zayd al-Hilali is one of the most famous Arab folk heroes. His story has been told in poems and songs for centuries. Born into the Hilali tribe, Abu Zayd was known for his strength, wisdom, and courage.

When his tribe faced enemies, Abu Zayd led them with bravery. He fought to **defend** his people and used clever strategies to defeat stronger armies. His adventures included long journeys across deserts and battles against rival tribes. What makes his legend special is not only his strength, but also his ability to unite people. He encouraged loyalty, protected the weak, and inspired others to act bravely.

a Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Abu Zayd al-Hilali was known for his strength, wisdom, and
 a. courage b. tribe c. poems d. rivals
2. He used clever to defeat stronger armies.
 a. strategies b. songs c. riddles d. artifacts

3. The underlined word "**defend**" can be replaced by ".....".

- a. lead b. protect c. gain d. ignore

b Answer the following questions :

4. Why do you think Abu Zayd al-Hilali is one of the most famous folk heroes?

.....

5. What is the main idea of the passage?

.....

6. What values did Abu Zayd encourage?

.....

The Answers :

a. 1. 2. 3.

b. 4. 5. 6.

4. Story: (Twenty Thousand Leagues Under the Sea)

a Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The Nautilus was attacked by a

- a. giant squid b. shark c. warship d. whale

2. The submarine also got trapped under thick at the South Pole.

- a. water b. sand c. seaweed d. ice

3. was determined to learn the truth about Nemo.

- a. Conseil b. Ned Land c. Verne d. Aronnax

4. They discovered that the glowing shape was a

- a. ship b. whale c. beast d. submarine

b Answer the following questions :

1. What special things did Captain Nemo collect from the deep sea ?

.....

2. How would you describe the relationship between Captain Nemo and his crew ?

.....

The Answers :

a. 1. 2. 3. 4.

b. 1. 2.

5. Rewrite the following sentences :

1. "Don't give up," the coach said to the team. (ordered)

.....

2. He played for the tribe, but he doesn't now. (used to)

 3. This is the house . I live in it. (where)

The Answers :

1. 2. 3.

6. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets :

1. The leader ordered the team (work) together.
 2. She refused (stop) trying.
 3. My father advised me (won't be) afraid.

The Answers :

1. 2. 3.

7. Complete the following dialogue :

Ali and Omar are talking about a hero.

Ali : Who is your favorite hero from history, Omar?

Omar: I really admire Abu Zayd al-Hilali.

Ali : (1)..... ?

Omar: Because he was known for his strength, wisdom, and courage.

Ali : (2)..... ?

Omar: He led his tribe and used clever strategies to defend his people.

Ali : He sounds like a great leader.

Omar : (3)..... The legend says he inspired others to act bravely.

Ali : I also admire Mohamed Rashwan, the judo champion.

Omar: Why do you admire him?

Ali : (4).....

Omar: (5)..... True heroes are not just strong, but also have honor.

The Answers :

1. 2. 3. 4. 5.

8. Write a review ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"What qualities do you think great leaders should have?"

.....

5 Sample Tests collected from SB & AB

٥ نماذج اختبارات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب والتقييمات

Sample Test 16

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The loud noise outside was and made it hard to concentrate.
a. pleasant b. disturbing c. peaceful d. relaxing
2. means smooth and hard to stand on because you might slide.
a. Slippery b. Rare c. Breathtaking d. Comfortable
3. **SB** "Encourage" is the antonym of ".....".
a. inspired b. bored c. stressed d. discourage
4. **SB** To form the noun from the adjective "wise", we add the suffix ".....".
a. -ion b. -dom c. -ship d. -al

2. Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

picnic - unforgettable - strange - steal - hard

Last summer, my family and I went on a camping trip in the forest. The place was amazing, with tall green trees and birds singing everywhere. Setting up the tent was a bit (1)....., but we were excited. While enjoying our picnic, something (2)..... happened. A hungry monkey suddenly appeared and tried to (3)..... fruit from our basket. I jumped to scare it away, but I slipped and fell, which made everyone laugh. The monkey ran off with an apple, and I felt very embarrassed. It was an (4)..... day that we still talk about and laugh at.

3. Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Moa'z had always dreamed of exploring the deep sea. When he finally joined a diving course, he discovered how mysterious and beautiful the underwater world was. On his first dive, the sunlight slowly faded as he swam deeper. Schools of colorful fish surrounded him, and he felt like part of another world. Suddenly, a large shadow passed above-it was a sea turtle gliding gracefully through the water. Moa'z followed it carefully until it disappeared into the blue. When he returned to the surface, he felt proud and peaceful. That day, he realized that courage is not about being fearless but about facing your fears and learning from them.

a Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Moa'z joined a course.
a. swimming b. diving c. sailing d. surfing
2. The underlined word "**faded**" can be replaced by ".....".
a. followed b. discovered c. disappeared d. dreamed
3. Moa'z felt when he returned to the surface.
a. afraid b. angry c. proud d. tired

b Answer the following questions :

4. What did Moa'z dream of doing?
.....
5. What creature did he follow underwater?
.....
6. What lesson did Moa'z learn after his experience?
.....

4. Story :

a Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. **SB** Who was the inventor of the Nautilus mentioned in the text?
a. Aronnax b. Conseil c. Captain Nemo d. Ned Land
2. Ned Land, a Canadian harpooner, became part of the
a. crew b. scientists c. expedition d. map
3. **SB** In the mid-nineteenth century, sailors claimed to have seen a huge
a. whale b. sea monster c. shark d. squid
4. **SB** Conseil named each creature
a. excitement b. accurately c. confusion d. curiosity

b Answer the following questions :

1. Why did Professor Aronnax accept to be on the Nautilus?
.....
2. Why do you think Captain Nemo's past was kept a secret?
.....

5. Rewrite the following sentences:

1. He didn't want to come to the meeting. (refused)
.....
2. Hadeer said to Nada, "Sleep early to get up early." (told)
.....

3. No, he didn't use to travel alone. (Did)

6. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My father (doesn't) use to like tea when he was young.
2. Mansoura is the place (when) I was born.
3. He agreed (come) to the party.

7. Complete the following dialogue :

Leila is phoning her friend, Samia to invite her to her birthday party.

Leila : Hello, Samia. This is Leila speaking. You know, Samia, my birthday is next Tuesday.

Samia : Really? (1)..... ?

Leila : Twenty-five. I'll be giving a birthday party. Are you free on that day?

Samia : (2)..... .

Leila : I'm glad you can come.

Samia : (3)..... ?

Leila : Only some of the closest friends.

Samia : Do I know all of them?

Leila : (4)..... .

Samia : What would you like for a birthday present?

Leila : (5)..... .

8. Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"An athlete you admire"

.....

.....

.....

.....

Sample Test 17

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Real is shown when someone faces danger without giving up.
 a. courage b. fear c. anger d. surprise
2. are changes that help living things survive in their environment.
 a. Humps b. Creatures c. Predators d. Adaptations

3. **SB** To form the noun from the verb "generate", we add the suffix ".....".
a. -tion b. -al c. -ness d. -ly
4. Our teacher asked us to turns answering the questions.
a. do b. take c. make d. put

2. Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

culture - avoiding - kings - trips - discovering

Ibn Battuta traveled across Africa, Asia, and even parts of Europe. He enjoyed meeting (1)..... learning about cultures, and recording what he saw. Sometimes, the (2)..... were dangerous: crossing deserts, sailing through storms, and (3)..... attacks. But he refused to stop traveling because he loved (4)..... new places.

3. Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Ahmed is a firefighter who saves lives daily. One morning, he received a call about a fire in a tall building. Ahmed quickly gathered his team, put on protective gear, and rushed to the scene. The fire was dangerous, and smoke filled the rooms. He rescued children trapped on the top floor and helped others escape safely. His courage and quick thinking prevented injuries and saved lives. Firefighters like Ahmed are heroes who risk their safety to protect others.

a Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Ahmed works as a/an
a. doctor b. firefighter c. teacher d. engineer
2. Smoke filled the
a. rooms b. streets c. cars d. gardens
3. The underlined word "risk" means to ".....".
a. put b. save c. endanger d. collect

b Answer the following questions :

4. Give a suitable title to the text.
.....
5. How did Ahmed help people?
.....
6. Why are firefighters considered heroes?
.....

4. **Story :****a Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- SB** The crew attacked the creature with
 a. harpoons b. arrows c. nets d. axes
- SB** Captain Nemo hinted at forgotten civilizations swallowed by the
 a. earth b. storms c. waves d. mountains
- SB** To Aronnax, Nemo seemed both brave and
 a. boring b. loyal c. mysterious d. supportive
- Professor Aronnax accepted to be on the Nautilus because of his
 a. loyalty b. scientific curiosity c. fear d. desire for freedom

b Answer the following questions :

- SB** How did the crew manage to survive the attacks from the giant squid?

- Why do you think Captain Nemo chose to keep Aronnax and his friends on the Nautilus instead of sending them back to land?

5. **Rewrite the following sentences:**

- It's not a good idea to smoke cigarettes. (avoid)

- She said to Rana, "Don't go out". (ordered)

- She used to live in Luxor. (Where)

6. **Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

- Tom, (where) grew up in London, has lived in Egypt for 15 years.
- My father didn't (used) to work in a bank.
- Eating wild fruits was not easy, but he needed (eat) them.

7. **Complete the following dialogue :**

Two students are working on a school project.

Hamdi : Do you think that we've finished the project now?

Nasser : It's good, but we could do more. (1)..... ?

Hamdi : Include photos? (2).....

Nasser : We could make a video, too.

Hamdi : (3)..... We haven't got time.

Nasser : I've found some photos. (4)..... ?

Hamdi : Let's put two at the top and two at the bottom.

Nasser : Ok, how does this look? I think it's good.

Hamdi : (5).....

8. Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:
"How we can improve our country"

.....
.....
.....
.....

Sample Test 18

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Many traveled across the seas to find new lands and trade routes.
a. teachers b. explorers c. farmers d. artists
2. A is a group of families living together with shared traditions.
a. rival b. tribe c. strategy d. value
3. **SB** The antonym of the word "....." is "solid".
a. rocky b. high c. hollow d. exact
4. **SB** The prefix "....." gives the opposite of "credible".
a. im- b. dis- c. in- d. ir-

2. Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

communities - discuss - sports - Olympic - speed

Sport has been part of human life for thousands of years. In ancient times, people competed to show strength, (1)....., and skill. For example, the (2)..... Games began in Greece more than 2,700 years ago. They included running, wrestling, and (3)..... throwing. These games were not only for fun, but also to bring (4)..... together.

3. Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Electricity changed human life. Before it, people relied on candles and fires for light. Now, electricity powers homes, schools, hospitals, and

industries. Inventors like Thomas Edison worked for years to develop electric devices. Electricity allows communication, transportation, and technological progress. It improves daily life, education, and health-care. Learning about electricity helps students understand science and appreciate modern conveniences.

a Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The general idea of the text is about ".....".
 a. nature b. electricity c. industry d. education
- The underlined word "appreciate" has a similar meanings to the word ".....".
 a. value b. rely c. improve d. invent
- Electricity allows
 a. communication and technology b. sleeping
 c. running d. fishing

b Answer the following questions :

- How did people get light before electricity?

- How does electricity improve life?

- Why is learning about electricity important?

4. Story :

a Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Ned Land was angry because he valued above all.
 a. the sea b. freedom c. treasures d. knowledge
- SB** Captain Nemo spoke passionately against
 a. wealth b. injustice c. education d. discovery
- SB** What did Nemo do when warships appeared?
 a. Escaped quickly b. Attacked without mercy
 c. Asked for help d. Hid underwater
- SB** The Nautilus moved forward into deeper mysteries, carrying them far from
 a. land b. war c. safety d. their home

b Answer the following questions :

1. **SB** Do you think Captain Nemo's calmness was a key factor in their survival? Why or why not?

2. What was Captain Nemo's ship called?

5. Rewrite the following sentences:

1. Could you turn the light off, please? (mind)

2. First, she ate her breakfast, then she went to the park. (before)

3. Abdo asked me, "Where have you spent the holiday?" (where I)

6. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. This is the school (which) I was educated.

2. They requested us (not) use our phones during the meeting.

3. I always avoid (make) noise.

7. Complete the following dialogue :

Sally is asking her teacher for advice.

Teacher : Hello! Sally. How can I help you?

Sally : (1).....

Teacher : What do you want my advice for?

Sally : (2).....

Teacher : Dyslexia! (3)..... ?

Sally : Yes. I have tried to overcome this problem.

Teacher : (4).....

Sally : (5)..... ?

Teacher: Because a special teacher can understand your case.

Sally : OK, I will try that. Thanks for your advice.

8. Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"The Olympic Games"

.....

.....

.....

.....

Sample Test 19

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An is a special event like a wedding.
a. ceremony b. identity c. harmony d. culture
2. The Olympic Games promote important human such as respect and excellence.
a. problems b. values c. mistakes d. levels
3. **SB** The synonym of "famous" is ".....".
a. unknown b. well-known c. modern d. new
4. **SB** The suffix "-al" in survival changes the verb to a / an ".....".
a. noun b. adverb c. adjective d. plural form

2. Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

hunters - snowshoes - seals - fur - skin

Polar bears are the best at surviving in the Arctic. Their thick, white (1)..... provides excellent warmth and perfect camouflage against snow. Under their fur, black (2)..... absorbs heat from the sun. Large paws work like (3)..... to walk on thin ice. These powerful (4)..... can smell seals from miles away.

3. Read the following text, then answer the questions :

In many countries, solar power is becoming an important source of energy. It uses sunlight to produce electricity without harming the environment. Students in a small Egyptian village built a solar panel system for their school. They learned how sunlight hits the panels and creates energy that can light classrooms and charge devices. The project helped them understand the value of renewable energy and teamwork. It also inspired others in the community to use solar power at home. Now, the school not only saves money but also teaches students how science can improve life.

a Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Solar power is a type of energy.
a. harmful b. renewable c. limited d. chemical
2. The opposite of the underlined word "harming" is ".....".
a. sailing b. generating c. saving d. inspiring

3. The school now saves

a. books

b. money

c. time

d. teachers

b Answer the following questions :

4. Who built the solar panel system?

.....

5. What did the students learn from the project?

.....

6. Why do you think solar power is the best source of energy?

.....

4. Story :

a Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. **SB** Conseil remained between scientific discovery and his master's advice.

a. torn

b. angry

c. sad

d. determined

2. **SB** Nemo attacked without hesitation.

a. warships

b. submarines

c. islands

d. whales

3. **SB** Ned Land became impatient because he longed for

a. the sea

b. freedom and fresh air

c. freedom beneath the ocean

d. the treasures of the sea

4. **SB** Professor Aronnax was invited to join the

a. party

b. voyage

c. army

d. flight

b Answer the following questions :

1. How was life on the Nautilus?

.....

2. Why do you think Captain Nemo choose to fight against cruelty land?

.....

5. Rewrite the following sentences:

1. She said that she didn't break the glass.

(She denied)

.....

2. How do doctors diagnose illnesses?

(The boy asked)

.....

3. He visited Rome before he knew the best places to eat.

(After)

.....

6. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I used to (been) a player but now I'm not.
2. Ramy bought a mobile (whose) was expensive.
3. The teacher told me to (writes) the lesson three times.

7. Complete the following dialogue :

Ahmed suggests visiting his uncle's farm and Emad agrees.

Ahmed: Hi, Emad. Where are you going to spend your weekend?

Emad : Hi, Ahmed. Really, I have no idea.

Ahmed: (1).....

Emad : Sorry, I don't want to go to the beach. What about the theatre?

Ahmed: (2).....

Emad : Then where shall we go?

Ahmed: What do you think of visiting my uncle's farm?

Emad : (3)..... ?

Ahmed: It's not far from Cairo. So, it will take us an hour to reach it.

Emad : OK! But what does your uncle grow and keep there?

Ahmed: (4).....

Emad : (5)..... ?

Ahmed: We will go by car.

Emad : I'm sure it will be a fantastic visit.

8. Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"How to lead a healthy life"

.....

.....

.....

.....

Sample Test 20

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The detective followed the to find the missing painting.

- a. cars b. clues c. flowers d. songs

2. A/An is a piece of historical object from the past.

- a. torch b. explorer c. artifact d. clue

3. **SB** To form the adjective from the noun "culture", we add the suffix ".....".

- a. -or b. -ly c. -al d. -ness

4. **SB** The antonym of "hidden" is ".....".
- a. visible b. secret c. safe d. relaxed

2. Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

respect - feel - history - traditions - celebrate

Every culture has its own traditions that make it unique. These (1)..... can include food, clothing, festivals, and ways of greeting. For example, in Japan, people bow to show (2)....., while in many Western countries, people shake hands. In Mexico, families (3)..... the Day of the Dead to remember loved ones who have passed away. Traditions help people feel connected to their (4)..... and community. Learning about other cultures teaches us respect and helps us understand the world better.

3. Read the following text, then answer the questions below :

Two of my brave friends went on a three week climbing holiday in Switzerland last year. They had climbing lessons for six months before they left and took ropes, food, drinks and some equipment. On the first day, they started climbing one of the easy mountains, it was a bright, sunny day and they didn't find it difficult. When it was nearly dark, they stopped and ate some of the food they had brought with them then they made beds on a large piece of rock. During the night, it became very cold and started to snow. Unfortunately, when they woke up in the morning, the snow was still falling and they decided to come down the mountain. But there was too much snow. They had to wait for five hours to be rescued.

a Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. How long was the writer's friends' holiday?

- a. Six weeks b. Six months c. Three weeks d. A year

2. What does the underlined word "it" refer to?

- a. climbing the mountain b. a sunny day
c. a bright day d. some equipment

3. The weather was on the first day.

- a. sunny b. rainy c. windy d. snowy

b Answer the following questions :

4. Give a suitable title to the text.

.....

5. How did they get ready for their holiday?

.....

6. What do you think people should pack for climbing?

.....

4. Story :

a Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. **SB** The companions saw glowing with color through the great observation windows.

- a. fish b. coral reefs c. shipwrecks d. sharks

2. **SB** The monster was described as having a body.

- a. fish-like b. steel-like c. long, tentacled d. staff

3. **SB** What was the main motivation of the characters when they secretly lowered a small boat into the sea?

- a. To escape their enemies b. To find treasure
c. To seek freedom d. To explore new lands

4. Ned Land planned to

- a. explore the sea b. escape
c. stay forever d. join Nemo

b Answer the following questions :

1. What did Nemo invite his guests to do?

.....

2. Why do you think the sailors were fascinated with the idea of a sea monster?

.....

5. Rewrite the following sentences:

1. I no longer borrow books from the library. (stopped)

.....

2. Eman asked Mariam, "When will you finish?" (would)

.....

3. The teacher explained the tradition. Students asked about it. (which)

.....

Sample Tests for Al-Azhar Students

ه اختبارات لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

Sample Test 1

1. Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue :

Sara and Hala are talking about heroes.

Sara : What is this poster about?

Hala : (1)

Sara : (2) ..?

Hala : My favorite hero is Mohamed Salah.

Sara : Why do you admire him?

Hala : (3)

Sara : Amazing! I admire him, too.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. were soldiers in the Middle Ages.

a. Sailors b. Astronauts c. Farmers d. Knights

2. Desert tortoises are masters of water

a. drinking b. conservation b. conversation d. boiling

3. She asked me if I the book online.

a. reads b. have read c. had read d. reading

4. Before the exam, he studied hard.

a. answer b. answering c. had answered d. answered

3. Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

become – Heroes – scary – courage - happy

Courage means being brave, even when something is difficult or

(1)..... . A person with courage tries hard and doesn't give up.

Students show (2)..... when they speak in class or try new things.

(3)..... show courage by helping others. Courage helps us grow, learn, and (4)..... stronger every day.

4. Rewrite the following sentences :

1. This is the mobile. It is very expensive.

(which)

2. He was in the habit of arriving early.

(used to)

3. Before he went into the museum, he bought tickets.

(After)

4. He didn't mind giving me the money.

(agreed)

5. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Egypt is a hot country. In July, there are almost 400 hours of sunshine in Cairo, Aswan and Siwa. That long period of sunshine can be good or bad. It is good because it gives us energy. It helps children to be strong and healthy. But it can burn people's skin if they stay out between noon and 3 pm. In Egypt, we are lucky to have a long period of sunshine all the year round. So, millions of tourists like to visit Egypt especially in winter. Moreover, sunshine is good for many crops and fruit to grow, but they can't grow if there isn't enough water.

a Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title to the passage.

2. What will happen if crops don't get enough water?

b Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

3. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to

a. Egypt

b. sunshine

c. water

d. fruit

4. Tourists like to visit Egypt especially in

a. summer

b. autumn

c. winter

d. spring

6. Write a short paragraph of SIX (6) sentences on :

"A sports event"

Sample Test 2

1. Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue :

Lina and Omar are talking about a folk story.

Lina : What are you doing?

Omar : (1)

Lina : (2)

Omar : My favorite folk story is Ali Baba and the Forty Thieves.

Lina : Why do you like this story?

Omar : (3)

Lina : Great! I like it, too.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Camels are famous for their survival
a. skills b. friends c. skulls d. robots
- Very beautiful, impressive or surprising means
a. silly b. bad c. ugly d. breathtaking
- Did he to volunteer at charities?
a. used b. use c. uses d. using
- Would you like computer games?
a. playing b. plays c. played d. to play

3. Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

alive – story – dead – solving – lesson

Folk tales are traditional stories. A folk tale is a simple (1)..... told by people for many years. It often teaches a (2)..... In one tale, a clever girl helps her village by (3)..... a problem. Everyone learns that courage and wisdom can come from anyone. Folk tales keep traditions (4)..... and make people feel connected.

4. Rewrite the following sentences :

- After I had played tennis, I had a shower. (Before)
- He said to me, "How old is Ali?" (asked)
- This is the boy. His father won the prize. (whose)
- When he was young, he rode camels. (used)

5. Read the following passage, then answer the questions below :

Last month, I visited the Textile Museum in Cairo. The museum has a lot of clothes from different times in history. I thought the clothes from Ancient Egypt were fantastic. From my point of view, the statues showing people wearing the clothes really teach you about life in the past.

My favorite thing was the Islamic area where you can see different kinds of calligraphy. I recommend looking at the clothes from other countries, too, such as Iran. They are very interesting. If you want to take photos, it is a good idea to take a good camera, because the museum is quite dark.

a Answer the following questions :

- What does the underlined pronoun "They" refer to?

2. Give a suitable title to the passage.

b Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

3. The Textile Museum is located in

a. Aswan b. Giza c. Alexandria d. Cairo

4. The underlined phrase "**point of view**" means ".....".

a. opinion b. recipe c. meal d. exam

6. Write a short paragraph of SIX (6) sentences on :

"How animals adapt to different environments"

Sample Test 3

1. Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue :

Mariam and Tarek are talking about a traditional celebration.

Mariam : What do you think of traditional celebrations?

Tarek : (1)

Mariam : (2)

Tarek : My favorite tradition is Sham El-Nassim.

Mariam : Why do you enjoy it?

Tarek : (3)

Mariam : That's great.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. is very big or great.

a. Immense b. Tiny c. Lazy d. Funny

2. She showed when her friend was sad.

a. happiness b. joy c. empathy d. fun

3. Cairo is the city we live.

a. who b. where c. when d. which

4. She asked me when

a. I had arrived b. I arrive c. did I arrive d. do I arrive

3. Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

community – courage – ordinary – times – sadness

Heroes are great people. They always help others and show great (1)..... . They work hard and stay strong in difficult (2)..... . Some heroes save lives, and others inspire us with their kindness. Heroes can be famous or (3)..... people. Anyone can be a hero by doing good and helping their (4)..... every day.

4. Rewrite the following sentences :

1. She said to them, "Don't run in the street." (asked)
2. He is looking forward to visiting Aswan. (hopes)
3. He did his homework, then he helped his brother with his project. (After)
4. They were lazy when they were at school. (used)

5. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

New technology means that forms of communication are changing all the time. For example, think about how phones have developed over the last 20 years. In the past, people used to type messages using special letters on their phones. Then, people started to touch the screens on their phones to type their messages. Now, phones are able to understand people's voices and many people are speaking to their phones to send messages. Some scientists think that phones are going to know what people think in the future. Perhaps our phones will read our facial expressions before they send a message.

a Answer the following questions :

1. What does the underlined pronoun "they" refer to?

.....

2. Give a suitable title to the passage.

.....

b Choose the correct answer from a, b , c or d :

3. Phones are able to understand people's now.

a. shapes b. forms c. voices d. messages

4. The underlined word "developed" means

a. damaged b. improved c. broke d. used

6. Write an email of SIX (6) sentences on "A visit to a famous place"

Your name is Tarek and your email address is tarek@gmail.com.

Your friend's email address is adel@gmail.com.

.....

.....

.....

.....

Sample Test

4

1. Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue :

Dalia and Karim are talking about a visit to the Egyptian Museum

Dalia : Where did you go yesterday?

Karim : (1)

Dalia : (2)

Karim : I saw many statues and paintings.

Dalia : That sounds amazing! Why do you like visiting museums?

Karim : (3)

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Carts pulled by horses are called

- a. chariots b. trains c. planes d. plates

2. Many come to compete in the Olympic Games.

- a. teachers b. athletes c. actors d. soldiers

3. By the time the teacher arrived, the students their homework.

- a. finish b. had finished c. have finished d. finishing

4. The guide showed us the temple was discovered last year.

- a. who b. which c. whose d. where

3. Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

keep – elephants – safe – nature - dangerous

Animals live all around us. Some animals are big, like (1)..... , and some are small, like ants. They need food, water, and a (2)..... place to live. Many animals help people, and others make great pets. Animals are important to (3)..... , and we must protect them and (4)..... them safe.

4. Rewrite the following sentences :

1. After she had cleaned the room, she watched TV. (Before)
2. He said to me, "Where did you put the books?" (asked)
3. This is the girl. Her mother teaches French. (whose)
4. When we lived in the countryside, we grew vegetables. (used)

5. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Everyone dreams of being happy and healthy. Sport is one of the most important things that help people to be healthy and happy. Sport is an activity that is managed by a set of rules. Sports are different in their rules according to their types. This activity of sports helps in moving the body and the blood which gives people healthy bodies. All the sports help the body to be strong. They also help people to be more active, so they work well and achieve their goals and duties in their lives. All the sports are the same in relaxing the minds of the persons who practise them.

a Answer the following questions :

1. What does the underlined pronoun "They" refer to?

.....

2. How do sports help people in their work ?

.....

b Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

3. Sports make our minds

- a. relaxed b. nervous c. complex d. dangerous

4. The word "managed" in the passage means

- a. played b. controlled c. practised d. trained

6. Write a biography of SIX (6) sentences on :

"An Egyptian leader"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

1. Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue :

Lina and Samir are talking about a famous leader.

Lina : Who were you reading about?

Samir : (1)

Lina : What made this leader special?

Samir : (2)

Lina : That's interesting! Why do people admire them?

Samir : (3)

Lina : I think they were an inspiration, too.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- A treasure hunt can build
a. skills b. sadness c. height d. weight
- Abu Zayed fought against enemies, he was
a. lazy b. brave c. funny d. silly
- My coach advised me every day.
a. train b. to train c. training d. trained
- When we lived in Alexandria, we to walk by the sea every weekend.
a. use b. used c. using d. uses

3. Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

rules – swim – proud – angry - active

Sports are fun and help us stay healthy. Many people play football, run, or (1)..... . Sports make our bodies strong and our minds (2)..... . We learn teamwork, follow (3)..... , and try our best. Playing sports with friends is exciting, and winning a game makes everyone feel (4)..... and happy.

4. Rewrite the following sentences :

- She said to her friend, "Why are you crying?" (asked)
- I saw a man. His car broke down on the road. (whose)
- When I was a child, I collected stamps. (used)
- After the team had scored two goals, the match ended. (Before)

5. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Good friends can be an important experience of happiness in your life. A true friend for me is like water for the sea. Really, I cannot imagine

my life without my friend. He is very honest and good to me. He is called Mostafa. We are the same age. We have been friends since childhood. I think we nearly have the same hobbies and interests. We spend our free time with each other. He always encourages me. He does not leave me alone. We usually share our bad and good moments. We understand each other easily and in no time. He gives me support when I need it. One day, I was in need of money. I was surprised when he offered me it without asking. In fact, I cannot forget this situation. If you have such a good friend, keep him / her all your life.

a Answer the following questions :

1. Who is the writer's friend ?

2. How do you think the writer's friend surprised him ?

b Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

3. What's the main idea of the text?

a. A bad friend

b. Communicating with people

c. A dishonest friend

d. Good friendship

4. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?

a. money

b. time

c. life

d. chance

6. Write a short paragraph of SIX (6) sentences on :

"Some traditions in your country"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

كراسة المعاصر
للمراجعة والاختبارات

الآن بالمكتبات

تُصرف مجاناً مع الكتاب

المعاصر
في الرياضيات
للمرحلة الإعدادية

IN THIS FREE PART...

A Week Is Enough



AL TALABA BOOKSTORE

For printing, publication & distribution

El Faggala - Cairo - Egypt

Tel.: 02/ 259 340 12 - 259 377 91

www.gpseducation.com

15014



FREE PART



A Week Is Enough

بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم



قام بإعداد هذه النسخة pdf

وفهرستها ورفعها :

د محمد أحمد محمد عاصم

نسألكم الدعاء